

IRC:112-2011

# **CODE OF PRACTICE FOR CONCRETE ROAD BRIDGES**



**INDIAN ROADS CONGRESS**



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2014

<https://archive.org/details/govlawiracy2011112>







# **CODE OF PRACTICE FOR CONCRETE ROAD BRIDGES**

*Published by:*

**INDIAN ROADS CONGRESS**

Kama Koti Marg,  
Sector 6, R.K. Puram,  
New Delhi - 110 022

**NOVEMBER - 2011**

*Price ₹ 1000  
(Packing & postage charges extra)*

First Published : November, 2011  
Reprinted : December, 2012  
Reprinted : June, 2014 ( Incorporating all Amendments and  
Errata Published upto June, 2014)

*(All Rights Reserved. No part of this publication shall be reproduced, translated or transmitted in any form or by any means without the permission of the Indian Roads Congress)*

*(The Official amendments to this document which may be considered necessary from time to time would be published by the IRC in its periodical 'Indian Highways'. These shall be considered as effective and as part of the Code etc. from the date specified therein)*

**Printed at :** India Offset Press, New Delhi  
(1000 Copies)

## PERSONNEL OF THE BRIDGES SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS COMMITTEE

(As on 25<sup>th</sup> October 2010)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Sinha, A.V.<br>(Convenor)                 | Director General (RD) & Spl. Secretary, Ministry of Road Transport & Highways, New Delhi |
| 2. Puri, S.K.<br>(Co-Convenor)               | Addl. Director General, Ministry of Road Transport & Highways, New Delhi                 |
| 3. Sharma, Arun Kumar<br>(Member- Secretary) | Chief Engineer (B) S&R, Ministry of Road Transport & Highways, New Delhi                 |

### **Members**

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 4. Agarwal, K.N.            | Director General (W) (Retd.), CPWD, Ghaziabad                                |
| 5. Alimchandani, C.R.       | Chairman & Managing Director, STUP Consultants Ltd., Mumbai                  |
| 6. Banerjee, A.K.           | Member (Tech.), (Retd.) NHAI, New Delhi                                      |
| 7. Banerjee, T.B.           | Chief Engineer (Retd.), Ministry of Road Transport & Highways, New Delhi     |
| 8. Basa, Ashok              | Director (Tech.), B. Engineers & Builders Ltd., Bhubaneswar                  |
| 9. Bandyopadhyay, Dr. T.K.  | Joint Director General (Retd.), Institute for Steel Dev. and Growth, Kolkata |
| 10. Bandyopadhyay, Dr. N.   | Director, STUP Consultants Ltd., (P) Ltd. New Delhi                          |
| 11. Bongirwar, P.L.         | Advisor, L&T, Mumbai   |
| 12. Bhasin, P.C.            | ADG (B) (Retd.) MOST, New Delhi  |
| 13. Chakraborty, Prof. S.S. | Managing Director, Consulting Engg. Services (I) Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi        |
| 14. Chakrabarti, S.P.       | Consultant, Span Consultants (P) Ltd., Noida                                 |
| 15. Dhodapkar, A.N.         | Chief Engineer (Retd.), Ministry of Road Transport & Highways, New Delhi     |
| 16. Gupta, Mahesh           | Executive Director (B&S), RDSO, Lucknow                                      |
| 17. Ghoshal, A.             | Director and Vice-President, STUP Consultants Ltd., Kolkata                  |
| 18. Joglekar, S.G.          | Director (Engg. Core), STUP Consultants Ltd., Mumbai                         |
| 19. Kand, Dr. C.V.          | Chief Engineer, (Retd.), MP PWD, Bhopal                                      |
| 20. Koshi, Ninan            | Director General (RD) & Addl. Secy., MOST (Retd.), Gurgaon                   |
| 21. Kumar, Prafulla         | Director General (RD) & AS (Retd.), MORT&H, Noida                            |
| 22. Kumar, Vijay            | E-in-C (Retd.), UP PWD, Noida  |
| 23. Kumar, Dr. Ram          | Chief General Manager, NHAI, New Delhi                                       |

24. Kumar, Ashok	Chief Engineer, Ministry of Road Transport & Highways., New Delhi
25. Manjure, P.Y.	Director, Freyssinet Prestressed Concrete Co. Ltd., Mumbai
26. Mukherjee, M.K.	Chief Engineer (Retd.), MORT&H, New Delhi
27. Narain, A.D	Director General (RD) & AS (Retd.), MORT&H, Noida
28. Ninan, R.S.	Chief Engineer (Retd.), MORT&H, New Delhi
29. Patankar, V.L.	Member (Tech.), NHAI, New Delhi
30. Rajagopalan, Dr. N.	Chief Technical Advisor, L&T, Chennai
31. Raina, Dr. V.K.	B-13, Sector-14, Noida-201301 (UP)
32. Rao, M.V.B.	A-181, Sarita Vihar, New Delhi
33. Roy, Dr. B.C.	Executive Director, Consulting Engg. Services (I) Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi
34. Sharma, R.S.	Past Secretary General, IRC, New Delhi
35. Sharan, G.	Director General (RD) & SS, (Retd.), MORT&H, New Delhi
36. Sinha, N.K.	Director General (RD) & SS, (Retd.), MORT&H, New Delhi
37. Saha, Dr. G.P.	Executive Director, Construma Consultants (P) Ltd., Mumbai
38. Tandon, Prof. Mahesh	Managing Director, Tandon Consultants (P) Ltd., New Delhi
39. Velayutham, V.	Director General (RD) & SS, (Retd.), MORT&H, New Delhi
40. Vijay, P.B.	Director General (W) (Retd.), CPWD, New Delhi
41. Director & Head	Bureau of Indian Standards, New Delhi
42. Addl. Director General	Directorate General Border Roads, New Delhi

***Ex-Officio Members***

1. President, IRC	Liansanga, Engineer-in-Chief and Secretary, PWD, Mizoram, Aizawl
2. Director General (RD) & Spl. Secretary	(Sinha, A.V.) Ministry of Road Transport & Highways, New Delhi
3. Secretary General	(Indoria, R.P.) Indian Roads Congress, New Delhi

***Corresponding Members***

1. Merani, N.V.	Principal Secretary (Retd.), Maharashtra PWD, Mumbai
2. Bagish, Dr. B.P.	C-2/2013, Opp. D.P.S., Vasant Kunj, New Delhi

## SECTION 1 CONTENTS

	<i>Page No.</i>
<b>Section 1                      Contents</b>	
<b>Personnel of the Bridges Specifications and Standards Committee</b>	(i)
<b>Section 2                      Introduction</b>	1
<b>Section 3                      Definitions and Notations</b>	3
3.1    Terms and Definitions	3
3.2    Notations	11
<b>Section 4                      General</b>	16
4.1    Scope	16
4.2    Underlying Assumptions	16
<b>Section 5                      Basis of Design</b>	18
5.1    Aims of Design	18
5.2    Limit State Philosophy of Design	19
5.3    Limit States	20
5.4    Actions and their Combinations	21
5.5    Representative Values of Properties of Materials	23
5.6    Analytical Methods to Evaluate Behaviour of Structures	24
5.7    Design Based on Full Scale Testing	25
5.8    Durability Aspects	25
<b>Section 6                      Material Properties and their Design Values</b>	28
6.1    General	28
6.2    Untensioned Steel Reinforcement	28
6.3    Prestressing Steel	31
6.4    Concrete	35
<b>Section 7                      Analysis</b>	50
7.1    General Provisions	50
7.2    Analyses for Serviceability Limit States	53
7.3    Analyses for Ultimate Limit States	54
7.4    Torsional Effects	55
7.5    Combined Global and Local Effects	55
7.6    Structures and Structural Frames	55
7.7    Composite Concrete Construction	58



7.8	Structural Effects of Time-Dependent Properties of Concrete	60
7.9	Prestressed Members and Structures	61
7.10	Design and Detailing for Curved Tendons in Thin Sections	66
7.11	Special Load Transferring Devices	68
<b>Section 8</b>	<b>Ultimate Limit State of Linear Elements for Bending and Axial Forces</b>	<b>69</b>
8.1	Scope	69
8.2	Strain and Stress Distribution at Ultimate Limit State	69
8.3	Biaxial Bending	73
<b>Section 9</b>	<b>Ultimate Limit State of Two and Three Dimensional Elements for Out of Plane and in Plane Loading Effects</b>	<b>76</b>
9.1	Scope	76
9.2	One-Way and Two-Way Slabs and Walls	76
9.3	Sub-elements of Box Structures	76
9.4	General Solution for Two-Way Slabs, Walls and Shell Elements	77
<b>Section 10</b>	<b>Ultimate Limit State of Shear, Punching Shear and Torsion</b>	<b>80</b>
10.1	Scope	80
10.2	Design of Flexural Members for Shear	80
10.3	Design Method	85
10.4	Design for Punching Shear	98
10.5	Torsion	105
<b>Section 11</b>	<b>Ultimate Limit State of Induced Deformation</b>	<b>110</b>
11.1	General .	110
11.2	Simplified Slenderness Criteria	111
11.3	Non-linear Analysis of Structure and Elements	115
11.4	Lateral Instability of Slender Beam	118
<b>Section 12</b>	<b>Serviceability Limit State</b>	<b>120</b>
12.1	General	120
12.2	Stress Limitation	120
12.3	Limit State of Cracking	121
12.4	Limit State of Deflection	131
<b>Section 13</b>	<b>Prestressing Systems</b>	<b>133</b>
13.1	General	133
13.2	Anchorage for Post Tensioning Systems	133

13.3	Mechanical Couplers	134
13.4	Sheathing Ducts and Joints	134
13.5	End Block Design and Detailing	136
13.6	Protective Grouting	138
13.7	Protection of Post Tensioned Tendons and Anchorages	139
<b>Section 14</b>	<b>Durability</b>	<b>140</b>
14.1	General	140
14.2	Common Mechanisms Leading to the Deterioration of Concrete Structures	140
14.3	Design for Durability	141
14.4	Additional Provisions for Specific Mechanisms of Deterioration	144
<b>Section 15</b>	<b>Detailing: General Requirements</b>	<b>147</b>
15.1	General	147
15.2	Reinforcing Steel	147
15.3	Prestressing Units	162
15.4	Coated Steels	169
<b>Section 16</b>	<b>Detailing Requirements of Structural Members</b>	<b>171</b>
16.1	General	171
16.2	Columns of Solid Section	171
16.3	R.C. Walls and Wall Type Piers	173
16.4	Hollow Piers/Columns	174
16.5	Beams	175
16.6	Solid Slabs	181
16.7	Corbels	185
16.8	Articulations	186
16.9	Deep Beams	186
16.10	Members with Unbonded Tendons	187
16.11	Concentrated Forces	187
16.12	Forces Associated with Change in Direction	189
16.13	Indirect Supports	190
16.14	Anchorage Zones for Post Tensioning Forces	190
<b>Section 17</b>	<b>Ductile Detailing for Seismic Resistance</b>	<b>192</b>
17.1	General	192
17.2	Concrete Piers/Columns	192
17.3	Foundations	199
<b>Section 18</b>	<b>Materials, Quality Control and Workmanship</b>	<b>200</b>
18.1	General	200
18.2	Untensioned Steel	200

18.3	Prestressing Steel	202
18.4	Material Ingredients of Concrete	205
18.5	Mix Proportions of Concrete	209
18.6	Acceptance Criteria	212
18.7	Grouting	214
18.8	Quality Control and Workmanship	216

### **Normative Annexures**

A-1	Actions, Design Situations and Combination of Actions	229
A-2	Additional Information and Data about Properties of Concrete and Steel	235
A-3	List of Standards and other Normative References	246
A-4	Structural Design by "Working Loads/Allowable Stresses Method"	251

### **Informative Annexures**

B-1	Concrete Shell Elements	268
B-2	Mechanisms of Deterioration of Concrete Structures	275
B-3	Effect of Live Loads on Deck Slabs	278

---



## SECTION 2 INTRODUCTION

The Design Criteria for Prestressed Concrete Road Bridges (Post-Tensioned Concrete); IRC: 18 and Standard Specification and Code of Practice for Road Bridges Section III, Cement Concrete (Plain and Reinforced); IRC: 21, both based on working stress method, were first published in December 1965 and October 1966 respectively. The last revisions of these two documents were carried out in the year 2000. These two codes stands withdrawn on publication of this Code.

The past two decades have seen unprecedented growth of knowledge in the field of concrete bridges, development of new structural forms, new methods of computer-based analysis and design and development of high strength materials. The need for a new rationalized code for bridge structures in general, based on the limit state approach, in line with international practices, has been felt for a long time. Keeping this in view, the task of writing a new code based on the Limit State Method, was taken up in 2001 by the Concrete (Plain, Reinforced and Prestressed) Structures Committee (B-4) and continued over several terms of the Committee. The present composition of the Committee is as follows:

Koshi, Ninan	.....	Convenor
Mukherjee, M.K.	.....	Co-convenor
Viswanathan, T.	.....	Member-Secretary

### ***Members***

Bhowmick, Alok	Kurian, Jose
Bhide, D.A.	Mullick, Dr. A.K.
Goel, Dr. Rajeev	Mittal, Dr. A.K.
Gupta, Vinay	Patankar, V.L.
Heggade, V.N.	Rajeshirke, U.K.
Joglekar, S.G.	Sharma, Aditya

Vaidya, Avinash

### ***Corresponding Member***

Haridas, G.R

### ***Ex-officio Members***

President, IRC (Liansanga)	DG(RD) & SS, MORT&H (A.V. Sinha)
Secretary General, IRC (R.P. Indoria)	

The task of drafting and finalization of the new Code of Practice for Concrete Road Bridge was completed by the B-4 Committee in September 2010. The draft was approved by the Bridges Specifications and Standards Committee at its meeting held at New Delhi on 25<sup>th</sup> October 2010 and later by the Executive Committee on 27<sup>th</sup> October 2010. The draft was discussed and approved by the Council of the Indian Roads Congress at the 192<sup>nd</sup> Council Meeting held at Nagpur on 12<sup>th</sup> November 2010.

The object of issuing the new Code of Practice for Concrete Road Bridges is to establish a common procedure for design and construction of road bridges in India based on the limit state method. This publication is meant to serve as a guide to both design and construction engineers, but compliance with the provisions therein does not relieve them, in any way, of the responsibility for the stability, soundness, durability and safety of the structures designed and constructed by them.

The design and construction of road bridges require an extensive and thorough knowledge of the science and technology involved and should be entrusted only to specially qualified engineers with adequate experience of bridge engineering, capable of ensuring correct design and execution of bridge works.

---

## **SECTION 3 DEFINITIONS AND NOTATIONS**

### **3.1 Terms and Definitions**

#### **3.1.1 Terms relating to structure**

##### **Structure**

Organised combination of connected parts designed to carry loads and provide adequate rigidity.

##### **Structural Member**

Physically distinguishable part of a structure, e.g. a column, a beam, a slab, a foundation pile.

##### **Structural System**

Assemblage of load-bearing members of a structure and the way in which these members function together.

##### **Structural Model**

Idealisation of the structural system used for the purposes of analysis, design and verification.

#### **3.1.2 Terms relating to design**

##### **Actions**

Refer 3.1.3

##### **Resistance**

Capacity of a member or component, or a cross-section of a member or component of a structure, to withstand actions without mechanical failure e.g. bending resistance, buckling resistance, tension resistance.

##### **Strength**

Mechanical property of a material indicating its ability to resist actions, usually given in units of stress, or magnitude of action.

## **Reliability**

Ability of a structure or a structural member to fulfil the specified requirements including the design working life for which it has been designed. Reliability is usually expressed in probabilistic terms.

## **Design Criteria**

Quantitative formulations that describe the conditions to be fulfilled for each limit state.

## **Design Situations**

Sets of physical conditions representing the real conditions occurring during a certain time interval for which the design will demonstrate that relevant limit states are not exceeded. Refer Annexure A-1.

### **Transient Design Situation**

Design situation that is relevant during a period much shorter than the design working life of the structure and which has a high probability of occurrence.

**Note:** A transient design situation refers to temporary conditions of the structure, of use or exposure, e.g. during construction or repair.

### **Persistent Design Situation**

Design situation that is relevant during a period of the same order as the design working life of the structure.

**Note:** Generally it refers to conditions of normal use.

### **Accidental Design Situation**

Design situation involving exceptional conditions of the structure or its exposure, including fire, explosion, impact or local failure.

### **Seismic Design Situation**

Design situation involving exceptional conditions of the structure when subjected to a seismic event.



**Design Working Life/Design Life**

Assumed period for which a structure or part of it is to be used for its intended purpose with anticipated maintenance but without necessity of major repair.

**Load Arrangement**

Identification of the position, magnitude and direction of a free action.

**Load Case**

Compatible load arrangements, sets of deformations and imperfections considered simultaneously with fixed/variable actions and permanent actions for a particular verification.

**Limit States**

States beyond which the structure no longer fulfills the relevant design criteria.

**Ultimate Limit States**

States associated with collapse or with other similar forms of structural failure.

**Note:** These generally correspond to the maximum load-carrying resistance of a structure or structural member.

**Serviceability Limit States**

States that correspond to conditions beyond which specified service requirements for a structure or structural member are no longer met.

**Irreversible Serviceability Limit States**

Serviceability limit states where some consequences of actions exceeding the specified service requirements will remain when the actions are removed.

**Reversible Serviceability Limit States**

Serviceability limit states where no consequences of actions exceeding the specified service requirements will remain when the actions are removed.

**Serviceability Criterion**

Design criterion for a serviceability limit state.

### 3.1.3 Terms relating to actions (Also refer Annexure A-1)

#### Action ( $F$ )

- (a) Set of forces (loads) applied to the structure (direct action);
- (b) Set of imposed deformations or accelerations caused for example, by temperature changes, moisture variation, uneven settlement or earthquakes (indirect action).

#### Effect of Action ( $E$ )

Effect of actions (or action effect) on structural members, (e.g. internal force, moment, stress, strain) or on the whole structure (e.g. deflection, rotation).

#### Permanent Action ( $G$ )

Action that is likely to act throughout a given reference period and for which the variation in magnitude with time is negligible, or for which the variation is always in the same direction (monotonic) until the action attains a certain limit value.

#### Variable Action ( $Q$ )

Action for which the variation in magnitude with time is neither negligible nor monotonic.

#### Accidental Action ( $A$ )

Action usually of short duration, but of significant magnitude, that may rarely occur on a given structure during the design life.

**Note:** An accidental action can be expected in some cases to cause severe global consequences on structures unless appropriate measures such as provision of alternative load path are taken.

#### Seismic Action ( $A_E$ )

Action that arises due to earthquake ground motions.

#### Geotechnical Action

Action transmitted to the structure by the ground, fill or groundwater.

**Fixed Action**

Action that has a fixed distribution and position over the structure or structural member such that the magnitude and direction of the action are determined unambiguously for the whole structure or structural member if this magnitude and direction are determined at one point on the structure or structural member.

**Free Action**

Action that may have various spatial distributions over the structure.

**Single Action**

Action that can be assumed to be statistically independent in time and space of any other action acting on the structure.

**Static Action**

Action that does not cause significant acceleration of the structure or structural members.

**Dynamic Action**

Action that causes significant acceleration of the structure or structural members.

**Quasi-static Action**

Dynamic action represented by an equivalent static action in a static model.

**Characteristic Value of an Action ( $F_k$ )**

Principal representative value of an action considered in the design process.

- Note:**
- (1) Insofar as a characteristic value can be fixed on statistical basis; it is chosen so as to correspond to a prescribed probability of not being exceeded on the unfavourable side during a 'reference period' taking into account the design working life of the structure and the duration of the design situation.
  - (2) In absence of data for arriving at value as per (1) a nominal value is used which conceptually performs the same function as that of characteristic value but is not associated with any probability number.

## **Nominal Value**

Value fixed on non-statistical bases, for instance, on acquired experience or on physical conditions, which may be used in place of characteristic value.

## **Reference Period**

Chosen period of time that is used as a basis for assessing statistically variable actions.

## **Combination Value of a Variable Action ( $\psi_0 Q_k$ )**

Value chosen, insofar as it can be fixed on statistical basis, so that the probability that the effects caused by the combination will be exceeded is approximately the same as by the characteristic value of an individual action. It may be expressed as a determined part of the characteristic value by using a factor  $\psi_0 \leq 1$ .

## **Frequent Value of a Variable Action ( $\psi_1 Q_k$ )**

Value determined, insofar as it can be fixed on statistical basis, so that either the total time, within the reference period, during which it is exceeded is only a small given part of the reference period, or the frequency of it being exceeded is limited to a given value. It may be expressed as a determined part of the characteristic value by using a factor  $\psi_1 \leq 1$ .

## **Quasi-Permanent Value of a Variable Action ( $\psi_2 Q_k$ )**

Value of a variable action as a fraction of characteristic load, which is present for substantial part of the reference period.

## **Accompanying Value of a Variable Action ( $\psi Q_k$ )**

Value of a variable action that accompanies the leading action in a combination.

**Note:** The accompanying value of a variable action may be the combination value, the frequent value or the quasi-permanent value.

## **Representative Value of an Action ( $F_{rep}$ )**

Value used for the verification of a limit state. A representative value may be the characteristic value ( $F_k$ ) or an accompanying value ( $\psi F_k$ ).

## **Design Value of an Action ( $F_d$ )**

Value obtained by multiplying the representative value by the partial factor  $\gamma_f$ .



## Combination of Actions

Set of design values used for the verification of the structural reliability for a limit state under the simultaneous influence of different actions.

### 3.1.4 Terms relating to material and product properties

#### Characteristic Value ( $X_k$ or $R_k$ )

Value of a material or product property having a prescribed probability of not being attained in a hypothetical unlimited test series. This value generally corresponds to a specified fractile of the assumed statistical distribution of the particular property of the material or product. A nominal value is used as the characteristic value in some circumstances.

#### Design Value of a Material or Product Property ( $X_d$ or $R_d$ )

Value obtained by dividing the characteristic value by a partial factor  $\gamma_m$  or  $\gamma_M$ , or, in special circumstances, by direct determination.

#### Nominal Value of a Material or Product Property ( $X_{nom}$ or $R_{nom}$ )

Value normally used as a characteristic value and established from an appropriate document.

#### Design Value of a Geometrical Property ( $a_d$ )

Generally a nominal value. Where relevant, values of geometrical quantities may correspond to some prescribed fractile of the statistical distribution.

### 3.1.5 Terms relating to structural analysis

#### Structural Analysis

Procedure or algorithm for determination of action effects in every point of a structure.

**Note:** A structural analysis may have to be performed at three levels using different models: global analysis, member analysis, local analysis.

#### Global Analysis

Determination, in a structure, of a consistent set of either internal forces and moments or stresses that are in equilibrium with a particular defined set of actions on the structure, and depend on geometrical, structural and material properties.

### **First order linear-elastic analysis without redistribution**

Elastic structural analysis based on linear stress/strain or moment/curvature laws and performed on the initial geometry of the structure.

### **First order linear-elastic analysis with redistribution**

Linear elastic analysis in which the internal moments and forces are modified for structural design, consistent with the given external actions and without more explicit calculation of the rotation capacity.

### **Second order linear-elastic analysis**

Elastic structural analysis, based on linear stress/strain and moment/curvature laws, applied to the geometry of the deformed structure.

### **First order non-linear analysis**

Structural analysis, performed on the initial geometry of the structure, that takes account of the non-linear deformation properties of materials.

**Note:** This definition includes first order analysis with non-linearity of any type, including plastic behaviour with or without hardening (e.g. bilinear diaphragms of stress-strain).

### **First order elastic-perfectly plastic analysis**

Structural analysis performed on the initial geometry of the structure based on moment/curvature relationships consisting of a linear elastic part followed by a plastic part without hardening.

### **Second order non-linear analysis**

Structural analysis, performed on the geometry of the deformed structure that takes account of the non-linear deformation properties of materials.

### **Second order elastic-perfectly plastic analysis**

Structural analysis performed on the geometry of the displaced (or deformed) structure based on moment/curvature relationships consisting of a linear elastic part followed by a plastic part without hardening.

## Elasto-plastic analysis (first or second order)

Structural analysis that uses stress-strain or moment/curvature relationships consisting of a linear elastic part followed by a plastic part with or without hardening.

## Rigid Plastic Analysis

Analysis, performed on the initial geometry of structure, that uses limit analysis theorem for direct assessment of ultimate loading.

**Note:** The moment-curvature law is assumed without elastic deformation and without hardening in plastic stage.

### 3.2 Notations

The following notations are generally used unless otherwise specified in the text or figures.

#### 3.2.1 Latin upper case letters

$A$	Accidental action
$A$	Cross-Sectional area;
$A_c$	Cross-Sectional area of concrete
$A_p$	Area of prestressing tendon or tendons
$A_s$	Cross-Sectional area of reinforcement
$A_{s,min}$	Minimum cross-sectional area of shear reinforcement
$A_{sw}$	Cross-Sectional area of shear reinforcement
$D$	Diameter of mandrel
$E$	Effect of action; or general expression for modulus of elasticity as per the context.
$E_c$	Tangent modulus of elasticity of normal weight concrete at a stress of $\sigma_c = 0$ .
$E_{c,eff}$	Effective modulus of elasticity of concrete
$E_{cd}$	Design value of modulus of elasticity of concrete
$E_{cm}$	Secant modulus of elasticity of concrete
$E_c(t)$	Tangent modulus of elasticity of normal weight concrete at a stress of $\sigma_c = 0$ and time $t$ .
$E_p$	Design value of modulus of elasticity of prestressing steel
$E_s$	Design value of modulus of elasticity of reinforcing steel
$E_I$	Bending stiffness
$E_{qu}$	Static equilibrium
$F$	Action
$F_d$	Design value of an action
$F_k$	Characteristic value of an action
$G_k$	Characteristic value of permanent action



$I$	Second moment of area of concrete Section
$L$	Length
$M$	Bending moment
$M_{Ed}$	Design value of the applied internal bending moment
$N$	Axial force
$N_{Ed}$	Design value of the applied axial force (tension or compression)
$P$	Prestressing force
$P_0$	Initial force at the active end of the tendon immediately after stressing
$Q_k$	Characteristic value of a variable action
$Q_{fat}$	Characteristic fatigue load
$R$	Resistance (also refer 3.1.4)
$S$	Internal forces and moments or first moment of area as per context
$SLS$	Serviceability limit state
$T$	Torsional moment
$T_{Ed}$	Design value of the applied torsional moment
$ULS$	Ultimate limit state
$V$	Shear force
$V_{Ed}$	Design value of the applied shear force
$X$	Refer definition in 3.1.4

### 3.2.2 Latin lower case letters

$a$	Distance
$a$	Geometrical data
$\Delta a$	Deviation for geometrical data
$b$	Overall width of a cross-section, or actual flange width in a T or L beam
$b_w$	Width of the web of T, I or L beams
$d$	Diameter; Depth
$d$	Effective depth of a cross-section
$d_g$	Largest nominal maximum aggregate size
$e$	Eccentricity
$f_{bd}$	Design Value of Ultimate bond stress
$f_c$	Compressive strength of concrete
$f_{cd}$	Design value of concrete compressive strength
$f_{ck}$	Characteristic compressive cube strength of concrete at 28 days
$f_{cm}$	Mean value of concrete cube compressive strength
$f_{ctk}$	Characteristic axial tensile strength of concrete
$f_{ctm}$	Mean value of axial tensile strength of concrete
$f_p$	Tensile strength of prestressing steel
$f_{pk}$	characteristic tensile strength of prestressing steel which is same as $f_p$ corresponding to breaking load given in the relevant IS codes listed in Table 18.2

$f_{p0,l}$	0.1% proof-stress of prestressing steel
$f_{p0,lk}$	Characteristic 0.1% proof-stress of prestressing steel
$f_{0,2k}$	Characteristic 0.2% proof-stress of reinforcement
$f_t$	Tensile strength of reinforcement
$f_{tk}$	Characteristic tensile strength of reinforcement
$f_y$	Yield strength of reinforcement
$f_{yd}$	Design yield strength of reinforcement
$f_{yk}$	Characteristic yield strength of reinforcement
$f_{ywd}$	Design yield of shear reinforcement
$h$	Height
$h$	Overall depth of a cross-section
$i$	Radius of gyration
$k$	Coefficient; Factor
$l$	(or $l$ or $L$ ) Length; Span
$l_e$	Effective length
$m$	Mass
$r$	Radius
$1/r$	Curvature at a particular Section
$t$	Thickness
$t$	Time being considered
$t_o$	The age of concrete at the time of loading
$u$	Perimeter of concrete cross-section, having area $A_c$
$u, v, w$	Components of the displacement of a point
$x$	Neutral axis depth
$x, y, z$	Coordinates
$z$	Lever arm of internal forces
$n$	Exponent for strain in concrete stress block

**3.2.3****Greek lower case letters**

$\alpha$	Angle; ratio
$\beta$	Angle; ratio; coefficient
$\gamma$	Partial factor
$\gamma_A$	Partial factor for accidental actions, $A$
$\gamma_c$	Partial factor for concrete
$\gamma_F$	Partial factor for actions, $F$
$\gamma_G$	Partial factor for permanent actions, $G$
$\gamma_M$	Partial factor for a material property, taking account of uncertainties in the material property itself, in geometric deviation and in the design model used.
$\gamma_P$	Partial factor for actions associated with prestressing, $P$
$\gamma_Q$	Partial factor for variable actions, $Q$

$\gamma_s$	Partial factor for reinforcing or prestressing steel
$\gamma_{s,fat}$	Partial factor for reinforcing or prestressing steel under fatigue loading
$\gamma_f$	Partial factor for actions without taking account of model uncertainties
$\gamma_g$	Partial factor for permanent actions without taking account of model uncertainties
$\gamma_m$	Partial factors for a material property, taking account only of uncertainties in the material property
$\delta$	Increment/redistribution ratio
$\zeta$	Reduction factor/distribution coefficient
$\epsilon_c$	Compressive strain in the concrete
$\epsilon_{cl}$	Compressive strain in the concrete at the peak stress $f_c$
$\epsilon_{cu}$	Ultimate compressive strain in the concrete
$\epsilon_u$	Strain of reinforcement or prestressing steel at maximum load
$\epsilon_{uk}$	Characteristic strain of reinforcement or prestressing steel at maximum load.
$\theta$	Angle
$\lambda$	Slenderness ratio
$\mu$	Coefficient of friction between the tendons and their ducts
$\nu$	Poisson's ratio
$\nu$	Strength reduction factor for concrete cracked in shear
$\zeta$	Ratio of bond strength of prestressing and reinforcing steel
$\rho$	Oven-dry density of concrete in kg/m <sup>3</sup>
$\rho_{1000}$	Value of relaxation loss (in %), at 1000 hours after tensioning and at a mean temperature of 20°C.
$\rho_l$	Reinforcement ratio for longitudinal reinforcement
$\rho_w$	Reinforcement ratio for shear reinforcement
$\sigma_c$	Compressive stress in the concrete
$\sigma_{cp}$	Compressive stress in the concrete from axial load or prestressing
$\sigma_{cu}$	Compressive stress in the concrete at the ultimate compressive strain $\epsilon_{cu}$
$\tau$	Torsional shear stress (shear/torsional stress in Annexure A4)
$\phi$	- Diameter of a reinforcing bar or of a prestressing duct - Sometimes used for creep coefficient without further suffixes.
$\phi(t, t_0)$	Creep coefficient, defining creep between times $t$ and $t_0$ , related to elastic deformation at 28 days
$\phi(\infty, t_0)$	Final value of creep coefficient
$\psi$	Factors defining representative values of variable actions
$\psi_o$	for combination values
$\psi_1$	for frequent values
$\psi_2$	for quasi-permanent values .
$\eta_k$	Non-Dimensional ratio of axial load to the capacity of concrete section (without reinforcement)



### 3.2.4 Physical units

The units of physical quantities are generally as per S.I. units, unless otherwise stated.

### 3.2.5 Mathematical Symbols and Operators

**Note:** Mathematical symbols and operators which are commonly used and have unique meaning are not listed. The operators and operations used in this code which have either more than one symbol or have more than one meaning for the same symbol are listed.

+	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Normally, a sign for addition.</li> <li>- Also used between two (or more) events, to mean that two (or more) events are to be taken as occurring together, e.g. + used in load combinations.</li> </ul>
x, *, ., or absence of any Symbol	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When used between two (or more) quantities, it means multiplication of the two (or more), e.g. A x B; A * B; A.B; and A B</li> </ul>
=	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When used in mathematical equation, shows equality of value between two sides of equation and in such cases, the dimensions expressed in length, mass and time are identical on both sides of the equation.</li> <li>- Also used in expression for a quantity or item, which is shown on Left Hand Side and which is expressed (or given) in the form appearing on the Right Hand Side. <b>Note:</b> For both equation and expression, the number is given as Eq. (No.).</li> </ul>
$\cong$	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Two sides (LHS &amp; RHS) are congruous or identical.</li> </ul>
$\approx$	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Two sides are approximately equal.</li> </ul>
‰	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Per thousand expressed in similar way as % for per cent.</li> </ul>
$exp(*)$	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- e raised to power (*), where e is the Natural Base (Naperian Base or Eulers number) i.e. <math>e^*</math>, approximately equals 2.71828.</li> </ul>
$y = \max \{f_1; f_2; f_3 \dots\}$ etc.	Value of $y$ becomes maximum of the values of functions of $f_1; f_2; f_3$
$y = \min \{f_1; f_2; f_3 \dots\}$	Value of $y$ becomes minimum of the values of functions of $f_1; f_2; f_3$ etc.
Vector quantities	Vector quantities like force, strains etc. are generally not given any sign, the direction or sense (compression/tension) of which is to be understood by the context. Where a consistence sign convention is necessary as in case of developing mathematical solutions or computerised solutions, the designer should choose appropriate and consistent sign convention.

## SECTION 4 GENERAL

### 4.1 Scope

The Code of Practice for Concrete Road Bridges, hereinafter referred to as the 'Code', this code strives to establish common procedures for the design and construction of concrete road bridges including footbridges in India.

The requirements specified in the Code aim at achieving construction of safe, serviceable, durable and economical bridges. It covers design principles, detailed design criteria and practical rules, material specifications, workmanship, quality control and all such aspects which affect the characteristics/ability of the bridge to meet the aims.

This Code deals with the structural use of plain cement concrete, reinforced concrete, prestressed concrete and composite construction using concrete elements in bridges and is applicable to all structural elements using normal weight concrete (density in the range of  $(24 \pm 4 \text{ kN/m}^3)$  and made using cements, aggregate, mineral admixtures, chemical admixtures and water, as given in the Section dealing with material specifications in the Code.

All provisions of the Code may not be applicable for hybrid structural systems, or for structures using other types of concrete. However, for concrete portion of hybrid elements/structures and for other type of concrete, relevant provision of this Code may be used. The term "other types of concrete" includes, but is not restricted to:

- (1) Light Weight Concrete (density  $<20 \text{ kN/m}^3$ ) and Heavy Weight Concrete (density  $>28 \text{ kN/m}^3$ ).
- (2) Concretes using cements, aggregates, mineral and chemical admixtures other than those covered in Section 18.
- (3) Concretes with specially modified properties.

Such uses shall be based on the specialist knowledge, specialist literature and/or experimental data at the discretion and responsibility of owners/designers.

Requirements of blast resistance and fire resistance are not covered in the Code.

### 4.2 Underlying Assumptions

The applicability of this document rests on the following assumptions:

- (1) The choice of structural system and the design of the structure are made by appropriately qualified and experienced personnel.



- (2) Execution is carried out by personnel having appropriate qualification, skill and experience.
  - (3) Adequate supervision and quality control are provided during all stages of design and construction.
  - (4) The construction materials and products are provided and used as specified by relevant national standards.
  - (5) The intended levels of properties of material adopted in the design are available.
  - (6) The structure is used as intended and is maintained adequately.
-

## **SECTION 5 BASIS OF DESIGN**

### **5.1 Aims of Design**

#### **5.1.1 General performance requirements**

The bridge, as a complete structural system and its structural elements should perform their functions adequately and safely, with appropriate degrees of reliability during design life and during construction. It should withstand all actions, consisting of applied and induced loads as well as environmental influences liable to occur, retaining its structural integrity, and also withstand accidental loads (e.g. barge impact/vehicular impact) and earthquake loads without causing damage, which is disproportionate to the causative event. Adequacy of performance is defined in terms of serviceability, safety, durability and economy.

#### **5.1.2 Reliability aspects and codal approach**

The term 'degree of reliability' is used to indicate the acceptably low level of probability of failure in meeting the expected performance during a specified period of time.

Determination of the reliability measured in terms of statistical probability requires knowledge of statistical parameters which define loading and material strengths. This data together with knowledge of structural models of resistance enable evaluation of structural performance in probabilistic terms. At the present state of knowledge, determination of reliability is possible only in limited load cases for simple structures. The Code, therefore, strives to achieve the desirable degree of reliability by approximate methods based upon a combination of the following:

- (1) Known statistical parameters describing properties of materials and actions.
- (2) Deterministic models of structural behaviour.
- (3) The international practices and past experience of acceptable/unacceptable performance of structures.
- (4) Partial factors for actions and resistance models based on calibration and rationalisation of existing international practices.

#### **5.1.3 Safety, serviceability, durability and economy**

The requirements of the Code directly address safety, serviceability and durability aspects.

Economy is indirectly addressed by:

- (1) Allowing maximum exploitation of materials and specifying use of technologies which are consistent with the minimum/desirable standards of safety, serviceability and durability,
- (2) Accepting appropriate levels of economic risks while specifying performance levels by taking into consideration different design situations, load combinations (events), importance of structure in view of consequences of failure, and by specifying different intended design lives for replaceable and non-replaceable parts.

## 5.2 Limit State Philosophy of Design

- (1) The response of the structure when subjected to different magnitudes of loads lies in different states (domains). 'Limit States' are defined as limits of domains beyond which the structure does not meet specified performance criteria.

In 'Limit State Philosophy' of design, various boundaries of acceptable/unacceptable performance are defined together with the circumstances in which such performances are expected.

- (2) Two basic groups of limit states are considered:
  - (a) **Ultimate Limit States (ULS):** These limit states cover static equilibrium and failure of structural elements or structure as a whole, when acted upon by 'ultimate design loads'.
  - (b) **Serviceability Limit States (SLS):** These limit states deal with the condition of the structure subjected to influence of 'serviceability design loads'. These conditions include level of internal stress, fatigue failure, deflection, damage to structural element such as cracking, and discomfort to users due to vibrations.
- (3) The representative values of actions and combination of actions representing different design situations are defined. The representative values of loads are modified by using load factors for each of the basic limit states, which are then combined using combination factors. The combination factors take into account the probability of simultaneous occurrence of loads.



- (4) The response of the structure is calculated using principles of mechanics and simplified established models describing behaviour of concrete members. These methods also account for inherent geometric variations which are kept within acceptable construction tolerances.
- (5) The response of the structure is required to lie within acceptable domain for different combinations of actions.
- (6) The structure designed by following this philosophy, and constructed by satisfying other stipulations of the Code are deemed to meet the general performance requirements stipulated in Clause 5.1.1.

### **5.3 Limit States**

The structure shall be designed for the following limit states:

#### **5.3.1 Ultimate limit states (ULS)**

##### **5.3.1.1 *Limit state of equilibrium***

When subjected to various design combinations of ultimate loads the bridge or any of its components, considered as a rigid body, shall not become unstable.

##### **5.3.1.2 *Limit state of strength***

The bridge or any of its components shall not lose its capacity to sustain the various ultimate load combinations by excessive deformation, transformation into a mechanism, rupture, crushing or buckling.

#### **5.3.2 Serviceability limit states (SLS)**

##### **5.3.2.1 *Limit state of internal stress***

The internal stresses developed in the materials of structural elements shall not exceed the specified magnitudes when subjected to combination of serviceability design actions. The stresses are to be estimated using resistance models to represent the behaviour of structure, as stipulated in the Code.

##### **5.3.2.2 *Limit state of crack control***

- (1) The cracking of reinforced, partially prestressed, and prestressed concrete structures under serviceability load combinations is kept within acceptable limits of crack widths in such a way as not to adversely affect the durability or impair the aesthetics.

- (2) Alternatively, the control of cracking is deemed to be satisfied by following restrictions on amount and spacing of reinforcement.

#### 5.3.2.3 *Limit state of deformation*

- (1) The deformation of the bridge or its elements when subjected to combination of design actions shall not adversely affect the proper functioning of its elements, appurtenances, and riding quality.
- (2) Deformations during construction shall be controlled to achieve proper geometry of finished structure.

#### 5.3.2.4 *Limit state of vibration*

- (1) For footbridges or component of bridges specifically designed to carry footway loading, the direct verification of vibration limits is required, for which specialist literature may be referred.
- (2) For special types of bridges and their components dynamic effects under action of wind are required to be calculated and verified to be within acceptable limits. Model tests are required under certain circumstances.
- (3) For other types of bridges, the limit state of vibration under serviceability load combinations is deemed to be satisfied by limiting deflection of elements.

#### 5.3.2.5 *Limit state of fatigue*

The bridge or any of its components shall not lose its capacity to carry design loads by virtue of its materials reaching fatigue limits due to its loading history. For carrying out fatigue verification, specialist literature may be referred.

However, fatigue verification is not necessary for the following:

- a) For Reinforced concrete structures when the stress in the tensile reinforcement is less than 300 MPa under Rare Combination of Serviceability Limit State as against  $0.8 f_y$  specified in Clause No. 12.2.2.
- b) For prestressed concrete structures under the frequent combination of action and prestressing force, only compressive stresses occur at the extreme concrete fibers, under Serviceability Limit State.

## 5.4 **Actions and their Combinations**

### 5.4.1 **Types of action**

- (1) An action is:
- Direct action, i.e. force (load) applied to structure.
  - Indirect action, i.e. forces arising from imposed or constrained deformation, such as that caused by settlement, temperature changes, seismic acceleration and impact loads.

(2) Actions are classified:

(a) By their variation in time (duration of application) :

- Permanent Actions (G), e.g. self-weight,
- Variable Actions (Q), e.g. imposed live loads,
- Accidental Actions (A), e.g. barge Impact loads.

Some variable actions acting for long durations are treated on par with permanent actions. These are called 'Quasi-Permanent' actions.

(b) By their nature and/or by response of the structure to them:

- Static actions are those which do not cause significant acceleration of members on which they act.
- Dynamic actions are those which cause significant acceleration of members on which they act.

Some dynamic actions can be represented by 'Quasi-Static' actions, which are the static values producing equivalent or representative response (stress/deformation) in the structure caused by the dynamic action.

(3) Prestressing force (P) is a permanent action with time-dependent variation.

## **5.4.2 Characteristic and combinational values of actions**

### **5.4.2.1 *Characteristic value***

The characteristic value of an action is generally the main representative value, which can be based upon the statistical distribution of magnitudes of action (e.g. a mean value, or upper or lower fractile value). Alternatively, a representative 'nominal value' is specified which is treated as a characteristic value.

A single value is generally specified, except where the design is sensitive to variation of magnitude in which case lower and upper values (also referred to as 'inferior' and 'superior' values respectively) are also specified in addition to mean value. These may be specified as absolute values or as a multiple of characteristic value.

### **5.4.2.2 *Combinational value***

- (1) A structure during its construction and service life is acted upon by various direct or indirect actions at different times in different



combinations, representing various design situations. Some of these situations are represented by a few combinations chosen for design checks, for which the response of the structure is calculated and verified not to exceed the limit states.

- (2) The combinational value is represented by characteristic value multiplied by a factor, which takes into account the probability of simultaneous occurrence of the most likely unfavourable values of several independent actions.
- (3) Various design situations (represented by various load combinations) for which different limit states are to be checked are given in IRC:6 and Annexure A-1. All components of the structure are not required to be verified for all limit states and all possible combinations. The requirements or exemptions are covered under relevant clauses of the Code dealing with such components.

## **5.5 Representative Values of Properties of Materials**

### **5.5.1 General**

The constituent materials of structure acting singly or in a composite action with other materials have certain properties which determine their own response and the behaviour of the structural elements when acted upon by various loads. Some of the material and structural properties depend upon the type of load, its duration, magnitude, and the loading history. Some properties are time-dependent, while others are affected by environmental actions. Some properties depend upon the physical size (dimensions) of the structural member.

Almost all the properties exhibit statistical variation in their numerical values. Many of the properties show strong co-relations with other properties, which permit sufficiently accurate, if not exact, estimation of their value from the values of other properties by use of mathematical expressions. Correlations are based on laboratory or field observations and statistical regression analysis. A few of these properties are chosen as descriptive and/or representative properties of the materials (e.g. self compacting concrete). They are often used to define the material itself or its grade (e.g. concrete grade M 40 and reinforcing steel Fe 500). Standard methods of testing for measuring such values are specified by Bureau of Indian Standards or other national / international authorities.

### **5.5.2 Representative values**

Depending upon the purpose of carrying out the evaluation, one or more of the following three representative values are used in the design:

- (1) Average or statistical mean value.
- (2) A lower fractile value (inferior value) based on the statistical distribution function or the statistical mean value suitably reduced by a factor.
- (3) An upper fractile value (superior value) based on the statistical distribution function, or the statistical mean value suitably increased by a factor.

The representative values of commonly used materials are defined in Section 6.

### **5.5.3 Other methods of assessment of properties**

When higher level of accuracy is desired in evaluating response of the structure, use of more accurate values of other properties than those obtained from co-relations used in Section 6 and Annexure A-2 are required. In such cases, these should be based upon one of the following:

- (1) More accurate and elaborate methods/expressions which incorporate more number of factors influencing the required values reported in specialist literature from established and reliable sources.
- (2) Laboratory/field testing using standard methods of testing and measurements and based on sufficient number of tests as required by statistical methods of establishing desired accuracy (usually 95 percent confidence level). Normally, to establish mean and standard deviation, not less than 30 samples are required.

## **5.6 Analytical Methods to Evaluate Behaviour of Structures**

### **5.6.1 Global analysis of structure**

The purpose of this analysis is the verification of overall stability and establishment of effects of action on the whole or a part of the structure. These effects include the distribution of internal forces and moments as well as stresses, strains, curvatures, rotations and displacements in static or dynamic modes. To carry out analysis the geometry, boundary conditions and behaviour of the structure and its components need to be idealised. The



structure is idealised by considering it as made up of elements, which can be linear, two dimensional or three dimensional. Classical methods of mechanics or modern techniques such as finite element can be used for analysis. The mathematical model should be capable of evaluating the desired effect with sufficient accuracy.

### **5.6.2 Local analyses**

In addition to global analysis of structure or its elements, local analyses will be necessary particularly in the regions of stress concentrations and geometric discontinuities.

### **5.6.3 Idealisation, modelling and adequacy**

Behaviour of structure and its components can be represented to various degrees of accuracy. The general principles as well as normally used methods are covered in Section 7. The idealisation and modelling should be adequate to estimate the relevant action effects. The interaction of properties of constituent materials with heterogeneous properties should be appropriately taken into account.

Appropriate methods of analysis such as elastic analysis, non-elastic analysis with limited redistribution, plastic analysis with actual or idealised material properties are indicated depending upon the level of accuracy required. Necessity of including the second order effects in the analysis is indicated where it is important.

## **5.7 Design Based on Full Scale Testing**

Design of some elements like crash barriers, fenders, prestressing anchors, etc., can be based on full scale tests of the prototype. The failure load/capacity is defined as that causing either irreparable damage, or pre-defined limit of deformation.

## **5.8 Durability Aspects**

The durability recommendations of this Code are based on the strategies adopted regarding aspects indicated in the following Clauses. These strategic options/choices in design, detailing and construction are intended to ensure durability as well as serviceability and safety, for a period not less than the intended service life of the structure.

### **5.8.1 Design service life**

The following table indicates the 'design service life' of some common types of bridges.

**Table 5.1 Design Service Life**

<b>Nomenclature of Design Service life</b>	<b>Useful life</b>	<b>Example</b>
Normal	100 years or more	All bridges unless otherwise specifically classified by owner
Temporary	10 years or less	1) Bridge on temporary access roads. 2) Bridge for constructional facility.
Special Applications	Up to 20 years or as specified by the owner	1) Bridge rehabilitated for a short term. 2) Bridge for projects/industries with planned economic life of short duration.

### **5.8.2 Use of appropriate values of time-dependent material properties**

Variation of strengths such as reduction of concrete strength by sustained loading as well as degradation of materials, effects of creep and shrinkage of concrete, relaxation of steel and fatigue are some of the time dependent design properties. The values of such time dependent properties to be used in the design shall take into account design service life.

### **5.8.3 Specification of actions and action-effects**

For actions of environmental origin, appropriate return period is specified depending on the design life. The probability of failure during life of structure depends on the return period of load, the design life and probability of failure in unit period for the specified design value of load (unit period of one year and return period expressed in years are normally used).

### **5.8.4 Control of properties of materials**

The permissible limits of known harmful elements in acceptable and durable materials are specified in Section 14.

### **5.8.5 Control of attack on materials by aggressive elements under different atmospheric conditions**

Certain aggressive chemical elements in the surrounding environment such as oxygen, carbon-dioxide, sulphates and chlorides penetrate concrete and cause corrosion of steel in concrete. The moisture content in concrete and temperature directly affect the process of corrosion. The depth of penetration of these harmful elements into concrete depends on the permeability of concrete and time.

The process of deterioration is mitigated by recommending suitable materials (such as concrete having certain qualities), cover to steel, improved corrosion resistant steel, etc., for different classes of environment.

Externally applied protective barriers are indicated in certain circumstances.

#### **5.8.6 Maintenance**

Periodic inspection and adequate maintenance are prerequisites for ensuring durability of structure. All records of inspection and repairs should be available to concerned authority.

---



## **SECTION 6 MATERIAL PROPERTIES AND THEIR DESIGN VALUES**

### **6.1 General**

**6.1.1** The analysis and design of the structure and its elements require knowledge of the physical, chemical, mechanical, load-dependent, time-dependant and process-dependent properties of its materials. The properties include those governing the composite action of materials acting interactively with one another as well as acting individually. Simplified rules describing these properties which are consistent with the analysis and design models permitted by this Code are given in the following Clauses.

**6.1.2** In special cases where more exact analyses and models of behaviour are to be considered, more representative rules describing these properties are needed, some of which are given in Annexure A-2. In addition, reference to international Codes, published literature, laboratory test reports or field tests, may also be made. However, the reliability of the referenced source and/or reproducibility of test values should be established.

**6.1.3** Some of the properties are strongly influenced by activities of construction and work procedures. Use of appropriate technological methods, deployment of qualified and trained work force combined with methods of quality assurance are requisite pre-conditions for realising in practice the properties assumed in the design. Minimum acceptable standards of workmanship are given in Section 18.

**6.1.4** Specifications of structural materials to be used in construction of bridges shall conform to the Indian Standards given in Section 18.

**6.1.5** Materials conforming to other international standards can be used provided they meet the minimum requirements (lower or upper values as the case may be) given in the relevant Indian Standards and this Code.

### **6.2 Untensioned Steel Reinforcement**

#### **6.2.1 Specification and grades**

Reinforcement shall consist of hot rolled, thermo-mechanical or heat-treated rods, de-coiled rods or cold worked steel of various grades given in Table 6.1. The grade designations, definitive properties and other properties, as adopted by the relevant Indian Standards, are given in Section 18 (Table 18.1). The steel may be coated, or galvanised to improve its resistance to corrosion. Use of stainless steel is permitted subject to requirements stipulated in Section 6.2.3.3.

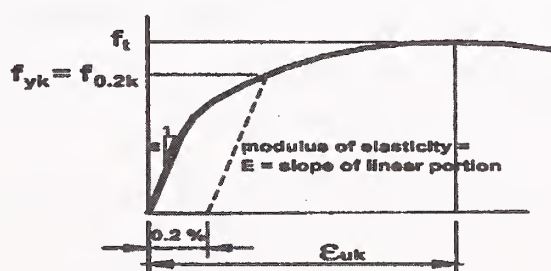
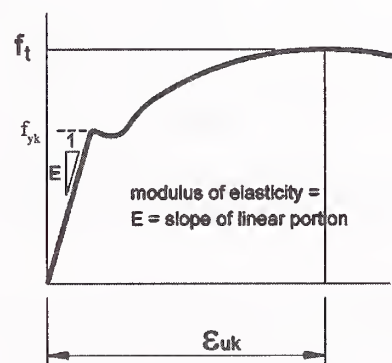
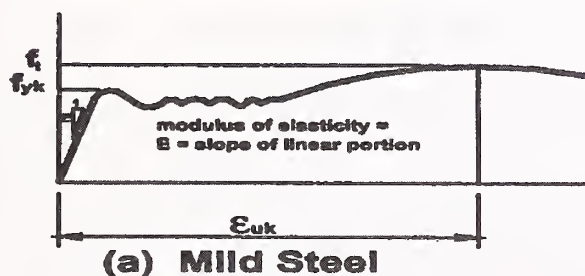
**Table 6.1 Grades of Reinforcing Steel**

Type of Steel	Grade/Designation
Mild Steel (MS)	Grade-I
High Yield Strength Deformed Steel (HYSD Steel)	Fe 415
	Fe 415D
	Fe 500
	Fe 500D
	Fe 550
	Fe 550D Fe 600

### 6.2.2 Strength, stress-strain diagrams, modulus of elasticity and ductility

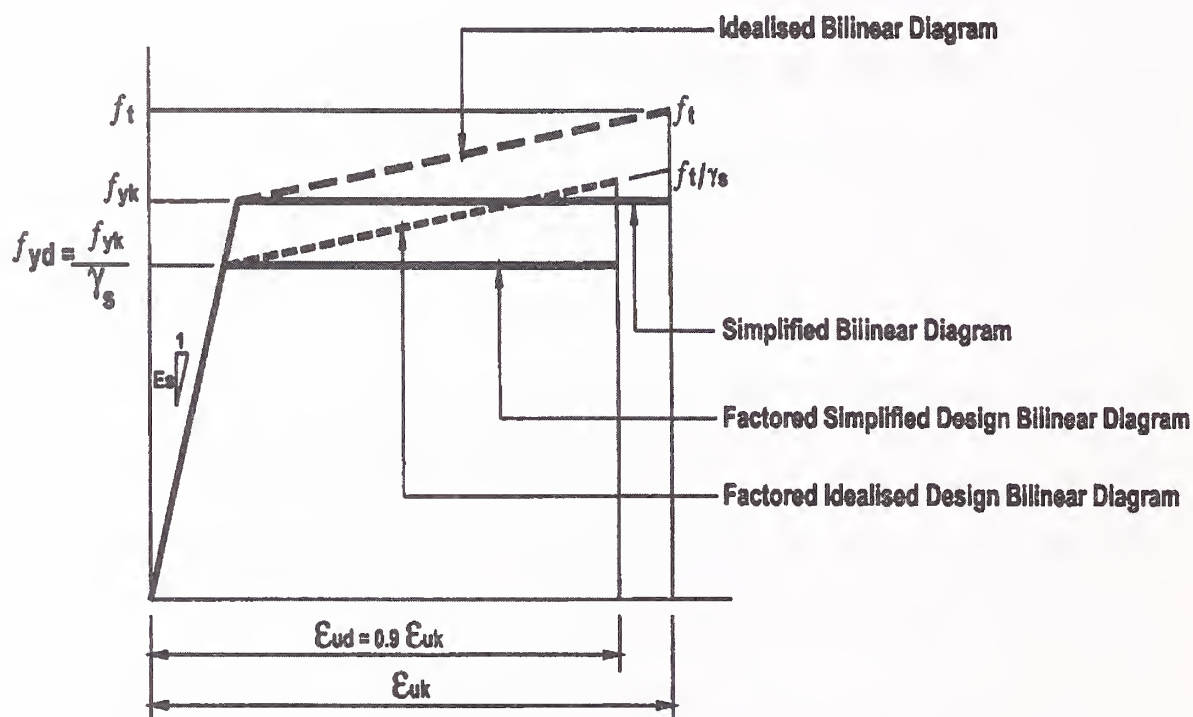
The minimum strength, as specified in relevant IS Standards, which is either the yield strength in case of mild steel or 0.2 percent proof strength in case of high yield steel, is notionally taken as the characteristic strength  $f_{yk}$ .

The stress-strain diagrams of mild steel and high yield strength deformed steel are typically as shown in Fig. 6.1 (a), (b) & (c), which also define various important stresses, strains and modulus of elasticity. The ductility requirements measured by ratio  $f_t / f_{yk}$  and minimum elongation are given in Table 18.1. The modulus of elasticity can be taken as 200 GPa for design purposes.

**Fig. 6.1 Stress-Strain Diagram of Untensioned Reinforcement**



For design purposes any one of the two diagrams, viz. idealised bilinear or simplified bilinear diagram as given in Fig.6.2 may be used; after reducing the stresses by material factor  $\gamma_s$ .



- Notes:** (1)  $\gamma_s$  is taken as 1.15 for basic and seismic combination, and 1.0 for accidental combination
- (2) Value of  $\epsilon_{uk}$  shall be taken as the uniform elongation given in the standard governing the manufacture of reinforcement.

**Fig. 6.2 Bilinear Stress-Strain Diagram of Reinforcing Steel for Design**

The idealised bilinear diagram has sloping top branch joining  $\left( \epsilon_{yk} = \frac{f_{yk}}{E_s}; f_{yk} \right)$  and  $(\epsilon_{uk}; f_t)$ , where  $f_{yk}$ ,  $f_t$ ,  $\epsilon_{uk}$  are the minimum values required by relevant IS Codes referred to in Clause 18.2.1 (Table 18.1). The factored idealised design diagram is obtained by factoring stress values by  $\left( \frac{1}{\gamma_s} \right)$ , that is by taking  $f_{yd} = \frac{f_{yk}}{\gamma_s}$ , and limiting design strain to  $\epsilon_{ud} = 0.9\epsilon_{uk}$ .

### 6.2.3 Products with improved corrosion resistance

Reinforcing steel bars with improved corrosion resistance by any of the methods described in Section 18 can be used as reinforcement provided they meet the minimum strength, proof stress and elongation characteristics as specified in Table 18.1. The design properties

are considered to be the same as per Clause 6.2.2 except as given in Clause 6.2.3.2 for epoxy coated reinforcement.

#### **6.2.3.1      *Galvanised reinforcement***

The strength as well as elongation and bond properties of galvanised reinforcement are not adversely affected by galvanising.

#### **6.2.3.2      *Epoxy-coated reinforcement***

Reinforcing bars conforming to IS 1786 can be coated by fusion bonded epoxy conforming to IS 13620-1993.

The bond of coated reinforcement is lowered by upto 20 percent of that of uncoated reinforcement. In detailing of steel the lap length and anchorage lengths given in Section 15 should be increased by 25 percent.

#### **6.2.3.3      *Stainless steel reinforcement***

Properties of stainless steel reinforcement shall not be inferior to the carbon steel reinforcement of corresponding strength class. For bond properties reference should be made to the relevant code or established on basis of tests.

**Note:** The Indian Standard for stainless steel reinforcement is under preparation. The British Standard BS:6744:2001, which covers suitable stainless steels for use as reinforcement may be referred.

### **6.3              **Prestressing Steel****

#### **6.3.1              **Specifications, grades, strength, elongation and relaxation****

Prestressing steel in the following forms, conforming to Indian Standards given in Section 18, Tables 18.2 to 18.5 shall be used.

- Plain or indented wires
- Stress-relieved multi-ply strands
- High tensile steel bars

Steels conforming to other international standards but satisfying the minimum strength, elongation, and relaxation characteristics of Indian Standards may be used.

#### **6.3.2              **Minimum sizes****

The steels of nominal sizes and ultimate strengths having characteristics as mentioned in Table 18.2 to 18.5 are permitted for use in bridges designed for normal life (Refer Table 5.1).

For other bridges mentioned in Table 5.1, steels having smaller diameters than those given in the Tables 18.3 to 18.5 but otherwise meeting the requirements of Indian Standards mentioned therein, can be used.

### **6.3.3 Other properties**

#### **6.3.3.1 *Ductility***

The requirements of ductility of steel are deemed to be satisfied by use of steel having the minimum elongations specified in Section 18.3.

The wires/strands shall also pass the bendability test (reverse bending) as specified in relevant Indian Standards.

#### **6.3.3.2 *Tolerance on size/diameter***

The relevant Indian Standards specify the manufacturing tolerances on diameters/size of various products which remain valid for general acceptance of the material and the source of supply.

### **6.3.4 Coated wires/strands**

The wires/strands conforming to Indian Standards can be provided with protective coatings, like galvanising or epoxy coating, carried out in specialised manufacturing units. However, if the technological processes affect any of the mechanical and physical properties, such modified properties should be taken into account in design.

### **6.3.5 Stress-strain properties for design**

Typical stress/strain and ultimate elongation of prestressing wires and strands are shown in Fig. 6.3 and 6.4. The actual  $E$  value varies between 195 GPa and 216 GPa. For prestressing steels, the stress is to be taken as force divided by the nominal cross sectional area.

For the purpose of analysis and design, either the diagrams shown in Fig. 6.3 or the simplified bilinear diagram as shown in Fig. 6.4 (any one of shape A and shape B) can be used. The ' $E$ ' value of 200 GPa for wires and 195 GPa for strands can be used in the design up to the elastic limit (first part of bilinear diagram unless more exact value is required, (e.g. for verification of elongation during stressing operations, which should be taken on the basis of actual field tests.)



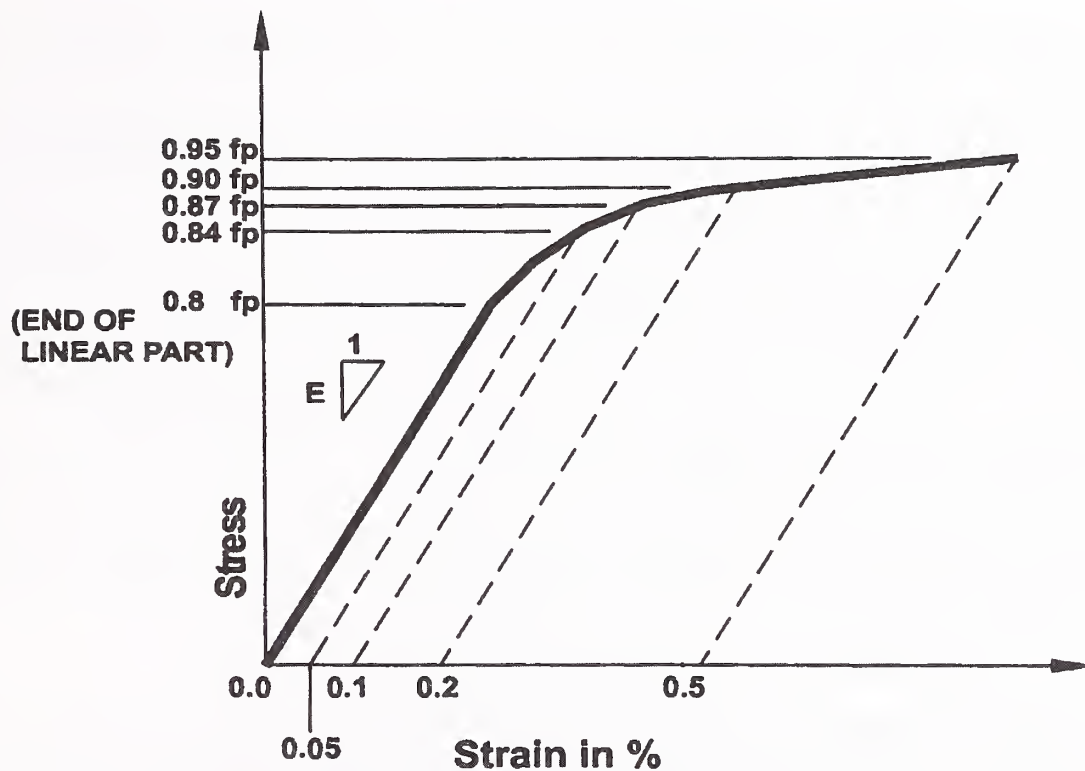
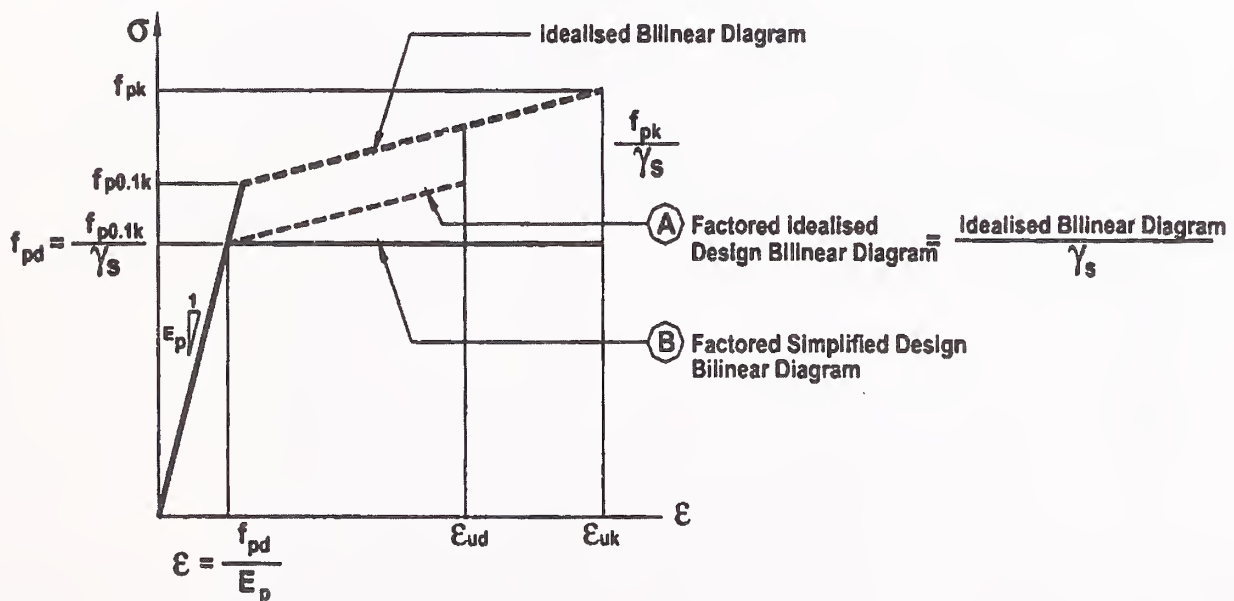


Fig. 6.3 Representative Stress-Strain Curve for Wires (Stress Relieved), Strands and Bars



$E_p$  = Slope of Elastic Phase  
= 200 GPa/195 GPa for wires/strands  
respectively/irrespective of  $\gamma_s$  values

$f_{pk}$  = Ultimate Stress  
 $\epsilon_{ud}$  = Strain at Design Ultimate Stress

**Note:**  $\gamma_s$  is taken as 1.15 for basic and seismic combinations, and 1.0 for accidental combinations

Fig. 6.4 Bilinear Stress-strain Diagram of Prestressing Steel for Design



The idealised bilinear diagram shown in Fig.6.4 has sloping top branch joining  $\left( \varepsilon = \frac{f_{p0.1k}}{E_p}; f_{p0.1k} \right)$  to  $(\varepsilon_{uk}, f_{pk})$ , where  $f_{p0.1k}$  is taken from manufacturer's data, or established by tests in field. In absence of specific data,  $f_{p0.1k}$  can be taken as  $0.87 f_{pk}$ .

For strands, stress values shall be based on the nominal cross-sectional area given in Table 18.4. The idealised design shape (A) is obtained by factoring idealised bilinear diagram by  $\frac{1}{\gamma_s}$ , and taking design strain and stress not greater than  $0.9 \varepsilon_{uk}$ , with corresponding value of design stress.

For simplified bilinear design diagram shape (B), having horizontal branch, the strain limit need not be checked.

### 6.3.6 Relaxation loss for design

In absence of actual testing, the design value of relaxation for long term losses may be taken as three times the 1000 hours value measured at initial stress of 70 percent of UTS, as specified in the relevant Codes in Section 18. For initial stress other than 70 percent of UTS, the values given in Table 6.2 may be used

**Table 6.2 Relaxation for other Values of Initial Stress**

(Expressed as percent of initial stress tested at 1000 hours at  $20^\circ\text{C} \pm 2^\circ\text{C}$ )

Initial Stress	Relaxation loss for Normal relaxation steel (%)	Relaxation loss for low relaxation steel(%)
$\leq 0.5 f_p$	0	0
$0.6 f_p$	2.5	1.25
$0.7 f_p$	5.0	2.5
$0.8 f_p$	9.0	4.5

**Table 6.3 Relaxation Loss Upto 1000 Hours**

(As percent of 1000 hours value)

Time in Hours		1	5	20	100	200	500	1000
% loss of 1000 hrs. loss	Normal Relaxation Steel	34	44	55	70	78	90	100
	Low Relaxation Steel	37	47	57	72	79	90	100

For periods less than 1000 hours, the value of relaxation loss may be taken as per Table 6.3. For the early age relaxation in case of initial temperatures higher than  $40^\circ\text{C}$ , as in case of steam curing, Annexure A-2 may be referred.

## 6.4 Concrete

Cement, fine aggregates, coarse aggregates, mineral admixtures and water constitute the main material ingredients of concrete. Chemical admixtures are added to fresh concrete to improve its workability. For specification of constituents of concrete Section 18 and the relevant Indian Standards may be referred. For use of concretes designed to have special and different characteristics from those given in this Section, specialist literature may be referred.

### 6.4.1 Grade designation

Concrete shall be designated by type and its grade-designation based on characteristic strength as described in Table 6.4, where:

- (a) **Ordinary Concrete** is made on the basis of nominal mix proportioned by weight of its main ingredients - cement, coarse and fine aggregates and water.

**Table 6.4 Main Groups of Concrete and its Strength-Grades**

Types of Concrete/Grade Designation			Characteristic Strength in MPa
Ordinary Concrete	Standard Concrete	High Performance Concrete	
M15	M15		15
M20	M20		20
	M25		25
	M30	M30	30
	M35	M35	35
	M40	M40	40
	M45	M45	45
	M50	M50	50
		M55	55
		M60	60
		M65	65
		M70	70
		M75	75
		M80	80
		M85	85
		M90	90

**Notes:**

- (1) Characteristic Strength is the lower 5 percent fractile value of the statistical distribution of strength at 28 days, measured by samples prepared and tested as per Section 18.5.4, - each



sample consisting of 3 cubes of 150 mm size. The grade designation is the nearest lower limit of the range in multiple of 5 MPa within which the actual characteristic strength falls.

- (2) For concretes using mineral admixtures and those using high early strength cements, the properties of setting time and time-dependent strength gain are different from those of standard and ordinary concrete. Cognisance of such modified properties should be taken in deciding de-shuttering time, curing period and early age loading.
- (3) Use of Strength other than 28 days Strength:  
Actual strength achievable (or achieved) at other than 28 days strength, but not at more than 84 days in case of slow setting concretes, can be chosen to base the design/construction choices, if found more appropriate. This decision should be based on achievement of early/delayed strength, and the age at which the first design load, apart from the self-weight, is expected to be resisted by the structure.
- (b) **Standard Concrete** is made on the basis of design mix proportioned by weight of its ingredients, which in addition to cement, aggregates and water, may contain chemical admixtures to achieve certain target values of various properties in fresh condition, achievement of which is monitored and controlled during production by suitable tests. Generally, concretes up to strength Grade M50 are included in this type.
- (c) **High Performance Concrete** is similar to standard concrete but contains additional one or more mineral admixtures providing binding characteristics and partly acting as inert filler material which increase its strength, reduce its porosity and modify its other properties in fresh as well as hardened condition. Concretes upto Grade M90 are included in this type.

## 6.4.2 Design properties of concrete

### 6.4.2.1 General

- (1) The recommended design properties are co-related to 28 days characteristic compressive strength, unless specified otherwise.
- (2) Depending on the purpose of analysis, some of the properties are used either at their mean (average) value, or at lower characteristic value or at upper characteristic value based on 5 percent fractile or 95 percent fractile respectively.

- (3) Stress-strain relationship for overall analysis of structure, stress-strain relationship for sectional design, various moduli of elasticity, Poisson's ratio, tensile strength, fracture mechanical strength, multi-axial strengths, etc., are the mechanical properties needed for various purposes of design. Unless greater accuracy is needed justifying separate and direct testing for these characteristics, the values given in Table 6.5 may be used in design, which are based on their relation to the compressive strength. The co-relation equations are given in Annexure A-2.
- (4) Some of the time-dependent behaviours of structure and time dependent effects are permitted to be evaluated by using simplified expressions, using appropriately modified values of some properties, (e.g. factored value of the modulus of elasticity to incorporate creep effects). Where greater accuracy is needed, specialist literature or relevant international codes may be referred.
- (5) Relationship between Strength and Time:

The development of compressive strength of concrete depends on the type of cement, curing conditions and maturity of concrete. Maturity is measured as a sum of the product of time and mean temperature of concrete, measured in appropriate units as given below:

$$\text{Maturity in day Celsius or hour Celsius} = \Sigma \text{ time in days (or hours)} \times (\text{temperature in } ^\circ\text{C} + 11^\circ\text{C}).$$

**Eq. 6.1**

In normal applications instead of the exact strength-maturity relationship simplified strength-time relationship is used, with limits of validity as given in Clause 6.4.2.2. For special applications, where temperature history deviates from the limits given, Annexure A-2 may be referred.

#### 6.4.2.2

##### *Compressive strength and strength development with time*

- (1) Relationship connecting age in days to strength given by Eq. 6.2 and Eq. 6.3 can be used in place of strength-maturity relationship, which are valid for seasonal variation of temperature between  $(-20^\circ\text{C})$  to  $(+40^\circ\text{C})$ .



Table 6.5 Stress and Deformation Characteristics for Normal Concrete

Table 6.5 Stress and Deformation Characteristics for Normal Concrete																	
Strength Classes for Concrete																	
Strength class		M 15	M 20	M 25	M 30	M 35	M 40	M 45	M 50	M 55	M 60	M 65	M 70	M 75	M 80	M 85	M 90
1	$f_{ck}$ (MPa)	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90
2	$f_{cm}$ (MPa)	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95	100
3	$f_{ctm}$ (MPa)	1.6	1.9	2.2	2.5	2.8	3.0	3.3	3.5	3.7	4.0	4.4	4.5	4.7	4.8	4.9	5.0
4	$f_{ctk,0.05}$ (MPa)	1.1	1.3	1.5	1.7	1.9	2.1	2.3	2.5	2.6	2.8	2.9	3.0	3.1	3.2	3.3	3.3
5	$f_{ctk,0.95}$ (MPa)	2.0	2.5	2.9	3.2	3.6	3.9	4.3	4.6	4.9	5.2	5.4	5.6	5.7	5.9	6.1	6.2
6	$E_{cm}$ (GPa)	27	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	38	39	40	40	41
7	$\epsilon_{c1}$ ( $10^{-3}$ )	1.8	1.9	2.0	2.0	2.1	2.2	2.3	2.3	2.4	2.4	2.5	2.5	2.6	2.6	2.7	2.7
8	$\epsilon_{cu1}$ ( $10^{-3}$ )	3.5															
9	$\epsilon_{c2}$ ( $10^{-3}$ )	2.0															
10	$\epsilon_{cu2}$ ( $10^{-3}$ )	3.5															
11	$n$	2.0															
12	$\epsilon_{c3}$ ( $10^{-3}$ )	1.8															
13	$\epsilon_{cu3}$ ( $10^{-3}$ )	3.5															

**Notes:**

- (1) Strength designation of concrete, (based on characteristic strength) and corresponding properties to be used in the design are given above. The strains are expressed in per thousand by  $\infty$  sign. The co-relation equations used are given in Annexure A-2.
- (2) The tabulated values of  $E_{cm}$  are for quartzite/granite aggregates. For other aggregates, they should be multiplied by factors as given below:  
limestone = 0.9, sandstone = 0.7, basalt = 1.2.
- (3) Properties of materials to be used in bridge construction given in Section 18 and the acceptance criteria based on sampling theory of statistics are to be used for procurement purposes only.

$$f_{cm}(t) = \beta_{cc}(t) f_{cm} \quad \text{Eq. 6.2}$$

$$\beta_{cc}(t) = \exp \left\{ S \left[ 1 - \left( \frac{28}{t/t_1} \right)^{1/2} \right] \right\} \quad \text{Eq. 6.3}$$

where

$f_{cm}(t)$  = Mean concrete compressive strength at age 't' days.

$f_{cm}$  = Mean concrete compressive strength at age '28' days.

$\beta_{cc}(t)$  = Co-efficient depending on age 't' and type of cement.

$t$  = Age of concrete in days.

$t_1$  = 1 day

$S$  = Co-efficient whose value is taken as 0.25 for ordinary Portland cement. Refer Annexure A-2 for other cements.

Effect of substantial temperature deviation in the range of 0°C to 80°C (for example in steam curing), is to be included by substituting equivalent time ( $t_r$ ) in place of time 't' at 20°C in Eq. 6.2 & 6.3. The expression for equivalent time  $t_r$  is given in Annexure A-2.

## (2) Effect of sustained loading and gain of strength with time

Although concrete gains strength with age due to continued chemical reactions, it also exhibits reduction of strength under the effect of sustained loading. This long term effect together with effect of the size of the structural element is taken into account while recommending design values of strength in this Code e.g. long term compressive strength in structure is taken as 0.67 times 28 days cube strength. (It is directly incorporated in formula for ultimate bending strength).

## (3) Verification of early age strength by testing

To avoid irreversible damage like local cracking (e.g. due to early age prestressing), the achievement of early age strength shall be verified by testing. It is to be noted that the field testing results based on small number of samples are a measure of the mean value of early age strength and not of the characteristic value of early age. The values thus obtained should be reduced by 1.645 x (standard deviation for the grade of concrete). The value of the standard deviation to be used for early age is required to be

established by testing at least 30 numbers of samples at site, unless it is known from past experience. Refer Section 18 for details.

(4) Use of strengths beyond 28 days strength

Gain of strength beyond 28 days should not be considered in new designs except as per Note No.3 below Table 6.4. For evaluation of strength/load carrying capacity of old existing bridges and for retrofitting purposes, strength at ages other than 28 days can be used after making allowance for age, sustained load effect, state of cracking and fatigue effects, for which specialist literature may be referred.

### 6.4.2.3 Tensile strength & strength development with time

(1) Direct tensile strength

The tensile strength is the highest tensile stress reached under concentric loading. The tensile strength of concrete  $f_{ctm}$  is difficult to measure directly and hence is measured either by splitting cylinders/cubes under transverse strip loading, or by flexural tensile test of standardised beams obtained following standard test procedures.

The relation between mean tensile strength  $f_{ctm}$ , split cylinder strength and beam test are given in Eq.6.4 and Eq.6.5.

For standard 300 mm dia. cylinder tested as per IS 5876

$$f_{ctm} = 0.9 f_{ct,split.cyl.} \quad \text{Eq. 6.4}$$

where

$$f_{ct,split.cyl.} = \text{mean value of cylinders tested}$$

For standard beam sizes tested as per IS:516.

$$f_{ctm} = \begin{cases} 0.6 f_b & \text{for beam size of } 100 \times 100 \times 400 \text{ mm and} \\ 0.66 f_b & \text{for beam size of } 150 \times 150 \times 600 \text{ mm} \end{cases} \quad \text{Eq. 6.5}$$

where

$$f_b = \text{modulus of rupture measured as per IS 516.}$$



## (2) Co-relation to the 28 days cube compressive strength

In absence of tensile tests, the values of tensile strengths  $f_{ctm}$  given in Table 6.5 can be adopted.

## (3) Flexural tensile strength for other sizes

The mean flexural tensile strength in solid beams depends on the mean axial tensile strength  $f_{ctm}$  and the depth of the cross-section. The following relationship may be used:

$$f_{ctm,fl} = \max. \left\{ \left( 1.6 - \frac{h}{1000} \right) f_{ctm}; f_{ctm} \right\} \quad \text{Eq. 6.6}$$

where

$f_{ctm,fl}$  = mean flexural tensile strength of solid beam.

$h$  = total depth of member in mm

$f_{ctm}$  = mean axial tensile strength from Table 6.5.

The relation given in Eq. 6.6 also applies for the characteristic tensile strength values.

## (4) Direct tensile strength for use in elements fully in tension

For members fully in tension, having more or less uniform tension (like bottom/top slabs of box girders)  $f_{ctk,0.05}$  given in Table 6.5 may be used.

## (5) Strength gain with time

(a) The development of tensile strength with time is strongly influenced by curing and drying conditions as well as by the dimensions of the structural members. As a first approximation it may be assumed that the tensile strength :

$$f_{ctm(t)} = (\beta_{cc}(t))^\alpha \cdot f_{ctm} \quad \text{Eq. 6.7}$$

where

$\beta_{cc}(t)$  follows from Eq. (6.7) and

$\alpha = 1$  for  $t < 28$  days

$\alpha = 2/3$  for  $t \geq 28$  days



The design values for  $f_{cm}$  are given in Table 6.5.

- (b) Where the development of the tensile strength with time is important (e.g. for control of cracking) it is recommended that tests are carried out taking into account the exposure conditions and the dimensions of the structural member.

#### 6.4.2.4 Multi-axial state of stress

The multi-axial compressive strength of concrete is higher than the uni-axial compressive strength. Normally, in bridge structures, this higher strength does not contribute significantly to design of main elements. However, in design of local zones, the increased strength is made use of (e.g. near concentrated loads, or in design of concrete hinges and anchorage zones of prestressing anchorages). Annexure A-2 and specialist literature may be referred for the relevant design properties.

#### 6.4.2.5 Stress-strain relationship and modulus of elasticity

- (1) The stress-strain relationship of concrete in compression and tension exhibits non-linearity and time-dependent changes. It also depends upon the rate of loading and loading history, creep and shrinkage. The contribution of creep to total strain is different at loading and unloading stages.
- (2) In general terms, the total strain of concrete at time  $t$  subjected to sustained loading from initial loading at time  $t_0$  is given by:

$$\varepsilon_c(t) = \varepsilon_{ci}(t_0) + \varepsilon_{cc}(t) + \varepsilon_{cs}(t) + \varepsilon_{cT}(t) \quad \text{Eq. 6.8}$$

where

$\varepsilon_{ci}(t_0)$  = is the initial strain at loading.

$\varepsilon_{cc}(t)$  = is the creep strain at time  $t > t_0$

$\varepsilon_{cs}(t)$  = is the shrinkage strain

$\varepsilon_{cT}(t)$  = is the thermal strain

$\varepsilon_{c\sigma}(t)$  = is the stress dependent strain:  $\varepsilon_{c\sigma}(t) = \varepsilon_{ci}(t_0) + \varepsilon_{cc}(t)$

$\varepsilon_{cn}(t)$  = is the stress independent strain:  $\varepsilon_{cn}(t) = \varepsilon_{cs}(t) + \varepsilon_{cT}(t)$

The creep co-efficient  $\phi(t, t_0)$  is defined as the ratio of creep strain at time  $(t)$  to initial elastic strain.

$$\phi = \phi(t, t_0) = \frac{\varepsilon_{cc}(t)}{\varepsilon_{ci}(t_0)} \quad \text{Eq. 6.9}$$

The shrinkage & creep strains are to be estimated as given in Clauses 6.4.2.6 and 6.4.2.7.

- (3) However, for the purpose of analysis of overall structure under normal temperature variations and its response to loads for static, equivalent static or linear dynamic response to earthquake loads, approximate simplified values given in this Code are adequate. Where greater accuracy is desired and for non-linear elastic analysis Annexure-A2 and specialist literature should be referred.
- (4) The load-deformation characteristics of structure are dependent on duration of load, age at loading and stress level up to which the material of the structure is loaded. These are calculated by use of appropriate modulus of elasticity as under:
  - (i) For static and quasi-static loads acting for short duration, secant modulus of elasticity of concrete  $E_{cm}$  (slope of line connecting the origin to stress/strain diagram to  $0.33 f_{cm}$ ) may be used. Values of  $E_{cm}$  are given in Table 6.5 for different grades of concrete.
  - (ii) The Poisson's ratio for uncracked concrete may be taken as 0.2 and that for cracked concrete as zero.
  - (iii) In general, the effects of long term loading (due to creep) shall be obtained separately and added to those obtained from short term analysis. As a simplification for the overall analysis of structure (not for local analysis), the value of  $E_{cm}$  can be modified by a factor  $\left( \frac{1}{1+\phi} \right)$  accounting for long term creep effects where  $\phi$  is the creep co-efficient defined by Eq. 6.9 and Table 6.9.
  - (iv) For calculating creep effects of shorter duration, either separate analysis should be done or  $E_{cm}$  can be modified by factor consistent with the creep of the same duration.
  - (v) The effect of shrinkage shall be separately calculated and added. It is taken as part of dead load analysis.
  - (vi) For calculating effects of seasonal temperature variation, value of 0.5 times  $E_{cm}$  may be used to account for temperature induced stresses as modified by creep effects.

For diurnal variation of temperatures, value of  $E_{cm}$  may be used.

- (vii) For elastic analysis of structure under dynamic loads (such as earthquake, wind etc where structures are not permitted to enter overall plastic range),  $E_{cm}$  given in Table 6.5 may be used.
- (viii) For resistance to impact/shock loading dynamic modulus of elasticity can be taken as 1.25 times  $E_{cm}$  in absence of tests.
- (ix) For non-linear analysis, suitable techniques for representing non-linearity of material properties shall be used for which Annexure A-2 and/or specialist literature may be referred.
- (x) Effect of early age loading on  $E_{cm}$

Variation of modulus of elasticity with time (t) is given by Eq. 6.10. Relationship between  $f_{cm(t)}$  and  $f_{cm}$  is given by Eq. 6.2 and Eq. 6.3.

$$E_{cm(t)} = \left( \frac{f_{cm(t)}}{f_{cm}} \right)^{0.3} E_{cm} \quad \text{Eq. 6.10}$$

- (xi) For loading beyond 28 days, increase in  $E_{cm}$  is small and can normally be neglected.

#### 6.4.2.6 Shrinkage

- (1) The total shrinkage of concrete depends upon the constituents of concrete, size of the member and environmental conditions. For a given humidity and temperature, the total shrinkage of concrete is most influenced by the total amount of water present in the concrete at the time of mixing and to a lesser extent, by the cement content.
- (2) The total shrinkage strain is composed of two components, the autogenous shrinkage strain and the drying shrinkage strain.

The value of the total shrinkage strain  $\epsilon_{cs}$  is given by :

$$\epsilon_{cs} = \epsilon_{cd} + \epsilon_{ca} \quad \text{Eq. 6.11}$$

where

$\epsilon_{cs}$  is the total shrinkage strain

$\epsilon_{cd}$  is the drying shrinkage strain

$\epsilon_{ca}$  is the autogenous shrinkage strain



- (3) The major part of the autogenous shrinkage strain develops during hardening of the concrete in the early days after casting. Autogenous shrinkage can be taken as a function of the concrete strength. It should be considered specifically when new concrete is cast against hardened concrete.

In absence of accurate field/laboratory data, the values given in Table 6.6 may be considered in design:

**Table 6.6 Autogenous Shrinkage Strain of Concrete  $\times 10^6$**

Grade of Concrete	M30	M35	M45	M50	M60	M65
Autogenous Shrinkage Strain $\epsilon_{ca} \times 10^6$	35	45	65	75	95	105

- (4) The drying shrinkage strain develops slowly, since it is a function of the migration of water through the hardened concrete.

The final value of the drying shrinkage strain,  $\epsilon_{cd,\infty}$  may be taken equal to  $k_h \cdot \epsilon_{cd}$  where  $k_h$  and  $\epsilon_{cd}$  are taken from Table 6.7 & 6.8. (These are expected mean values, with a coefficient of variation of about 30 percent).

where

$k_h$  is a coefficient depending on the notional size  $h_o$ :

$h_o$  is the notional size (mm) of the cross-section  $= 2A_c/u$

where

$A_c$  is the concrete cross-sectional area.

$u$  is the perimeter of that part of the cross-section which is exposed to drying.

**Table 6.7 Values for  $K_h$**

$h_o$ in mm	$k_h$
100	1.0
200	0.85
300	0.75
$\geq 500$	0.70



**Table 6.8 Unrestrained Drying Shrinkage Values ( $\epsilon_{cd} \times 10^6$ )**  
(for concrete with Portland cement)

$f_{ck}$ (MPa)	Relative Humidity (in %)		
	20	50	80
25	620	535	300
50	480	420	240
75	380	330	190
95	300	260	150

- (5) The development of autogenous shrinkage with time can be taken as:

$$\epsilon_{ca}(t) = \beta_{as}(t) \cdot \epsilon_{ca} \quad \text{Eq. 6.12}$$

where

$$\beta_{as}(t) = 1 - \exp(-0.2\sqrt{t}) \quad \text{Eq. 6.13}$$

where  $t$  is in days.

- (6) The development of the drying shrinkage strain in time can be taken as :

$$\epsilon_{cd}(t) = \beta_{ds}(t, t_s) k_h \epsilon_{cd} \quad \text{Eq. 6.14}$$

$$\beta_{ds}(t, t_s) = \frac{(t - t_s)}{(t - t_s) + 0.04\sqrt{h_o^3}} \quad \text{Eq. 6.15}$$

where

$t$  = is the age of the concrete in days at the time considered

$t_s$  = is the age of the concrete in days at the beginning of drying shrinkage. Normally this is at the end of curing.

$k_h$  = from Table 6.7

#### 6.4.2.7 Creep

- (1) Creep of concrete depends, on the stress in the concrete, age at loading and duration of loading in addition to the factors listed in Clause 6.4.2.6(1). As long as the stress in concrete does not exceed  $0.36 f_{ck}$ , creep may be assumed to be proportional to the stress.

- (2) The creep co-efficient  $\phi = \frac{\varepsilon_{cc}(t)}{\varepsilon_{ci}(t)}$

where

$\varepsilon_{cc}(t)$  is creep strain at time  $t > t_o$

$\varepsilon_{ci}(t)$  is initial strain at loading.

The values given in Table 6.9 can be considered as final creep co-efficients for design for normal weight concrete, subject to condition that the compressive stress does not exceed  $0.36 f_{ck}$  at the age of loading and mean temperature of concrete is between  $10^\circ\text{C}$  and  $20^\circ\text{C}$  with seasonal variation between  $-20^\circ\text{C}$  to  $40^\circ\text{C}$ . For temperature greater than  $40^\circ\text{C}$  the co-efficient given may be increased by 10 percent in absence of accurate data. In case the compressive stress exceeds  $0.36f_{ck}$ , at loading, non-linear creep shall be considered.

**Table 6.9 Final Creep Co-efficient [ $\phi$  (70 Yr)] of Concrete  
at age of  $t = 70$  years**

Age at loading $t_o(\text{days})$	Notional Size $2A_c/u$ (in mm)					
	50	150	600	50	150	600
	Dry atmospheric conditions (RH – 50%)			Humid atmospheric conditions (RH – 80%)		
1	5.50	4.60	3.70	3.60	3.20	2.90
7	5.50	4.60	3.70	2.60	2.30	2.00
28	3.90	3.10	2.60	1.90	1.70	1.50
90	3.00	2.50	2.00	1.50	1.40	1.20
365	1.80	1.50	1.20	1.10	1.00	1.00

- (3) The development of creep with time may be taken as

$$\phi(t, t_o) = \beta(t, t_o) \phi(\infty, t_o) \quad \text{Eq. 6.16}$$

where

$$\beta(t, t_o) = \left[ \frac{t - t_o}{\beta_H + (t - t_o)} \right]^{0.3} \quad \text{Eq. 6.17}$$

where

$t$  is the age of concrete in days at the time considered.

$t_o$  is the age of concrete in days at time of loading.

$(t - t_o)$  is the actual duration of loading in days.

$\beta_{II}$  is a coefficient depending on the relative humidity (RH in percent) and the notional member size ( $h_o$  in mm). It may be estimated from:

$$\beta_{II} = 1.5 \left[ 1 + \left( 1.2 \frac{RH}{RH_o} \right)^{18} \right] h_o + 250 \leq 1500 \text{ for } f_{cm} \leq 45 \quad \text{Eq. 6.18}$$

$$\beta_{II} = 1.5 \left[ 1 + \left( 1.2 \frac{RH}{RH_o} \right)^{18} \right] h_o + 250\alpha \leq 1500\alpha \text{ for } f_{cm} \geq 45 \quad \text{Eq. 6.19}$$

where

$RH$  = Relative humidity expressed as percent.

$RH_o$  = 100 (i.e. 100 percent)

$\alpha$  = is coefficient to consider the influence of the concrete strength:

$$\alpha = \left[ \frac{45}{f_{cm}} \right]^{0.5} \quad \text{Eq.6.20}$$

$f_{cm}$  in MPa

Where 45 and  $f_{cm}$  in numerator has units of MPa.

$h$  = Notional size of member in mm =  $\frac{2A_c}{u}$

$A_c$  = Cross Sectional Area in mm<sup>2</sup>.

$u$  = Perimeter in contact with atmosphere in mm.

- (4) Where greater accuracy is required in estimating  $\phi(t, t_o)$  Annexure A-2 and/or the specialist literature may be referred.

#### 6.4.2.8 Stress-strain relation for design of sections

##### (1) Unconfined concrete

##### (a) Parabolic rectangular stress-strain block

For design of section, the following relationship may be used as shown in Fig.6.5.

$$\sigma_c = f_{cd} \left[ 1 - \left( 1 - \frac{\varepsilon_c}{\varepsilon_{c2}} \right)^n \right] \text{ for } 0 \leq \varepsilon_c \leq \varepsilon_{c2} \quad \text{Eq. 6.21}$$

$$\sigma_c = f_{cd} \text{ for } \varepsilon_{c2} \leq \varepsilon_c \leq \varepsilon_{cu2} \quad \text{Eq. 6.22}$$

where

$n$  = Exponent as given in Table 6.5

$\varepsilon_{c2}$  = Strain at reaching characteristic strength as given in Table 6.5.

$\varepsilon_{cu2}$  = Ultimate strain as given in Table 6.5.

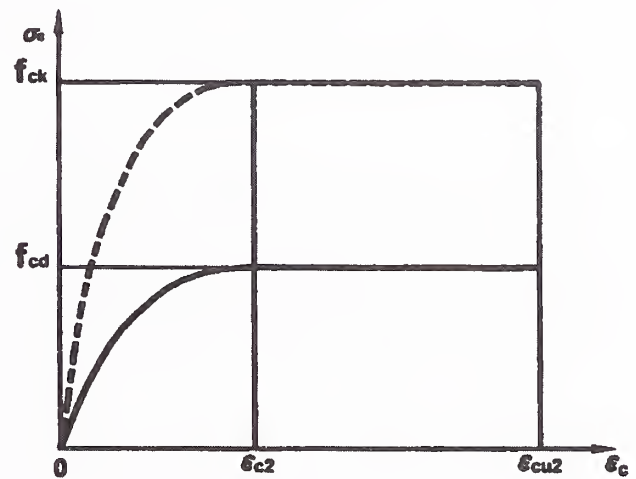
$$f_{cd} = \frac{\alpha f_{ck}}{\gamma_m}$$

where

$$\alpha = 0.67$$

$\gamma_m = 1.5$  For Basic & Seismic Combination

$= 1.2$  For Accidental Combination



**Fig.6.5 Parabolic-Rectangular Diagram for Concrete in Compression for Design of Sections**

#### (b) Other simplified equivalent stress blocks

The parabolic rectangular stress-strain block described in (a) above is of general validity for all design situations. However, simplified equivalent stress blocks such as rectangle or bilinear may be used for design purposes where the net results are sufficiently accurate. Refer Annexure A-2 for details.

#### (2) Confined concrete

Confinement of concrete results in higher strength and higher critical strains. As a result stress-strain relationship is modified. The other basic material characteristics may be considered as unaffected for design. Refer Annexure A-2 and/or specialist literature for details.



## SECTION 7 ANALYSIS

### 7.1 General Provisions

#### 7.1.1 *Response of structure to loads*

The purpose of structural analysis is the verification of overall stability and establishment of action effects on the whole or a part of the structure. These effects include the distribution of internal forces and moments as well as the calculation of stresses, strains, curvatures, rotations and displacements in static or dynamic modes. To carry out analysis, the geometry, boundary conditions and behaviour of the structure will need to be idealized both for global and local behaviour. The structure is idealised by considering it as made up of elements which can be linear, two dimensional or three dimensional. Classical methods of mechanics or modern techniques such as finite element can be used for analysis depending upon the suitability of the mathematical model to evaluate the action effects with sufficient accuracy.

Since concrete is a heterogeneous material, its properties are not independent of the size of the member. These are also time dependent. For reinforced and prestressed concrete elements the structural behaviour depends on the location and amount of steel as well as the state of deformation and cracking of the element, which in turn, depends upon the level of load. In the analysis, appropriate simplified values of properties of constituent materials and properties representing composite action (e.g. bond) are made in order to represent the behaviour of these elements. The range of validity of these simplified properties and the level of accuracy in predicting the structural behaviour by analytical methods, has to be taken into account in the design process.

The in-service behaviour of structural elements as well as their ultimate strengths and modes of failure are determined by the material properties, load resisting mechanism of the structural elements and the combined effect of axial forces, bending moments, transverse shears, in-plane shears and torsions. The interdependency of various strengths of a member; such as axial, bending, shear and torsion, has been established both by theory and by experiments. However, in most cases of practical design, bending combined with axial forces and shear combined with torsion are treated separately. In this approach, the design models used in different load resisting mechanisms are not completely compatible. Design of columns, beams and slabs are typically based on this approach. For elements having complex geometry – such as shells - and for some local zones of the elements (refer Clause 7.1.2.2) design has to be based on the net effect of all forces acting together, ensuring compatibility of strains. Suitable model representing the element and appropriate method of analysis have to be used in the design process.

## **7.1.2 Methods of analyses**

### **7.1.2.1 General**

In terms of the behaviour of the structure, the following methods of analysis may be used:

- (1) Linear elastic analyses for both static and dynamic response
- (2) Linear elastic analyses with limited redistribution of forces for static response
- (3) The 'Strut and Tie' method for achieving internal equilibrium within the elements in conjunction with overall elastic analysis of the structure, where stiffness of the structural elements is based on assumptions (a) or (b) as described in Clause 7.2(1).
- (4) Non-linear analyses, (material and/or geometric non-linearity) for both static and dynamic response

The solutions based on failure mechanisms of structure or plastic behaviour of elements shall not be used in design of bridges; except for the case of analysing response to earthquake. This shall be done only after adequate investigation of all significant modes of failure.

### **7.1.2.2 Local analyses**

In addition to global analyses of structure or its components, local analyses may be necessary, particularly where,

- (1) Significant and rapid changes in stresses and strains in a particular region of the structure/component are involved (e.g. regions around openings, junctions of elements).
- (2) Local non-linear behaviour needs to be analysed, (e.g. locally near supports/bearings, formation of hinges).
- (3) Assumption of linear strain distribution is not valid. (e.g. thick sections, deep beams, corbels, anchorage zones).

Where local effects are calculated separately, independent of global effects, the effects shall be combined.

### **7.1.3 Second order effects**

- (1) Second order effects are the additional effects caused by structural deformations, e.g. P- $\Delta$  effect for column.



- (2) Second order effects shall be considered in the analysis where they are likely to affect overall stability or the attainment of the ultimate limit state at critical sections, (e.g. buckling of slender members, redistribution of forces due to creep of concrete, settlement of supports in indeterminate structure).

#### **7.1.4 Modelling of foundations**

Structural elements transferring loads to the foundation strata can be treated as rigid or flexible depending on their stiffness with appropriate end conditions. Settlement effects are to be treated as independent loading conditions. Where soil-structure interaction is considered as significantly influencing the behaviour of the structure, the foundation and stratum shall be appropriately modelled (e.g. by use of appropriate springs).

#### **7.1.5 Redistribution of moments**

Redistribution of moments obtained by rigorous elastic analysis may be carried out provided:

- (1) Reduction at one location is accompanied by increase in other location in such a way as to maintain equilibrium with applied loads.
- (2) Reduction is restricted to not more than 15 percent of the maximum moment in SLS and 20 percent of that in ULS.

Redistribution shall not be carried out in circumstances where the rotation capacity and the section to which the redistributed moments are to be transferred, cannot be defined (e.g. in curved bridges and skew bridges with more than 15° angle of skew).

#### **7.1.6 Non-linear analyses**

Non-linearity of material stress-strain relationship is taken into account for design of sections.

Non-linearity arising from member's response (e.g. due to cracking, creep etc.) is considered in calculating the deflections.

Non-linearity due to formation of plastic hinges in linear members or yield lines in two dimensional elements, is not permitted except for demonstrating non-collapse condition in seismic event or impact loading.

#### **7.1.7 Plastic analysis**

- (1) Methods based on lower bound plastic solutions may be used provided appropriate measures are taken to ensure that ductility conditions are satisfied.

- (2) Elements may be idealised as statically determinate trusses consisting of straight notional struts (carrying the compressive forces in the concrete) and ties (the reinforcement). The forces in the members of the truss are established from considerations of equilibrium. Sufficient reinforcement is then provided to carry the tension in the ties and a check is performed to ensure that the compressive stresses in the struts are not excessive. Detailing requirements should then be checked, with particular regard to anchorage of all reinforcement and to local bearing stresses due to concentrated forces.
- (3) The location and orientation of the struts and ties should reflect approximately the distribution of internal forces resulting from an elastic analysis of the member.
- (4) In checking compressive stresses in the struts, consideration should be given to a possible reduction in strength due to transverse tensile stresses or cracking or the influence of shear. The average design compressive stress in the struts may be taken as  $v:f_{cd}$ . In the absence of other data,  $v$  may be taken as 0.6, including an allowance for sustained loading. Higher values for  $v$  (even  $v > 1$ ) may be justified based on a triaxial state of compressive stress, provided it can be shown that the complementary transverse compression can be realised in practice.
- (5) The design stress in the ties is limited to  $f_{wr}$ .
- (6) Detailing should comply with Sections 15 & 16.

## 7.2

### Analyses for Serviceability Limit States

- (1) Elastic methods of analysis should be used to determine internal forces and deformations. The stiffness constants of discrete members or unit widths of slab elements may be based on any of the following:
  - (a) *Concrete Section*: The entire cross-section of member, ignoring the presence of reinforcement.
  - (b) *Gross Transformed Section*: The entire cross-section of member including the reinforcement transformed on the basis of effective modular ratio,  $\frac{E_s}{E_{c,eff}}$

A consistent approach should be used to reflect the behaviour of various parts of the structure.



- (2) For limit state checks of deformation, stresses and crack control of beams having wide compression flanges, a constant effective width should be used over the full span while working out the sectional properties. (Refer Clause 7.6.1.2). Where greater accuracy is required variation in the effective width along the spans should be considered.
- (3) Modulus of elasticity and shear modulus of concrete should be appropriate for the type of action under consideration.
- (4) For verification of steel stresses and control of cracks in discontinuity zones, strut-and-tie model as adopted in the ULS design may be used.

### 7.3

#### **Analyses for Ultimate Limit States**

- (1) Elastic methods may be used to determine the distribution of forces and deformations throughout the structure. Stiffness constants based on the section properties as used for the analysis of the structure at the serviceability limit state, may be used in the analysis.
- (2) In seismic analysis, plastic method of analysis may be used provided it can be shown that adequate ductility exists at sections/locations where successive hinges/yield lines form and these methods adequately model the global effects in combination with local plasticity.
- (3) The application of elastic methods of analysis for factored loads for the ultimate limit state in general leads to safe lower bound solutions. These may be refined and made more accurate and less conservative. For suitable methods, specialist literature may be referred
- (4) For longitudinal members effects due to temperature gradient may be neglected.
- (5) Strut-and-tie model may be used in the analysis of discontinuity regions. Struts representing compressive stress field and ties provided by reinforcement, meet at connecting nodes forming statically stable truss system. The reinforcement carries full design force of the tie over its full length and hence is required to be adequately anchored beyond the node. Adoption of model developed on the basis of stress trajectories in compression and

tensile regions established from linear elastic analysis or following direct and simple load path method, should be preferred as it will help in achieving crack control at serviceability conditions. Specialist literature may be referred for details.

## **7.4 Torsional Effects**

**7.4.1** Where static equilibrium of a structure depends on the torsional resistance of its elements, full torsional design covering ULS shall be made.

**7.4.2** In general, where the torsional resistance or stiffness of members has not been taken into account in the analysis of the structure, no specific calculations for resisting torsion will be necessary. In such cases adequate control of any torsional cracking should be achieved by providing nominal reinforcement to resist torsion. However, in applying this clause it is essential that sound engineering judgement is exercised in deciding whether torsion plays only a minor role in the behaviour of the structure; otherwise torsional stiffness should be used in the analysis.

## **7.5 Combined Global and Local Effects**

In addition to the design of individual elements to resist loading applied directly to them, it is also necessary to consider the loading effects due to global loading where these coexist in an element.

Analysis of the structure may be accomplished either by one overall analysis or by separate analyses for global and local effects. In the latter case, the forces and moments acting on the element from global and local effects should be combined as appropriate. The design of individual elements should take into account the combined effects.

## **7.6 Structures and Structural Frames**

### **7.6.1 Beams**

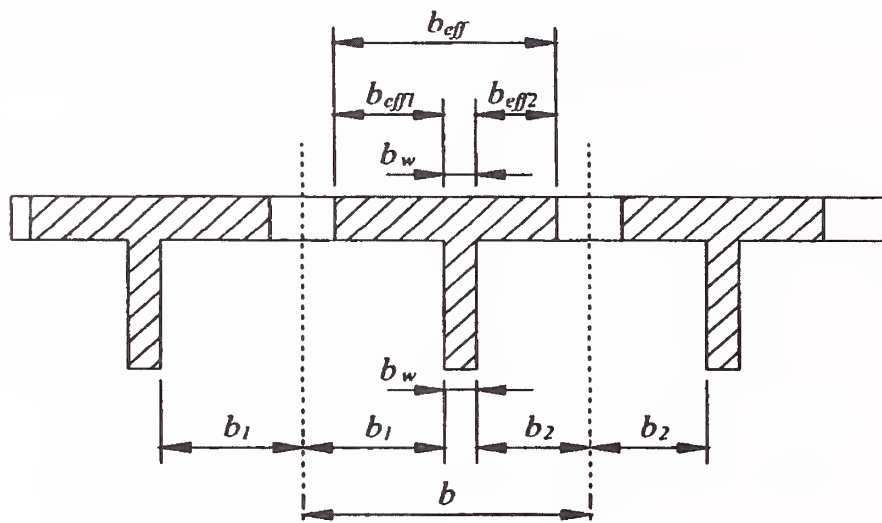
#### **7.6.1.1 *Effective span***

- (1) The effective span of a simply supported member should be taken as the smaller of:
  - (a) The distance between the centres of bearings,
  - (b) The clear distance between supports plus the effective depth.
- (2) The effective span of a member framing into supporting members should be taken as the distance between the centres of the supporting members.
- (3) The effective span of a continuous member should be taken as the distance between centres of supports.

- (4) In the case of beams framing into wide columns, the effect of column width should be included in the analysis.

#### 7.6.1.2 Effective width of flanged beams and box beams

- (1) For analysis of section for ULS & SLS effective width shall be taken as given in Fig.7.1 & Eq.7.1.



**Fig.7.1 Definition of Parameters to Determine Effective Flange Width**

The effective flange width  $b_{eff}$  for a T beam or L beam may be derived as:

$$b_{eff} = \sum b_{eff,i} + b_w \leq b \quad \text{Eq. 7.1}$$

with  $b_{eff,i} = 0.2b_i + 0.1l_o \leq 0.2l_o$ ,

and  $b_{eff,i} \leq b_i$  (For the notations see Fig.7.1)

- (2)  $l_o$  = The distance between the points of zero moments (in the absence of rigorous calculations for continuous span it may be taken as 0.7 times effective span). The effective width may be taken as constant for the full span.
- (3) For limit state check of vibration for footbridge the actual flange width may be used.

#### 7.6.2 Slabs

##### 7.6.2.1 Moment and shear forces in solid slabs

Moments and shear forces in slab bridges, in the top slabs of beam-and-slab bridges, and box girder bridges may be obtained from any rational and established method of analysis. The effective spans should be in accordance with Section 7.6.1.1.



### 7.6.2.2 *Special types of slabs*

For analysis of special type of slabs such as skew slab, curved slabs, voided slabs and composite slabs, specialist literature may be referred.

## 7.6.3 **Columns**

### 7.6.3.1 *Definitions*

*A reinforced concrete column is a compression member whose largest lateral cross-sectional dimension is less than or equal to four times its lesser lateral dimension.*

*A column should be considered as short if the ratio  $l_e / i$  in each plane of buckling is such that the failure takes place without involving secondary effects. In practice, the limits upto which the secondary effects can be neglected is given in Clause 11.2.*

### 7.6.3.2 *Moments and forces in columns*

- (1) The moments, shear forces and axial forces in a column should be determined in accordance with Clauses 7.2 and 7.3, except that if the column is slender the additional moments induced by lateral deflection should be considered. The bases and/or other members connected to the ends of such columns should also be designed to resist these additional moments.
- (2) In columns with moments it is generally sufficient to consider the maximum and minimum ratios of moment/axial load in designing reinforcement areas and concrete sections.

### 7.6.3.3 *Buckling of columns and overall structure*

For rules regarding verification of safety against buckling, refer Section 11.0.

## 7.6.4 **Reinforced concrete walls**

### 7.6.4.1 *Definition*

A wall is a vertical load bearing concrete member whose larger lateral dimension is more than four times its lesser lateral dimension. A wall may be considered as short where the ratio of its effective length (height) to its thickness does not exceed 12. It should otherwise be considered as slender. Retaining walls, wing walls, abutments and other similar wall-like elements where ultimate axial load is less than  $0.1 f_{cd} A_c$  may be designed as bending elements, neglecting axial load.



#### 7.6.4.2 *Forces and moments in reinforced concrete walls*

Forces and moments should be calculated in accordance with Clauses 7.2 and/or 7.3 except that if the wall is slender, the moments induced by deflection should also be considered. The distribution of axial and horizontal forces along a wall from the loads on the superstructure, should be determined by the type and location of the supports. For walls integral with deck, the moments/forces should be determined by elastic analysis.

The design moment per unit length in the direction at right angles to a wall should be not less than  $0.05 n_w h$ , where  $n_w$  is the ultimate axial load per unit length,  $0.05h$  is the nominal minimum eccentricity and  $h$  is the thickness of the wall. Moment in the plane of a wall can be calculated from statical equilibrium required for the most severe positioning of the relevant loads.

Where the concentrated load is acting on a wall, dispersal of loads within the length and height of the wall shall be considered.

It will generally be sufficient to consider the maximum and minimum ratios of moment to axial load in designing reinforcement areas and concrete sections.

### 7.7 **Composite Concrete Construction**

#### 7.7.1 **General**

- (1) These recommendations apply to flexural members consisting of precast concrete units acting in conjunction with cast-in-situ concrete, where provision has been made for the transfer of horizontal shear at the contact surface. The precast units may be of either reinforced or prestressed concrete.
- (2) Differential shrinkage and creep of the component concrete members requires consideration in analysing composite members for the serviceability limit states. Differential shrinkage and creep need not be considered for the ultimate limit state.
- (3) In general, the analysis and design of composite concrete structures and their component members should be in accordance with the principle defined earlier except that effects of differential shrinkage and creep should be treated as a primary action. Particular attention should be given in the design of the component parts and the composite section to take into account the effect on stresses and deflections arising out of the method of construction (e.g. whether props are used or not used).

- (4) A check for adequacy of components/whole section should be made for each stage of construction. The relative stiffness of members should be based on the concrete or gross transformed section properties as described in Clause 7.2. If the concrete strengths of the two components of the composite member differ by more than  $10\text{N/mm}^2$ , allowance for the difference in modulus of elasticity should be made in assessing stiffness and stresses.
- (5) When at least one of the components is a prestressed member, the combined effect of shrinkage and creep movements of the prestressed member(s) with respect to other member(s) create time-dependent variation of stresses, which may be more severe at intermediate stages leading to tensile cracking. The time dependent properties of shrinkage and creep given in Section 6 should be used in this evaluation.
- (6) When only the shrinkage effects are involved, it is sufficient to analyse for the maximum value of differential shrinkage.

### 7.7.2 Continuity of spans in composite construction

When continuity is obtained in composite construction by changing the statical system, consideration should be given to the secondary effects of differential shrinkage and creep on the moments in continuous beams and on the reactions at the supports.

#### 7.7.2.1 Effect of differential shrinkage

The hogging restraint moment,  $M_{cs}$  at an internal support of a continuous composite beam and slab section due to differential shrinkage should be taken as:

$$M_{cs} = (\varepsilon_{diff}) (E_{cf}) A_{cf} (\delta_{cent}) \alpha \quad \text{Eq. 7.2}$$

where

- $\varepsilon_{diff}$  is the differential shrinkage strain;
- $E_{cf}$  is the modulus of elasticity of the flange concrete;
- $A_{cf}$  is the area of the effective concrete flange;
- $\delta_{cent}$  is the distance of the centroid of the concrete flange from the centroid of the composite section;
- $\alpha$  is a reduction coefficient to allow for creep

$$\alpha = (1 - e^{(-)\phi}) / \phi \quad \text{Eq. 7.3}$$

#### 7.7.2.2 Creep redistribution due to dead load and prestress in the precast unit

When a concrete structure's statical system is changed during construction, creep of the concrete will modify the as-built bending moments (and shear forces) towards the



'instantaneous' moments (and shear) distributions. The additional moment due to creep redistribution,  $M_{cr}$  should be taken as:

$$M_{cr} = (M_{inst} - M_{as-built}) \alpha_1 \quad \text{Eq. 7.4}$$

where,

$M_{inst}$  is the bending moment, which would have been set up in case the composite section as a continuous structure had been subjected to the dead load and prestress component, which was actually applied in the precast unit.

$M_{as-built}$  is the actual bending moment set up in the structure as constructed.

**Note:** This will depend upon the time gap when composite action is established after casting pre-cast portion and whether in-situ concrete is cast while pre-cast beam is supported on props and decentred after achieving composite section or cast on the beam which takes full self-weight and weight of shuttering without help of composite action.

Values of reduction coefficient ' $\alpha_1$ ' are calculated from expressions below using  $\phi$  value taken from Table 6.9.

$$\alpha_1 = [1 - e^{-\phi}] \quad \text{Eq. 7.5}$$

Where,  $e$  is the base of Napierian Logarithms.

## 7.8 Structural Effects of Time-Dependent Properties of Concrete

- (1) The inelastic strains due to creep and shrinkage of concrete may cause appreciable changes in the long-term state of deformation stresses in the structure and structural elements.
- (2) The performance with respect to serviceability is of primary concern.
- (3) In slender or thin sections where second order deformations are important, the increase of deflections due to creep reduces the long-term safety margin with respect to buckling instability and may lead to creep buckling. In such cases it should be treated as a primary effect.



- (4) Shrinkage and creep act in a complex interdependent way. The creep of concrete reduces internal stresses induced by shrinkage. Where great accuracy is not required, this effect can be directly evaluated by using reduced value of modulus of elasticity of concrete [approx.  $E_{cm} / (1+\phi)$  refer Section 6] which corresponds to the stresses caused by the imposed strains.
- (5) The restrained thermal stresses arising from seasonal variation in temperatures are similarly reduced by creep and can be directly evaluated by reduced  $E$  value of 0.5 times  $E_{cm}$ .
- (6) For purpose of analysis of creep and shrinkage treated as acting independently, time-dependent properties of concrete and relaxation of steel given in Section 6 can be used.

## 7.9 Prestressed Members and Structures

Prestressing force applied by pre-tensioned steel or by post-tensioned steel and transferred to the structure through bond between steel and concrete or through mechanical anchorages, is covered in this Section.

### 7.9.1 General

- (1) Prestressing is considered as an action and its effect should be included in the forces/moments and applied to the structure.
- (2) Prestressing force is time-dependent. Its magnitude also varies from the intended value due to technological reasons. Both the effects should be considered in selection of design prestressing force.
- (3) The contribution of prestressing tendons to the resistance developed by the member shall be limited to the additional forces mobilised by their further deformation, consistent with the ultimate deformation of the member.

### 7.9.2 Maximum prestressing force

- (1) The maximum force applied to tendon at active end during tensioning, shall not exceed 90 percent of 0.1 percent proof load (or proof-stress).
- (2) In exceptional conditions temporary overstressing during stressing operation is permitted up to 95 percent of 0.1 percent of proof load

(or proof stress), provided that the accuracy of measurement is ensured to be within  $\pm 5$  percent.

- (3) Maximum prestressing force  $P_o$  applied to structure immediately after transfer (i.e. after losses due to elastic shortening and anchorage slip) shall not be greater than 75 percent of  $f_{pk}$  or 0.85 of 0.1 percent proof load whichever is less (Refer Fig.6.3).

### 7.9.3 Loss of prestress

#### 7.9.3.1 Immediate losses in pre-tensioning

The following losses occurring during pre-tensioning shall be considered:

- (1) During the stressing process:  
Loss due to friction at the bends (in the case of curved wires and strands) and losses due to wedge draw-in of the anchorage devices.
- (2) Before the transfer of prestress to concrete:  
Loss due to relaxation of the pre-tensioning tendons during the period between the tensioning of tendons and release of the same for transfer of prestress.

**Note:** In case of steam curing, losses due to shrinkage and relaxation are modified and should be assessed accordingly. Annexure-2 and/or specialist literature may be referred. Direct thermal effect on prestressing steel should also be considered.

- (3) At the transfer of prestress to concrete;
  - (a) Loss due to elastic deformation of concrete.
  - (b) Loss due to draw-in of tendon at two ends of concrete member, taking into account favourable/unfavourable bond condition.

#### 7.9.3.2 Immediate losses of prestress in post-tensioning

- (1) Losses due to the elastic deformation of concrete  
Loss in tendon force corresponding to elastic shortening of concrete at the level of tendon shall be taken into account. The order in which the tendons are stressed shall be considered for calculation of loss.

## (2) Losses due to friction and wobble

(a) The losses due to friction and wobble  $\Delta P_\mu$  are calculated by Eq.7.6 where  $P_o$  is the initial prestressing force which reduces by  $\Delta P_\mu(x)$ , at distance  $x$

$$\Delta P_\mu(x) = P_o \left( 1 - e^{-(\mu\theta + kx)} \right) \quad \text{Eq. 7.6}$$

where

- $\theta$  Measured in radians is the sum of the angular displacements over a distance  $x$  (irrespective of direction or sign)
- $\mu$  is the coefficient of friction between the tendon and its duct.
- $k$  is a coefficient for wobble effect (representing angular displacement per unit length of duct multiplied by  $\mu$ ).
- $x$  is the distance along the tendon from the point where the prestressing force is equal to  $P_o$ .
- $P_o$  force at  $x=0$ . It is maximum force at active end during tensioning.

(a) The value of  $\mu$  depends on the surface characteristics of the tendons and the duct, on configuration of the tendon profile, and on the presence of rust, if any. The value  $k$  for wobble ( $\mu$  times unintentioned angular displacement per unit length) depends on the quality of workmanship, distance between tendon supports, type of duct or sheath and degree of vibration while compacting the concrete.

(b) In the absence of more exact data values for  $\mu$  and  $k$  given in Table 7.1 may be adopted for design. The values of  $\mu$  and  $k$  used in design shall be indicated on the drawings for guidance in selection of the material and the methods that will produce results approaching the assumed values.

(c) For external tendons, consisting of parallel wires or strands, the loss of prestress due to wobble effect between the deviators may be ignored.



**Table 7.1 Coefficients of Friction  $\mu$  & Wobble Effect ( $k$ ) of Post Tensioned Tendons and External Unbonded Tendons**

Type of high Tensile Steel	Type of Duct or Sheath	Values recommended to be used in design	
		$k$ per metre	$\mu$
Wire cables	Bright metal steel	0.0091	0.25
	Galvanised steel	0.0046	0.20
	Lead coated steel	0.0046	0.18
	Unlined duct in concrete	0.0046	0.45
Uncoated Stress Relieved Strands	Bright Metal steel	0.0046	0.25
	Galvanised steel	0.0030	0.20
	Lead coated	0.0030	0.18
	Unlined duct in concrete	0.0046	0.50
	Corrugated HDPE	0.0020	0.17

(d) During construction the value of effective prestress obtained on basis of values assumed in design should be verified by stressing a few typical tendons. For this purpose, two jacks shall be used between the activities - one for pulling the tendon (active jack) and other as passive jack. The force in tendon should be measured at both ends by means of pressure gauges or load cells. The difference between forces at two ends will indicate the actual loss due to friction and wobble. If the loss is more than  $\pm 5$  percent of that adopted in design, it should be referred to designer for corrective action.

**(3) Losses at Anchorage**

(a) Losses due to wedge draw-in of the anchorage devices, during anchoring and due to the deformation of the anchorage itself, should be taken into account.

(b) Values of (a) as normally given by the manufacturer, shall be used in the design. If the manufacturer is not finalised at the time of design, values based on experience shall be used and stated on the drawing or on stressing schedule to enable proper adjustments to be made at site.

**7.9.3.3 Long term losses in pre-tension and post-tension**

Long term losses are due to creep and shrinkage of concrete and relaxation of steel. These should be taken into account including their time-dependency.

#### 7.9.4 Consideration of prestress in analysis

- (1) For linear analysis both the primary and secondary effects of prestressing shall be applied.
- (2) Full bond between steel and concrete may be assumed after grouting of bonded tendons. However, before grouting, the tendons shall be considered as unbonded.
- (3) External tendons may be assumed to be straight between deviators.

#### 7.9.5 Partial factors for prestressing force

- (1) Prestress in most situations, is intended to be favourable. However, under some load combinations the effect may become unfavourable.
- (2) In case of bonded tendons, for ultimate limit state of strength, the design value of prestressing force shall be based on the mean value acting at that time, with partial factor  $\gamma_p = 1$ .
- (3) In case of unbonded tendons and external tendons, the stress increase in ultimate limit state of strength may be calculated taking into account the overall deformation of the member. If no such calculations are made, the increase in stress in prestressing tendon shall be taken as nil, and partial factor  $\gamma_p = 1$ .
- (4) Where external/unbonded tendons are used for achieving stability and where decrease of force or increase of force becomes unfavourable for stability, partial factors of 0.8 and 1.25 shall be used to decrease or increase the force, as required.

**Note:** These factors account for the possible adverse variation in prestressing force. This shall be over and above the overall safety factors against overturning and sliding required for global stability checks.

- (5) In verification of local effects  $\gamma_{p,unfav} = 1.3$  shall be used.
- (6) In serviceability limit state, two characteristic values of prestressing force shall be used.

$$P_{k,sup} = \gamma_{sup}.P_{m,(t)}(x) \quad \text{Eq. 7.7}$$



$$P_{k.inf} = \gamma_{inf} . P_{m(t)}(x) \quad \text{Eq. 7.8}$$

where

$P_{mt}(x)$  is effective prestressing force at point 'x' at time 't' and  $P_{k.sup}$  and  $P_{k.inf}$  are corresponding superior and inferior characteristic values. The values of  $\gamma_{sup}$  and  $\gamma_{inf}$  shall be as follows:

- for pre-tensioning or unbonded tendons  $\gamma_{sup} = 1.05$  and  $\gamma_{inf} = 0.95$ .
- for post-tensioning with bonded tendons  $\gamma_{sup} = 1.10$  and  $\gamma_{inf} = 0.9$ .

### 7.9.6 Part prestressing of tendon

The requirement of minimum concrete strength behind the anchorage of post tensioned system, at the time of stressing, for full jacking force, designated as  $f_{c.str}$  shall be specified by the designer taking into account special requirements of the structure, if any, and the recommendations of the manufacturer of prestressing system.

If any individual tendon is stressed in stages before the specified strength  $f_{c.str}$  of concrete is achieved, the relation between the stage stressing and specified minimum strength shall be as follows:

- For 100% jacking force, minimum concrete strength is  $f_{c.str}$
- For 30% of jacking force, minimum concrete strength =  $0.5 f_{c.str}$
- Between 30% and 100% of jacking force, minimum concrete strength shall be arrived at by linear interpolation between  $0.5 f_{c.str}$  &  $f_{c.str}$ .

## 7.10 Design and Detailing for Curved Tendons in Thin Sections

### 7.10.1 Radial pressure from curved tendons

The curved tendons exert radial pressure on concrete. This introduces local compression on inner side of the curvature and tension on outer side of curvature in the plane of the tendon. When this pressure acts on thick sections with large cover to ducts or in plane of the member, the normal reinforcement provided for shear or surface reinforcement is adequate to control any cracking in this region.

For tendons provided in thin curved sections (like webs curved in plan or curved slabs of box sections) pressure acting outwards from the plane of the member causes local out-of-plane punching shear as well as overall bending and shear in the curved members. The following additional checks shall be carried out in such situations.



## 7.10.2 Shear checks

Shear should be checked in the immediate vicinity of the ducts in accordance with the empirical equations shown in Fig.7.2, which are based on experimental results.

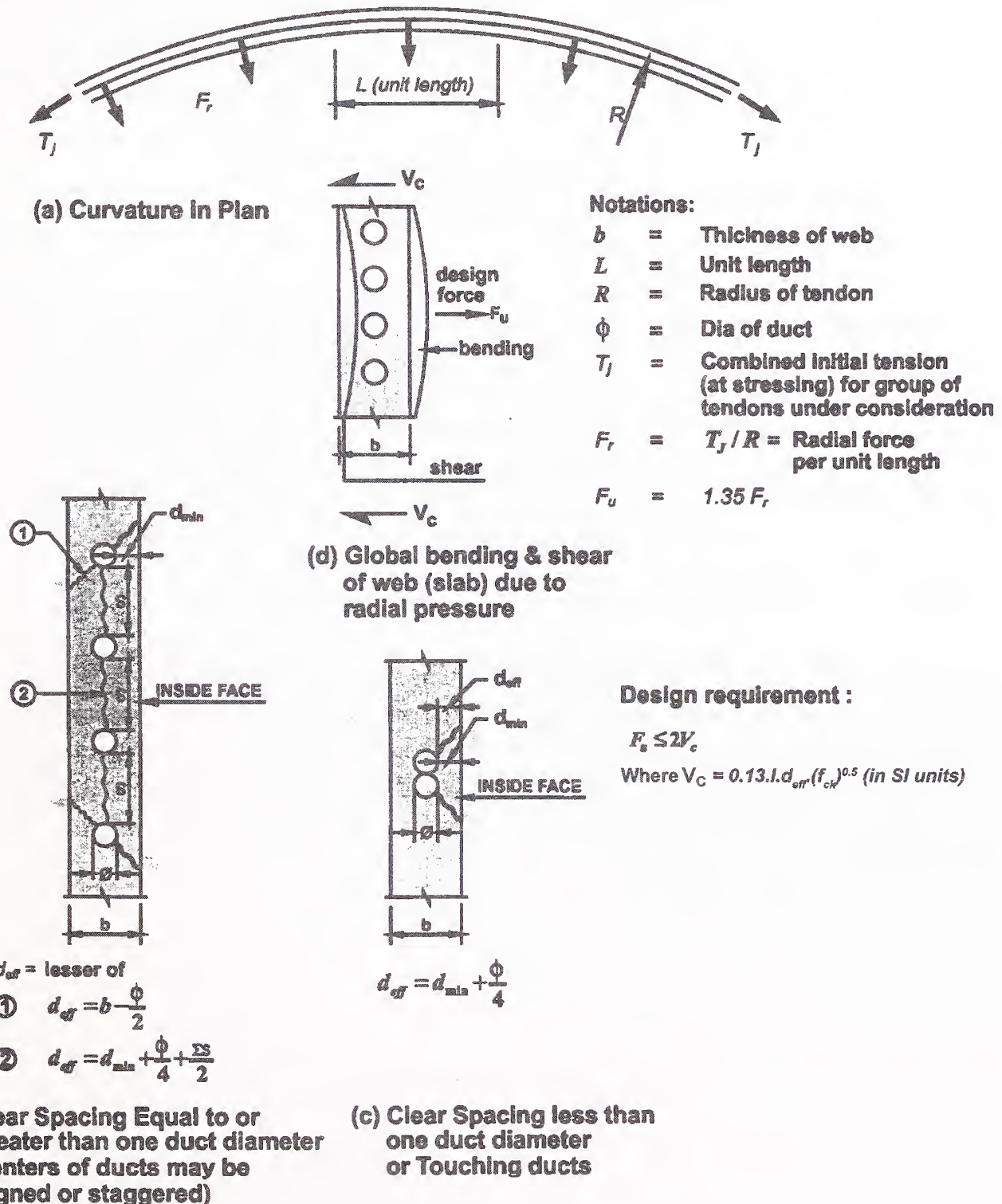


Fig. 7.2 Radial Thrust of Tendons Causing Local Punching and Global Bending in Shear in Webs (Slab)

### **7.10.3 Radial reinforcement**

The local radial tensions set up in concrete behind radial thrust of a group of ducts lying in one plane, introduce de-laminating forces tending to separate concrete on two sides of the plane of the duct. These tensions should be resisted by reinforcement forming full loops or 180° hooks (Fig. 15.2(e) with 180° bend) placed in the concrete section connecting concrete on two sides of plane of ducts. As a simplification, full radial thrust  $F_r$  (Fig. 7.2) can be resisted by HYSD reinforcement steel limiting permissible tensile stress to 230 MPa.

## **7.11 Special Load Transferring Devices**

### **7.11.1 General**

Devices like bearings of various types, dislodgement preventing stoppers and shock transmission units are used to transmit loads between parts of bridge elements. The global analysis of the structure should include the overall behaviour of these elements in terms of their load/deformation characteristics in a simplified way, by defining the released and restrained movements of the structure to which they are connected. However, the design of these elements themselves shall be based on the details of internal load transferring mechanism and materials used in their fabrication.

### **7.11.2 Grade effect and positioning of bearings**

For bridges built in grade or cross-fall, the bearings shall normally be set level by varying the thickness of the plate situated between the upper face of the bearing and lower face of the beam or by any other suitable arrangement. However, where the bearings are required to be set parallel to the inclined grade or cross-fall of the superstructure, an allowance shall be made for the longitudinal and transverse components of the vertical loads on the bearings.



## **SECTION 8 ULTIMATE LIMIT STATE OF LINEAR ELEMENTS FOR BENDING AND AXIAL FORCES**

### **8.1 Scope**

- (1) This Section covers structural members which can be idealised as linear members having the following characteristics: (a) one of the dimension (length or height) is sufficiently large as compared to other two dimensions of its cross-section (breadth, width, thickness), (b) the cross-sections which were plane before loading remain approximately plane after loading and loading is such that the distortion of the section by shear and torsional strains is not large enough to vitiate this assumption, (c) the regions of geometric discontinuity and heavy transverse loads where the assumption in (b) does not hold good locally, form a small part of the total length.
- (2) Generally, members having length larger than 4 times the largest linear dimension of cross-section, can be considered to belong to this class. Under certain conditions of loading members having length between 1 to 4 times the cross-sectional dimensions will qualify for being treated as linear members (e.g. short columns without bending created by transverse shear).
- (3) Ultimate load carrying capacity of predominantly axially loaded members is adversely affected by instability (buckling) for long members by effect of second-order deformations caused by initial geometric imperfections, unintentional and small eccentricity of external loads or effect of lateral deflection due to transverse loading or end fixity conditions (moments). Additional checks for such effects and design of slender members in general are included in Section 11.
- (4) Simplified methods for bi-axial bending are covered.
- (5) Simplified methods for small magnitudes of axial forces acting together with bending moments are covered.

### **8.2 Strain and Stress Distribution at Ultimate Limit State**

#### **8.2.1 Limitations on strain and stresses**

- (1) In analysing a cross-section to determine its ultimate resistance,



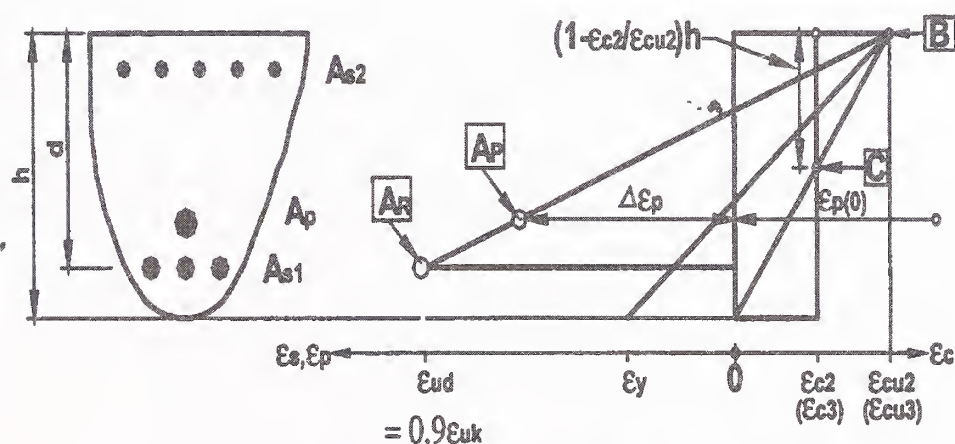
the assumptions given below shall be used:

- (a) Plane sections remain plane.
- (b) The strain in bonded reinforcement and in bonded prestressing steel beyond the initial pre-tension before bonding, whether in tension or compression, is the same as that in the surrounding concrete.
- (c) The tensile strength of the concrete is ignored.
- (d) The stresses in the concrete in compression are derived from the design stress-strain diagram in Fig. 6.5, which is a parabolic-rectangular diagram. For other shapes of stress-strain diagram, refer Annexure A-2.
- (e) The stresses in the reinforcement steel are derived from the design curves in Fig. 6.2, and the stresses for prestressing steel are derived from Fig.6.3 or Fig.6.4 as appropriate, after dividing stresses by partial factor for materials as shown.
- (f) When upward sloping branch of stress-strain curve beyond the linear elastic portion is used, the tensile stresses in reinforcing and prestressing steel are limited to those corresponding to strain of  $0.9 \varepsilon_{uk}$ . Where idealised plastic branch is used for this part of the curve, it is not necessary to check strain limit.
- (g) The initial pre-strain introduced in prestressing tendons is taken into account when assessing the stresses in the tendons at the ultimate limit state.
- (h) For cross-sections subject to pure longitudinal compression, the compressive strain in the concrete is limited to  $\varepsilon_{c2}$ .
- (j) For cross-sections subject to axial compressive force and bending and where neutral axis lies outside the section, the strain at most compressed face is restricted to  $\varepsilon_{cu2}$ . The strain diagram is defined by assuming that the compressive strain  $\varepsilon_{c2}$  is at a level  $(1 - \varepsilon_{c2} / \varepsilon_{cu2})$  of the height of the section from the most compressed face.

- (k) For cross-sections subjected axial compressive force and bending moment where the cross-section is not fully in compression and neutral axis lies within the section, the strain at the most compressed face is taken as  $\epsilon_{cu2}$ , for use with parabolic rectangular stress-strain diagram of concrete portion in compression.

(I) Possible range of strain distributions is shown in Fig.8.1.

- (2) For values of deformation characteristics of concrete such as,  $\epsilon_{c2}$ ,  $\epsilon_{cu2}$  refer Table 6.5.
- (3) In parts of cross-section which are subject to approximately compressive loading ( $e/h < 0.1$ ), such as compression flange of box girder, the mean compressive strain in that part of section should be limited to  $\epsilon_{c2}$ .



**[A<sub>p</sub>] = PRESTRESSING STEEL TENSILE STRAIN LIMIT**

**$\epsilon_{Ar}$  - REINFORCING STEEL TENSILE STRAIN LIMIT**

**B** = CONCRETE BENDING PLUS AXIAL COMPRESSION STRAIN LIMIT

**[C] - PURE COMPRESSION STRAIN LIMIT**

### Fig.8.1 Possible Strain Distributions in the Ultimate Limit State

- (4) If changes in the position of the reinforcement such as at a lap can lead to a localised reduction in the effective depth, the most unfavourable value should be used in the cross-section analysis.
- (5) For prestressed members with permanently unbonded internal or externally prestressed tendons, it is generally necessary to take the deformation of the whole member into account. Refer Clause 7.9 for the suitable method of analysis.

- (6) In the analysis of a cross-section which has to resist bending and only a small longitudinal force, the effect of the design ultimate longitudinal compressive force may be ignored, if it does not exceed  $0.08 f_{ck}$  times the cross-sectional area. The tensile force due to bending and the axial tensile force on the member shall be entirely carried by reinforcement.
- (7) The bending resistance calculated on the basis of above assumptions, is strictly valid for bending in the planes of principal axes. For bending at any other axis, the approximate solutions given in Clause 8.3.2 may be used.
- (8) Based on the principles and assumptions given in this Section, exact solutions for cross-sections of variable width/depth may be evolved. Local large openings in cross-section should be accounted for (e.g. those caused by transversely or obliquely running cable ducts).

### 8.2.2 Further explanation of possible domains of strain diagrams

The adoption of the assumptions in Clause 8.2.1 leads to the range of possible strain diagrams at ultimate limit states subjected to different combinations of moment and axial tensile/compressive force, as shown in Fig.8.2.

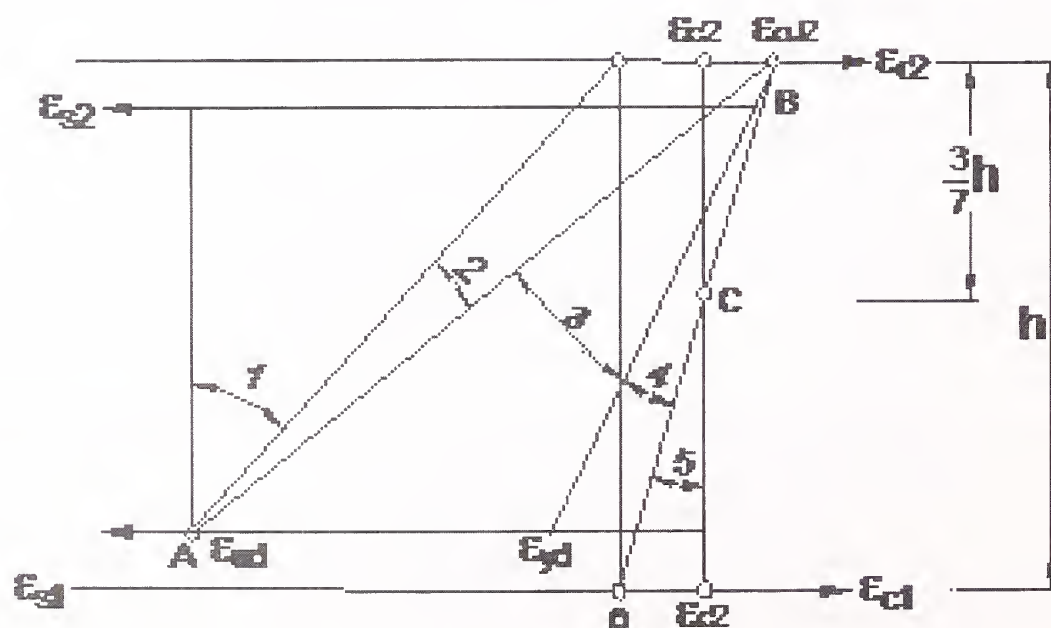


Fig. 8.2 Domains of Strain Distributions

#### Zone-1: Tensile load with/without eccentricity

The entire section is in tension, the neutral axis lies outside the section and its location



depends on the eccentricity of the tensile force. Reinforcing/prestressing steel at least on one side yields (with strains limited as per either idealised or simplified diagrams) which decide the ultimate tensile capacity.

**Zone-2: Compressive load with eccentricity, having neutral axis within Section, and ultimate strength governed by tensile steel**

The maximum strain in the concrete is less than the limiting value of  $\epsilon_{cu2}$  thus the strength of the concrete is not exhausted. The tensile strain at steel is at the upper design limit of  $\epsilon_{ud}$ .

**Zone-3 : Compressive load with eccentricity, having neutral axis within section, and steel beyond yield, ultimate strength governed by concrete**

The concrete compression strain at the upper fibre is at upper design limit  $\epsilon_{cu2}$ . The steel strain lies between  $\epsilon_{yd}$  and  $\epsilon_{ud}$ .

**Zone-4 : Compressive load with eccentricity, with ultimate strength governed by concrete and steel strain is below yield strain.**

This is typically the cause of steel strength not fully exploited giving over-reinforced non-ductile failure.

The boundary between Zone-3 and Zone-4 is called the balanced condition, where the maximum concrete strain ( $\epsilon_{cu2}$ ) and reinforcement strain at yield ( $\epsilon_{yd}$ ) are present simultaneously.

**Zone-5: Compressive load with eccentricity, having neutral axis outside the section (i.e. full section in compression)**

The entire section (with exception of possibly existing prestressing steel) is in compression. All strain profiles pass through point C. The maximum compressive strain of concrete at C is between  $\epsilon_{cu2}$  and 0. C lies where the line BO (which defines the boundary between sections partially in tension and sections in compression) intersects the vertical line characterized by  $\epsilon_{c2} = \text{constant}$ . The distance of this point from the outermost compressive fibre is taken as equal to  $(1 - \epsilon_{c2} / \epsilon_{cu2})h$  of the total depth of the section.

## **8.3 Biaxial Bending**

### **8.3.1 General solution**

The analysis of members of generalised cross-section having irregular shape is not normally required in bridge design. Methods are available in specialist literature for members having

at least two orthogonal axes of symmetry, where loads can be split in components acting in plane of bending of each of the axes and the shear centre coinciding with the cg of the section. The restrictions on the ultimate strains on concrete and steel specified in Clause 8.2.1 shall be observed.

### 8.3.2 Simplified method for bi-axial bending and axial force

- (1) The simplified method described below may be used for bi-axial bending. Special care should be taken to identify the section along the member with the critical combination of moments. Where more accurate analysis is required, specialist literature may be referred.
- (2) Separate design in each principal direction, disregarding bi-axial bending, is done as a first step. Imperfections need to be taken into account only in the direction where they will have the most unfavourable effect.
- (3) No further check is necessary if the slenderness ratios satisfy the following two conditions expressed by Eq.8.1 and if the relative eccentricities  $e_z/b$  and  $e_y/h$  satisfy one of the following conditions expressed by Eq.8.2 (Refer Fig.8.3 for notations).

$$\lambda_y/\lambda_z \leq 2 \text{ and } \lambda_z/\lambda_y \leq 2 \quad \text{Eq. 8.1}$$

and

$$\frac{e_y/h_{eq}}{e_z/b_{eq}} \leq 0.2 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{e_z/b_{eq}}{e_y/h_{eq}} \leq 0.2 \quad \text{Eq. 8.2}$$

where

$z, y$  Two principal axes of the cross-section.

$b, h$  Width and depth of section

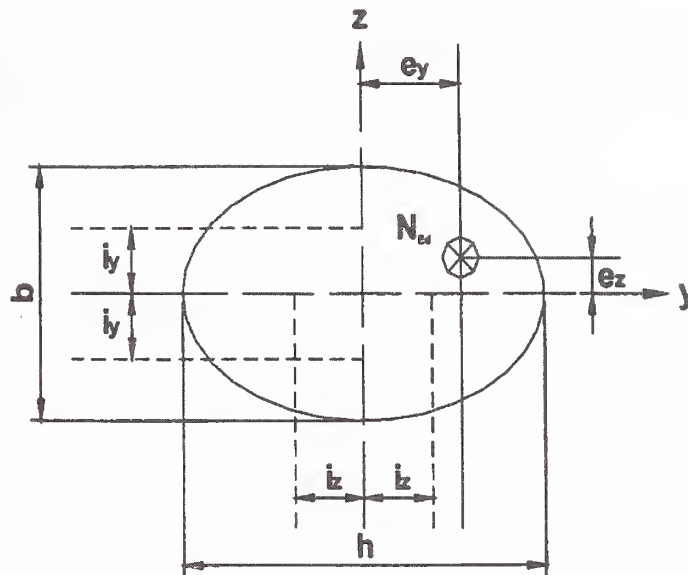
$b_{eq} = i_y \cdot \sqrt{12}$  and  $h_{eq} = i_z \cdot \sqrt{12}$  for arbitrary section, and equal to width/depth for rectangular sections as applicable w.r.t. plane of bending.

$\lambda_y, \lambda_z$  are the slenderness ratios  $i_0/i$  with respect to y-axis and z-axes respectively.

$i_y, i_z$  Radius of gyration with respect to y-axis and z-axis respectively.

$e_z, e_y$  Eccentricity of  $N_{Ed}$  with reference to z and y axis, as shown in Fig.8.3.

$N_{Ed}$  Design value of resultant axial load in the respective load combinations.



**Fig. 8.3 Definition of Eccentricities  $e_y$  and  $e_z$  of**

**Applied Axial Force Resultant  $N_{Ed}$**

- (4) If the condition of Eq.8.1 and Eq.8.2 are not fulfilled, bi-axial bending should be taken into account including the second order effects in each direction (unless they may be ignored according to Clause 11.1.5. In the absence of an accurate cross-section design for biaxial bending, the following simplified criterion may be used.

$$\left( \frac{M_{Edx}}{M_{Rdx}} \right)^{\alpha} + \left( \frac{M_{Edy}}{M_{Rdy}} \right)^{\alpha} \leq 1$$

**Eq. 8.3**

where

$M_{Edx}$ ,  $M_{Edy}$  Design moment around the respective axis, including nominal 2<sup>nd</sup> order moments.

$M_{Rdx}$ ,  $M_{Rdy}$  Moment resistance in the respective direction

Exponent as follows;

- for circular and elliptical cross-sections:  $\alpha = 2$
- for rectangular cross-sections:

$N_{Ed}/N_{Rd}$	0.1	0.7	1.0
$\alpha =$	1.0	1.5	2.0

With linear interpolation for intermediate values.

$N_{Ed}$  = design value of axial force.

$N_{Rd} = A_c f_{cd} + A_s f_{yd}$  design axial resistance of section.

where

$A_c$  is the gross area of the concrete section.

$A_s$  is the area of longitudinal reinforcement.



## **SECTION 9 ULTIMATE LIMIT STATE OF TWO AND THREE DIMENSIONAL ELEMENTS FOR OUT OF PLANE AND IN PLANE LOADING EFFECTS**

### **9.1 Scope**

This Section deals with plate and shell type elements and sub-elements where out of plane loading effects as well as in plane loading effects are present. The permissible simplifications for separating in plane and out of plane effects and designing for the same are given. A method of providing reinforcement for in plane effects is indicated.

For use of three dimensional elements as bridge elements (e.g. shell elements as in case of fish-belly superstructure) apart from designing for sectional strength, overall and local buckling checks may be required. Specialist literature may be referred for the same.

### **9.2 One-Way and Two-Way Slabs and Walls**

For predominantly transverse loads acting perpendicular to the plane of the slab, where primary overall in plane tensile or compressive stress fields are absent, the slabs/walls can be designed using conventional plate bending analysis and providing ultimate strength in bending and shear in one and/or two orthogonal directions as required by such analysis. Bridge deck slabs, retaining walls resisting lateral earth pressures etc., are the typical examples.

Any rational method of analysis which does not permit more than 15 percent redistribution of peak bending moments over supports can be used. The ultimate strength methods based on local yielding (e.g. yield line method) are not permitted. However, for calculating resistance to accidental impact loads (e.g. vehicular or barge impacts), use of such methods is permitted for which specialist literature may be referred.

### **9.3 Sub-Elements of Box Structures**

- (1) Where box type structure resists the overall longitudinal bending, shear and torsional effects, significant in-plane longitudinal stresses are present in its sub-elements, which coexist with the local out of plane loading, e.g. effects due to self weight, live loads, intermediate prestressing anchorages etc.
- (2) Such elements can be designed primarily for in-plane effects arising from overall bending, shear and torsion in longitudinal direction. In

transverse direction they are designed for out of plane loading effects.

- (3) If effects of out-of-plane loading are present in the same direction as of the overall in-plane tensions/compressions, these elements should be locally checked for combined effect of in-plane forces, and out of plane bending moments and shears.

#### 9.4 General Solution for Two-Way Slabs, Walls and Shell Elements

For plate type elements having complex geometry and edge conditions and having in-plane as well as out-of-plane (transverse) effects due to loading, the resultant stress fields may be obtained by use of suitable finite elements in the FEM analysis. The analysis yields resultant stresses which represent combined effects of in-plane membrane stresses and local bending effects. These stress resultants can be directly used to design tensile reinforcement and for verifying safety in compression. A general method of design using sandwich model given in Informative Annexure B-1 may be referred. Alternatively, the stresses can be converted to equivalent axial forces and bending effects in orthogonal directions and used for designing the sections following conventional methods.

##### 9.4.1 Simplified design for tensile reinforcement for orthogonal in-plane effects

The following simplified method may be used for proportioning of tensile reinforcement based on the in-plane stresses  $\sigma_{Edx} > \sigma_{Edy}$  and  $\tau_{Edxy}$ .

- (1) Compressive stresses should be taken as positive, with  $\sigma_{Edx} > \sigma_{Edy}$ , and the direction of reinforcement should coincide with the x and y axes.
- (2) The tensile strengths  $f_{tdx}$  and  $f_{tdy}$  provided by reinforcement should be determined from:

$$f_{tdx} = \rho_x f_{yd} \text{ and } f_{tdy} = \rho_y f_{xd} \quad \text{Eq. 9.1}$$

Where  $\rho_x$  and  $\rho_y$  are the geometric reinforcement ratios, along the x and y axes respectively.

- (3) In locations where  $\sigma_{Edx}$  and  $\sigma_{Edy}$  are both compressive and  $\sigma_{Edx} \cdot \sigma_{Edy} > \tau_{Edxy}^2$ , design reinforcement is not required. However, the maximum compressive stress should not exceed  $f_{cd}$ .

- (4) In locations where  $\sigma_{Edy}$  is tensile or  $\sigma_{Edx} \cdot \sigma_{Edy} \leq \tau_{Edxy}^2$ , reinforcement is required.
- (5) The optimum reinforcement, indicated by superscript (') and placed in directions of concerned principal stresses are determined by :

For  $\sigma_{Edx} \leq |\tau_{Edxy}|$

$$f'_{tdx} = |\tau_{Edxy}| - \sigma_{Edx} \quad \text{Eq. 9.2}$$

$$f'_{tdy} = |\tau_{Edxy}| - \sigma_{Edy} \quad \text{Eq. 9.3}$$

$$\sigma_{cd} = 2|\tau_{Edy}| \quad \text{Eq. 9.4}$$

For  $\sigma_{Edx} > |\tau_{Edxy}|$

$$f'_{tdx} = 0 \quad \text{Eq. 9.5}$$

$$f'_{tdy} = \frac{\tau_{Edxy}^2}{\sigma_{Edx}} - \sigma_{Edy} \quad \text{Eq. 9.6}$$

$$\sigma_{cd} = \sigma_{Edx} \left( 1 + \left( \frac{\tau_{Edxy}}{\sigma_{Edx}} \right)^2 \right) \quad \text{Eq. 9.7}$$

The concrete stress,  $\sigma_{cd}$ , should not exceed  $v \cdot f_{cd}$ . The minimum reinforcement is obtained if the direction of reinforcement is identical to the direction of principal stresses, where value of  $v$  is obtained from Eq. 10.6.

Alternatively, for the general case the necessary reinforcement and the concrete stress can be determined by:

$$f_{tdx} = |\tau_{Edxy}| \cot \theta - \sigma_{Edx} \quad \text{Eq. 9.8}$$

$$f_{tdy} = |\tau_{Edxy}| / \cot \theta - \sigma_{Edy} \quad \text{Eq. 9.9}$$

$$\sigma_{cd} = |\tau_{Edxy}| \left( \cot \theta + \frac{1}{\cot \theta} \right) \quad \text{Eq. 9.10}$$



where  $\theta$  is the angle of the concrete compressive stress to the x-axis. The value of  $\cot \theta$  shall be chosen to avoid compressive value of  $f_{td}$ .

Note:

- (1) In order to avoid unacceptable cracks for the serviceability state, and to ensure the required deformation capacity for the ultimate limit state, the reinforcement derived from Eq.9.8 and Eq. 9.9 for each direction should not be more than twice and not less than half the reinforcement determined by Eq. 9.2 and Eq. 9.3 or, alternatively, from Eq.9.5 and 9.6.

These limitations are expressed by  $\frac{1}{2}f'_{tdx} \leq f_{tdx} \leq 2f'_{tdy}$  and  $\frac{1}{2}f'_{tdy} \leq f_{tdy} \leq 2f'_{tdx}$

- (2) The reinforcement should be fully anchored at all free edges by following appropriate detailing, as described in Section 15.

#### **9.4.2 Simplified design for bending in orthogonal direction**

The slab (wall) subjected to orthogonal bending effects is substituted by two half plates usually representing the compression and tensile zones of the element.

The stresses in compressive portions are checked by verifying that the resultant principle compressive stress is within the allowable limits.

The half plate carrying tensile stresses in orthogonal directions is converted to orthogonal mesh of steel following method described in Clause 9.4.1.

The out of plane shear forces are similarly converted to principle bending directions and the maximum shear checked using methods of Section 10.

#### **9.4.3 Simplified design of combined in-plane forces and out of plane bending and shears**

The plate is substituted by a sandwiched plate of the same thickness consisting of three layers of  $1/3^{\text{rd}}$  thickness. The central  $1/3^{\text{rd}}$  thickness is designed to carry in-plane forces using methods of Clause 9.4.1.

The outer two layers are designed to resist tensile and compressive fields with appropriate lever-arm to develop resistance to bending and shear in two directions as per Clause 9.4.2.

## SECTION 10 ULTIMATE LIMIT STATE OF SHEAR, PUNCHING SHEAR AND TORSION

### 10.1 Scope

This Section applies to design of flexural members for web shear, interface shear between the web and flanges, and torsion. The punching shear due to transverse concentrated loads/reactions acting over a small area is covered. Design verification for shear is carried out at Ultimate Limit State of strength only. The design of members requiring shear reinforcement is based on truss model. For members without shear reinforcement truss model is not applicable.

For concrete of grades higher than M60, the shear strength shall be limited to that of strength grade M60 for design purpose.

### 10.2 Design of Flexural Members for Shear

#### 10.2.1 Shear design model of members without shear reinforcement

- (1) The design rules, given in Clauses below are based on extensive experimentation and not on any specific design model. These rules take into account the important parameters mentioned in (3) & (4) below by empirical approach.
- (2) Minimum flexural reinforcement is required in this type of members to avoid sudden brittle failure induced by cracking in shear tension in webs. The minimum shear reinforcement may be omitted in members such as slabs where transverse redistribution of loads is possible.
- (3) Thin structural members like slabs cracked in flexure carry shear forces using shear strength of the uncracked compression zone, shear forces transferred across flexural cracks by mechanical interlock and dowel action of reinforcing steel. Members of thickness less than 200 mm develop higher shear strength than those having over 200 mm thickness.
- (4) The shear strength of rectangular section, T- section and L-section is mainly determined by:
  - Effective width of web  $b_w$ , depth  $d$ , ratio of  $b_w/d$ , and ratio of shear span to depth ratio.
  - Properties of concrete such as tensile strength, and mechanical interlock of cracked surfaces.
  - Ratio  $\rho = A_S / b_w.d$  of flexural tensile reinforcement to area of concrete.
  - Dowel action of reinforcement.



## 10.2.2 Shear design model of members with shear reinforcement

### 10.2.2.1 Zones of shear design

These elements subjected to bending and significant shear forces exhibit three zones as shown in Fig.10.1(a) namely uncracked zone (Zone A); Zone with shear cracks in web without any flexural cracks (Zone B); Zone with combined flexural and shear cracks (Zone C, comprising Zones C<sub>1</sub> & C<sub>2</sub>) and Zone with only flexural cracks (Zone D). The compression fields in concrete in these zones together with the shear resistance provided by concrete cracks and the reinforcement, provide mechanism to carry shear forces to the supports.

In Zone-'A', the type of support affects the compression field in concrete near the support.

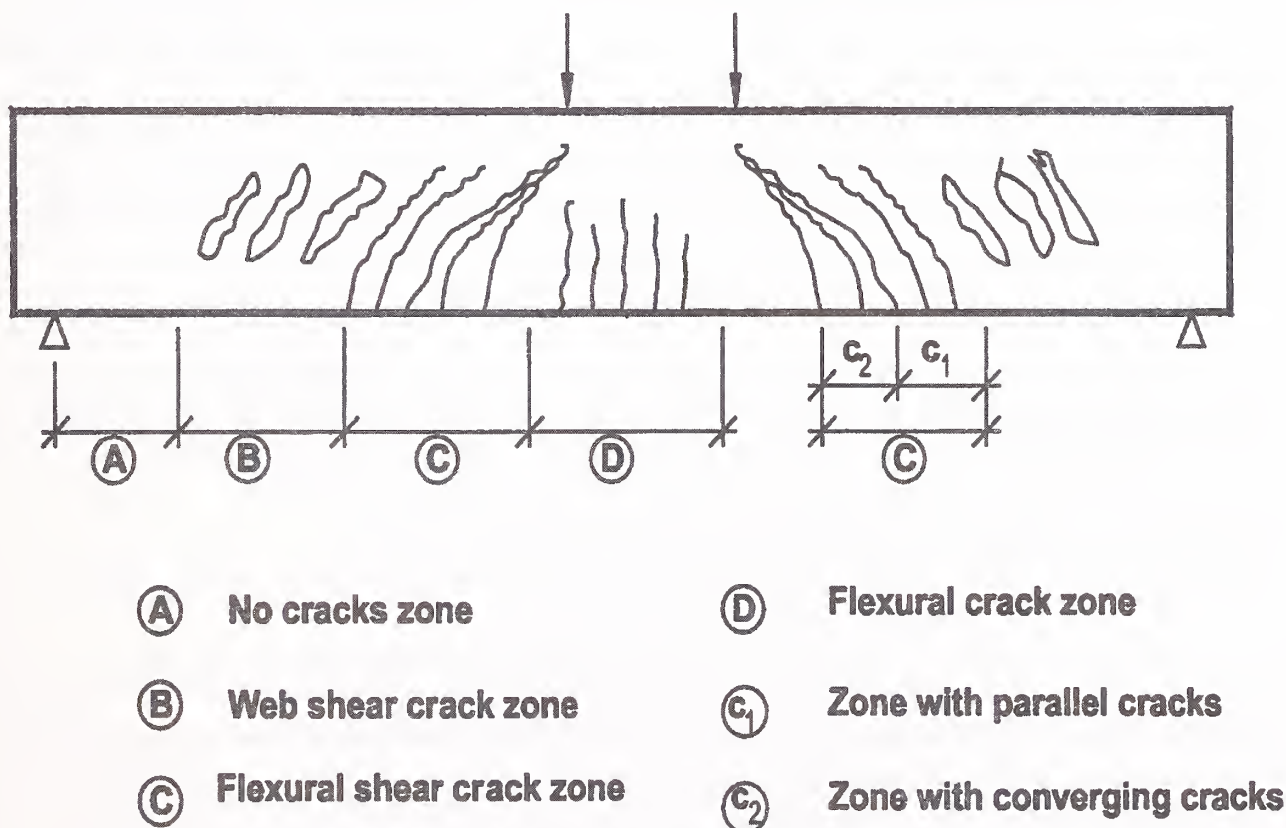


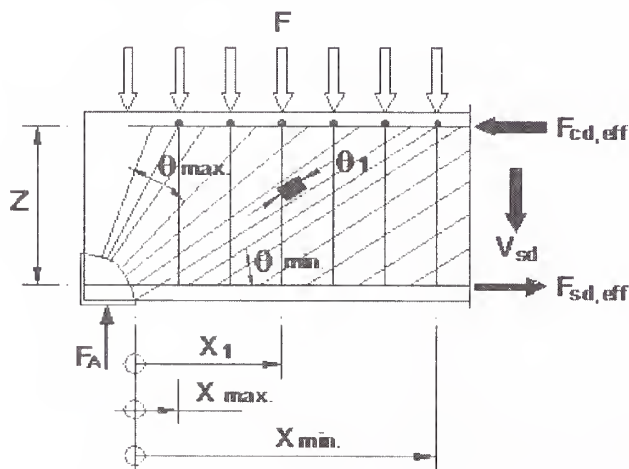
Fig. 10.1(a) Shear Zones of Flexural Members

In case of direct support [Fig. 10.1(b)], a fan like compression field exists. In area, confined by the beam end and the steepest inclination ( $\theta_{\max} = 45^\circ$ ) of the compression field, no shear reinforcement is required. (It is however, customary to extend the shear reinforcement at section 'A' in this region also.) In area, confined by the steepest ( $\theta_{\max}$ ) and the lowest inclination ( $\theta_{\min}$ ) of compression field [ $\theta_{\min}$  is set at the chosen design angle of compression strut ( $\theta$ ), as per Clause 10.2.2.2], no shear reinforcement is required for loads acting within that area, as these loads are carried to supports by the direct

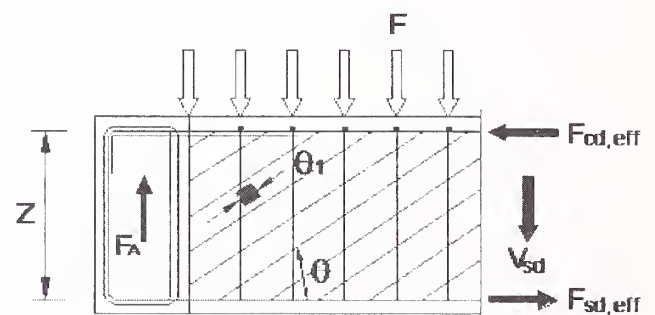


compressive strut. The horizontal components of this internal compressive forces shall be provided by tensile steel in addition to the steel needed for bending.

In case of indirect support [Fig. 10.1(c)], as a consequence of compatibility condition, a fan like compression field does not exist. For the design it is assumed on the safer side that the compressive stresses are distributed equally over the full depth of the section. Additionally, in the common inter-section zone of the supporting and the supported beam, reinforcement is required over and above the shear reinforcement.



**Fig.10.1(b) Direct Support**



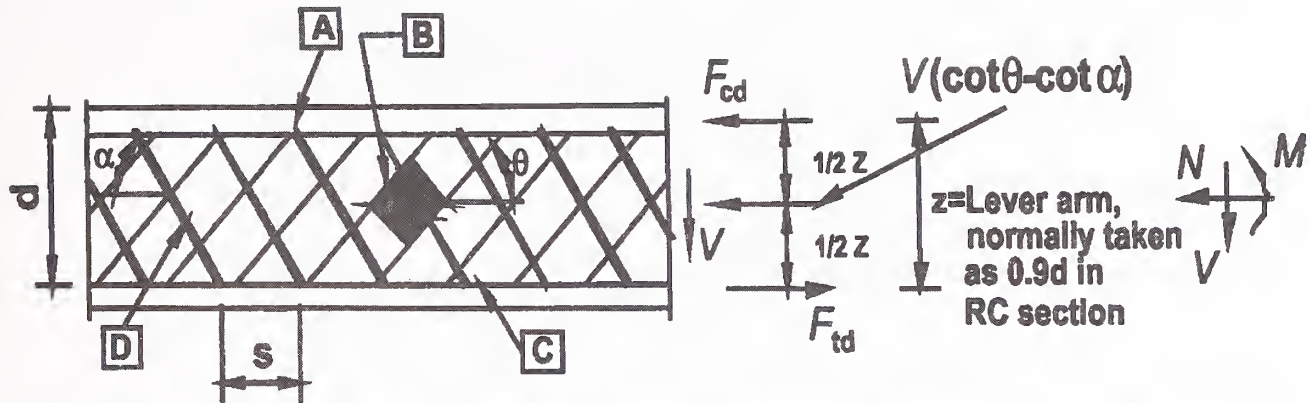
**Fig.10.1(c) Indirect Support**

#### 10.2.2.2 The shear transfer mechanism of truss model

##### (1) Beams with Constant Depth

The design of shear resistance of members is based on a truss model (Fig. 10.2) in which loads are transferred to the support by truss type action within the member. The compression chord, tension chord and web members comprising compression struts and tensile steel elements are the members of the truss. Angles  $\theta$  and  $\alpha$  are the inclinations of concrete compressive truss and reinforcement with the axis of the element as defined in Fig. 10.2(a). The angles may be chosen within limits such that:

$$1.0 \leq \cot \theta \leq 2.5 \text{ and } 45^\circ \leq \alpha \leq 90^\circ$$



**[A]** - Compression chord, **[B]** - Struts, **[C]** - Tensile chord, **[D]** - Shear reinforcement

Fig.10.2(a)

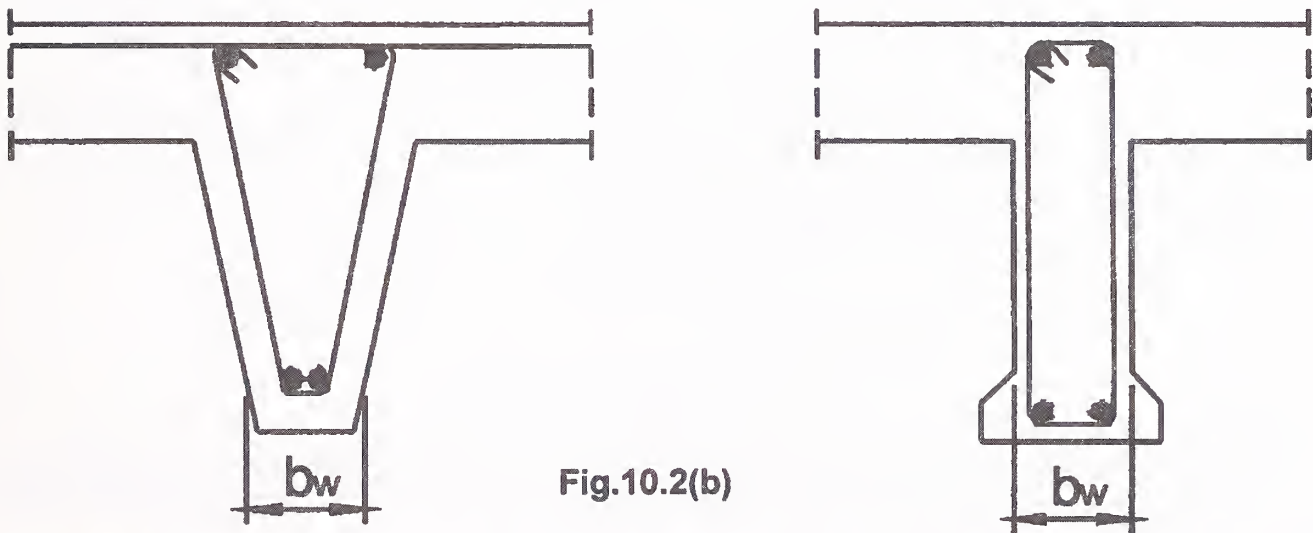


Fig.10.2(b)

**Fig.10.2 Truss Model and Notation for Members with Shear Reinforcement**

## (2) Beams of Variable Depth

A schematic truss model for beam with both tensile and compressive chords inclined to the central axis as shown in Fig.10.3 may be used for design of shear resistance. The forces in the chord and web may be determined on the basis of this or other suitable truss models.

As a simplification, local zones of short length of a beam with inclined chords may be designed using method given for beam with parallel chord. For this shear force to be carried by the web shall be corrected by taking into account the components of chord forces parallel to the shear force as shown in Fig.10.4.

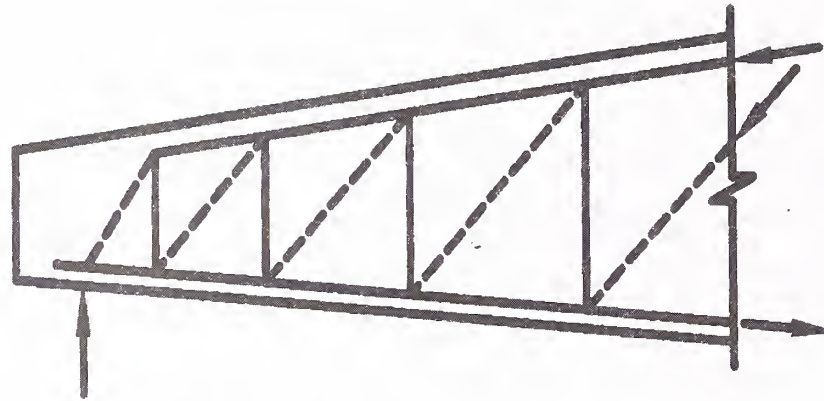


Fig.10.3 Model of a Beam of Varying Depth

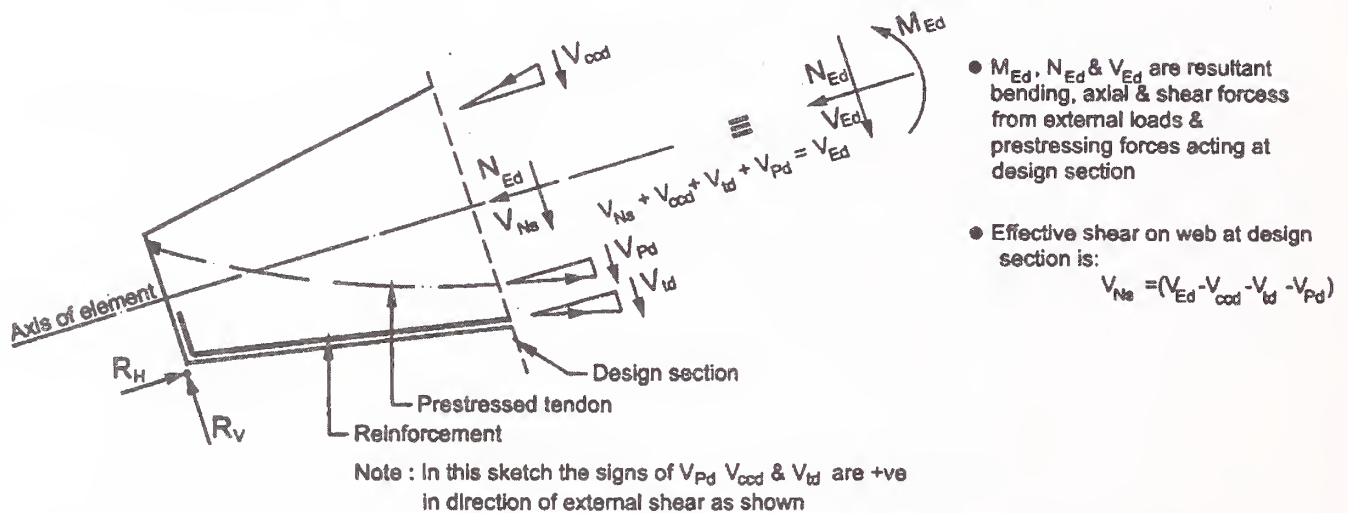


Fig. 10.4 Shear Components of Increased Tension in Bonded Prestressing Tendons and Forces in Chord Members Inclined w.r.t. Axis of the Element

### 10.2.3 Design shear force

- (1) In case of direct support, shear force  $V_{Ns}$  acting at section 'd' (effective depth) away from support may be used for design of shear reinforcement. For checking crushing of concrete compression strut  $V_{Ns}$  shall be taken at the face of support.
- (2) In case of indirect support, shear force shall be taken at face of the support both for design of reinforcement and checking compressive stresses.
- (3) In the elements of variable depth, where  $V_{Ed}$ ,  $M_{Ed}$  and  $N_{Ed}$  are concurrently acting forces, the design shear force  $V_{Ed}$  from sectional analysis shall be reduced by the favourable contribution from any inclined compression chord, tension chord and inclined prestressing tendons in case of bonded tendons as shown in Fig.10.4. Any



unfavourable contributions, depending on direction of inclination of chords and the prestressing tendons shall be added to  $V_{Ed}$ .

in Fig.10.4,  $V_{NS} = V_{Ed} - V_{pd} - V_{ccd} - V_{td}$  with appropriate signs.

- (4) In case of prestressed members the design prestressing force is considered as external load in the analysis and is accounted for in the analysis of the sectional shear  $V_{NS}$ , including its hyperstatic effects in case of indeterminate members.

Further increase in force in bonded tendons due to cracking of concrete under ULS load only is to be included in the analysis of shear resistance of truss in the same way as that of untensioned reinforcement.

In case of pretensioned members the reduction in the maximum developable force under UTS in prestressing tendons within development length shall be taken into account.

- (5) For members not requiring shear reinforcement the net design force shall be taken as  $V_{Ed}$  ignoring components of inclined chords and increase in bonded prestressing force.

### 10.3 Design Method

#### 10.3.1 Notation

For verification of shear resistance, the following additional notations over those given in Section 3 are required:

$V_{Rd,c}$	-	The design shear resistance of the member without shear reinforcement.
$V_{Rd,max}$	-	The design value of maximum shear force which can be sustained by the member limited by crushing of the compression struts.
$V_{Rd,s}$	-	The design value of the shear force which can be sustained by the yielding shear reinforcement.
$V_{ccd}$	-	Design value of the shear component of the force in the compression area, in the case of an inclined compression chord.
$V_{td}$	-	Design value of the shear component of the force in the tensile reinforcement, in the case of an inclined tensile chord.
$V_{Rd}$	-	The shear resistance of a member with shear reinforcement $= V_{Rd,s} + V_{ccd} + V_{td}$

- $V_{Ed}$  - The design shear force at a cross-section resulting from external loading and that due to prestressing ( $V_{pd}$ ) (bonded or unbonded tendon)
- $V_{NS}$  - Net Design Shear Force  
= Algebraic sum of  $V_{Ed}$ ,  $V_{ccd}$  and  $V_{td}$
- $V_{pd}$  - Shear component of prestressing tendon.

The following notations are adopted in the expressions given hereafter.

$$K = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{d}} \leq 2.0 \text{ where } d \text{ is depth in millimeters.}$$

- $b_w$  Minimum breadth of the section over the depth (Fig.10.2)
- $b_{wc}$  Width of the cross-section at the centroidal axis, allowing for the presence of ducts as per Eq.10.14 or 10.15 as applicable.
- $A_{sl}$  Area of the tensile reinforcement which extends not less than  $(l_{bd} + d)$  beyond the considered section [Fig.10.5]
- $A_{sc}$  Area of untensioned and tensioned steel in compression zone.
- $A_{sw}$  Area of shear reinforcement at a section
- $S$  First moment of area between centroidal axis and extreme compression fibre about the centroidal axis.
- $I$  Second moment of area of the gross cross-section.
- $M_{Ed}$  Design value of the applied internal bending moment
- $N_{Ed}$  Applied longitudinal force in the section due to loading or prestressing with proper load factors (compressive force shall be taken as positive). The influence of imposed deformations on  $N_{Ed}$  may be ignored.
- $F_s$  Tensile force in the longitudinal reinforcement
- $F_c$  The compression force in the concrete in the direction of the longitudinal axis
- $\sigma_{cp}$  Concrete compressive stress at the centroidal axis due to axial loading or prestressing
- $f_{yw,d}$  Design strength of web reinforcement to resist shear  $= \frac{f_{yk}}{\gamma_m}$ .

$f_{cd}$  Design value of concrete compression strength =  $\alpha_{cc} f_{ck} / \gamma_m$   
where  $\alpha_{cc} = 0.67$ .

$f_{ctd}$  Design value of concrete tensile strength =  $(f_{ctk} / \gamma_m)$

$f_{ctk}$  Characteristic axial tensile strength of concrete (5 percent fractile)

$s$  Spacing of shear reinforcement

$$P_1 = \frac{A_{sl}}{b_w d} \leq 0.02$$

$$\rho_w = \frac{A_{sw}}{s b_w \sin \alpha} \text{ where } \alpha \text{ is as defined in Fig.10.2(a).}$$

$k_1 = l_x / l_{pt2} \leq 1.0$  for pre-tensioned tendons, for other types of prestressing  $k_1 = 1$ .

$l_x$  is the distance of section considered from the starting point of the transmission length,

$l_{pt2}$  is the upper bound value of the transmission length of the prestressing element,  $l_{pt2} = 1.2 l_{pt}$  (for  $l_{pt}$  &  $l_{pt2}$ , refer Eq.15.9 & Eq.15.10, Section 15)

$\alpha_{cw}$  Constant as defined below.

For structural element having no axial force  $\alpha_{cw} = 1$

For structural element having axial force

$$\text{When } 0 < \sigma_{cp} \leq 0.25 f_{cd} \quad \alpha_{cw} = (1 + \sigma_{cp} / f_{cd})$$

$$\text{When } 0.25 f_{cd} < \sigma_{cp} \leq 0.5 f_{cd} \quad \alpha_{cw} = 1.25$$

$$\text{When } 0.5 f_{cd} < \sigma_{cp} \leq 1.0 f_{cd} \quad \alpha_{cw} = 2.5 (1 - \sigma_{cp} / f_{cd})$$

When:

$\sigma_{cp}$  is the mean compressive stress, measured positive, in the concrete due to the design axial force. This should be obtained by averaging it over the concrete section taking account of the reinforcement. The value of  $\sigma_{cp}$  need not be calculated at a distance less than  $0.5d \cot \theta$  from the edge of the support.

$v_1 = v$  is a strength reduction factor for concrete cracked in shear, given in Eq. 10.6.



### 10.3.2 Elements not requiring design shear reinforcement

- 1) The design shear resistance  $V_{Rd,c} \geq V_{Ed}$ .
- 2) The design shear resistance of the member without shear reinforcement  $V_{Rd,c}$  is given by:

$$V_{Rd,c} = \left[ 0.12K(80\rho_1 \cdot f_{ck})^{0.33} + 0.15\sigma_{cp} \right] b_w \cdot d$$

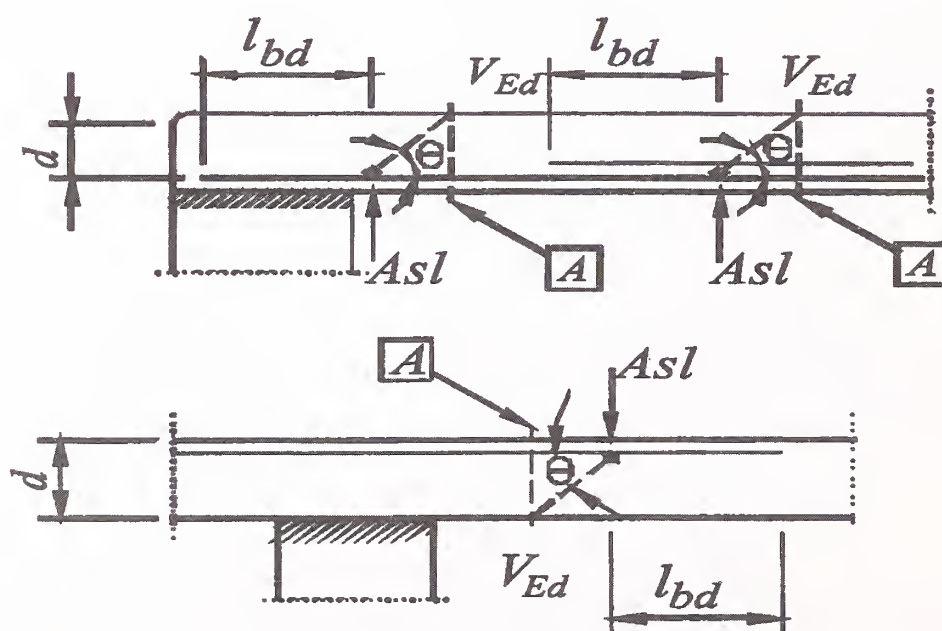
$$\text{Subject to a minimum of } v_{Rd,c} = (v_{\min} + 0.15\sigma_{cp}) b_w \cdot d \quad \text{Eq. 10.1}$$

$$K = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{d}} \leq 2.0 \text{ where } d \text{ is depth in millimeters.} \quad \text{Eq. 10.2}$$

$$\text{and } v_{\min} = 0.031K^{3/2} f_{ck}^{1/2}, \quad \text{Eq. 10.3}$$

$$\sigma_{cp} \text{ is limited to } 0.2 f_{cd} \text{ (MPa) where } \sigma_{cp} = N_{Ed} / A_c < 0.2 f_{cd} \text{ (MPa)}$$

$$\rho_1 = \frac{A_{sl}}{b_w \cdot d} \leq 0.02 \text{ (Fig.10.5)}$$



**[A]** - section considered

Fig.10.5 Definition of  $A_{sl}$  in Expression  $\rho_1$

$A_{st}$  is the tensile reinforcement which extends by length greater than  $l_{bd} + d$  beyond the section considered (Fig10.5).

- (3) In prestressed single span members without design shear reinforcement both Zone B and Zone C may exist. For Zone C, cracked in bending, the expression for  $V_{Rd,c}$  as given in Eq.10.1 can be used. For Zone B uncracked in bending, where the flexural tensile stress in the region under maximum bending moment is smaller than  $f_{ctk,05}/\gamma_m$ , the shear resistance should be limited by the tensile strength of concrete. In these regions, the shear resistance is given by:

$$V_{Rd,c} = \frac{I_{wc}}{s} \sqrt{(f_{ctd})^2 \pm k_1 \sigma_{cp} f_{ctd}} \quad \text{Eq. 10.4}$$

Where notations are as per **Section 10.3.1**.

For cross-sections where the width varies over the height, the maximum principal stress may occur on an axis other than the centroidal axis. In such a case the minimum value of the shear capacity should be found by calculating  $V_{Rd,c}$  at various axes in the cross-section.

- (4) The calculation of the shear resistance according to the Eq.10.4 is not required for cross-sections between the support and the section which contains the intersection of the elastic centroidal axis and a line inclined from the inner edge of the support at an angle of  $45^\circ$
- (5) For members with loads applied on the upper side at a distance  $a_v$ , where  $a_v$  is within  $0.5d$  to  $2d$ , from the edge of a support (or centre of bearing where flexible bearings are used), the contribution of this load to the shear force  $V_{Ed}$  may be multiplied by  $\beta = a_v / 2d$ . This reduction may be applied for checking  $V_{Rd,c}$  in Eq.10.1. This is only valid provided that the longitudinal reinforcement is fully anchored at the support. For  $a_v \leq 0.5d$  the value  $a_v = 0.5d$  should be used.

The shear force  $V_{Ed}$ , calculated without reduction by  $\beta$ , should however always satisfy the condition.

$$V_{Ed} \leq 0.5b_w d v f_{cd} \quad \text{Eq. 10.5}$$

where  $\nu$  is a strength reduction factor for concrete cracked in shear.

$$\nu = 0.6 \times [1 - f_{ck}/310], \text{ where } f_{ck} \text{ is in Mpa} \quad \text{Eq. 10.6}$$

- (6) For the design of longitudinal reinforcement in the region cracked in flexure, the  $M_{Ed}$  line shall be shifted over a distance  $\alpha_l = d$  in the unfavourable direction (Ref. Section 16.5.1.3 and Fig. 16.2).

### 10.3.3 Members requiring design shear reinforcement

#### 10.3.3.1 Shear resistance

- (1) The shear resistance of concrete flexural element in a truss model is dependent on the longitudinal reinforcement provided in the tension zone. For full effectiveness at the design section of shear, the longitudinal reinforcement shall extend not less than  $\Delta L = d_{cot \theta} + l_{bd}$  beyond the section considered where ' $d$ ' is the effective depth and  $l_{bd}$  the anchorage length (Fig.10.5). The area of bonded prestressing steel may be included.
- (2) Failure ascribable to web compression will be sudden and hence shall be avoided.
- (3) The shear at the interface between concrete cast at different times requires additional precautions as detailed in Clause 10.3.4.
- (4) To find the least amount of shear reinforcement, for low and intermediate shear stresses, the lower limits of  $\theta$  given in Clause 10.2.2.2 will normally govern the design. For higher shear stresses, the value of  $\theta$  may be found by equating the design shear force  $V_{NS}$  to  $V_{Rd,max}$ . The amount of shear reinforcement is then found by equating the design shear force  $V_{NS}$  to  $V_{Rd,s}$ . The value of  $\theta$  may alternatively selected to optimize the design, for example by minimizing the total amount of reinforcement.

#### 10.3.3.2 Members with vertical shear reinforcement

For members with vertical shear reinforcement, the shear resistance,  $V_{Rd}$  is the smaller value of:

$$V_{Rd,s} = \frac{A_{sw}}{s} z f_{ywd} \cot \theta \quad \text{Eq. 10.7}$$

and

$$V_{Rd,max} = \alpha_{cw} b_w z \nu_1 \frac{f_{cd}}{(\cot \theta + \tan \theta)} \quad \text{Eq. 10.8}$$

where

$A_{sw}$  is the cross-sectional area of the shear reinforcement.



- $s$  is the spacing of the stirrups
- $f_{ywd}$  is the design strength of web reinforcement to resist shear  $= \frac{f_{yk}}{\gamma_m}$ .
- $v_1 = v$  is a strength reduction factor for concrete cracked in shear given in Eq 10.6.
- $z$  lever arm can be taken as  $0.9d$  for RCC section and to be calculated for PSC section.
- $\alpha_{cw}$  is a coefficient taking account of the state of the stress in the compression chord:
- $$\alpha_{cw} = 1 \quad \text{where } \sigma_{cp} = 0$$
- $$\frac{1 + \sigma_{cp}/f_{cd}}{1.25} \quad \text{for } 0 < \sigma_{cp} \leq 0.25f_{cd}$$
- $$1.25 \quad \text{for } 0.25f_{cd} < \sigma_{cp} \leq 0.5f_{cd}$$
- $$\frac{2.5(1 - \sigma_{cp}/f_{cd})}{2.5} \quad \text{for } 0.5f_{cd} < \sigma_{cp} < 1.0f_{cd} \quad \text{Eq. 10.9}$$

where

$\sigma_{cp}$  = is the mean compressive stress, measured positive, in the concrete due to the design axial force. This should be obtained by averaging it over the concrete section taking account of the reinforcement. The value of  $\sigma_{cp}$  need not be calculated at a distance less than  $0.5d \cot \theta$  from the edge of the support.

**Note:** The maximum effective cross-sectional area of the shear reinforcement,  $A_{sw,max}$  for  $\cot \theta = 1$  is given by:

$$\frac{A_{sw,max} f_{ywd}}{b_w s} \leq \frac{1}{2} \alpha_{cw} v_1 f_{cd} \quad \text{Eq.10.10}$$

### 10.3.3.3 Members with inclined shear reinforcement

- (1) For members with inclined shear reinforcement, the shear resistance is the smaller value of :

$$V_{Rd,s} = \frac{A_{sw}}{s} z f_{ywd} (\cot \theta + \cot \alpha) \sin \alpha \quad \text{Eq.10.11}$$

and

$$V_{Rd,max} = \alpha_{cw} b_w z v_1 f_{cd} (\cot \theta + \cot \alpha) / (1 + \cot^2 \theta) \quad \text{Eq.10.12}$$

**Note:** The maximum effective shear reinforcement,  $A_{sw,max}$  for  $\cot \theta = 1$  follows from:

$$\frac{A_{sw,max} f_{ywd}}{b_w s} \leq \frac{1}{2} \frac{\alpha_{cw} v_1 f_{cd}}{\sin \alpha} \quad \text{Eq.10.13}$$

- (2) Bent up bars shall not be used as shear reinforcement except in combination with vertical stirrups. At least 50 percent of  $V_{NS}$  shall be resisted by vertical stirrups.
- (3) For inclined shear reinforcement, the angle between the reinforcement and the longitudinal axis of the beam ( $\alpha$ ) should not be less than  $45^\circ$ .
- (4) In regions where there is no discontinuity of  $V_{Ed}$  (e.g. for uniformly distributed loading) the shear reinforcement in any length increment  $l = z (\cot \theta + \cot \alpha)$  may be calculated using the smallest value of  $V_{Ed}$  in the increment.
- (5) Where the web contains grouted ducts with a diameter  $\phi < b_w/8$  the shear resistance  $V_{Rd,max}$  should be calculated on the basis of a nominal web thickness given by:

$$b_{w,nom} = b_w - 0.5 \Sigma \phi \quad \text{Eq.10.14}$$

where  $\phi$  is the outer diameter of the duct and  $\Sigma \phi$  is determined for the most unfavourable level.

For grouted metal ducts with  $\phi \leq b_w/8$ ,  $b_{w,nom} = b_w$

For non-grouted ducts, grouted plastic ducts and unbonded tendons the nominal web thickness is:

$$b_{w,nom} = b_w - 1.2 \Sigma \phi \quad \text{Eq.10.15}$$

The value 1.2 in Eq.10.15 is introduced to take account of splitting of the concrete struts due to transverse tension. If adequate transverse reinforcement is provided this value may be reduced to 1.0.

- (6) The additional tensile force,  $\Delta F_{td}$ , in the longitudinal reinforcement due to shear  $V_{Ed}$  may be calculated from:

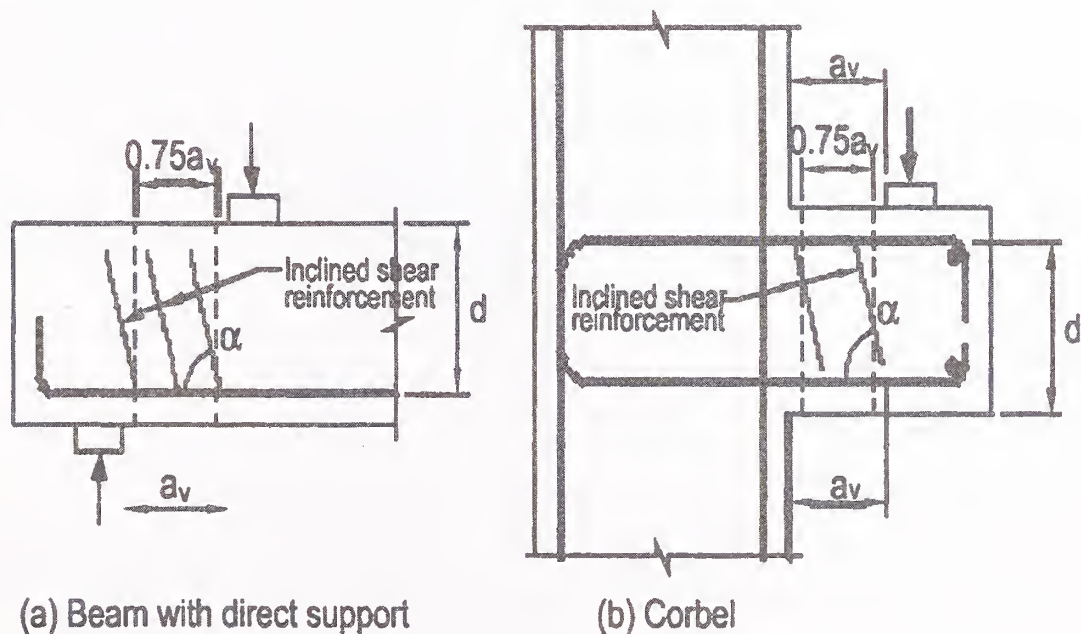
$$\Delta F_{td} = 0.5 V_{Ed} (\cot \theta - \cot \alpha) \quad \text{Eq.10.16}$$

$(M_{Ed}/z) + \Delta F_{td}$  should be taken not greater than  $M_{Ed,max}/Z$ , where  $M_{Ed,max}$  is the maximum moment along the beam.

- (7) For members with loads applied on the upper side within a distance  $0.5d \leq a_v \leq 2d$  the contribution of this load to the shear force  $V_{Ed}$  may be reduced by  $\beta = a_v/2d$ .
- (8) The shear force  $V_{Ed'}$  calculated in this way, should satisfy the condition

$$V_{Ed} \leq A_{sw} f_{yw} d \sin \alpha \quad \text{Eq. 10.17}$$

Where  $A_{sw} f_{yw} d$  is the resistance of the shear reinforcement crossing the inclined shear crack between the loaded areas (refer Fig.10.6). Only the shear reinforcement within the central  $0.75a_v$  should be taken into account. The reduction of  $\beta$  should only be applied for calculating the shear reinforcement. It is only valid provided the longitudinal reinforcement is fully anchored at the support.



**Fig. 10.6 Loads Near Supports and Shear Reinforcement with Direct Strut Action**

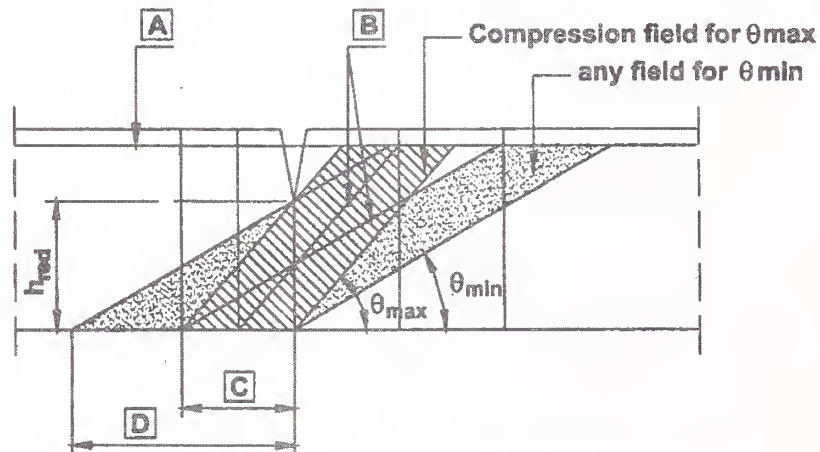
**Note 1:** Beams with loads near to supports and corbels may alternatively be designed with strut and tie models.

**Note 2:** Where the load is not acting at the top of the beam, or when the support is not at the bottom of the beam, suspension reinforcement should be provided to transfer the load to the top of the design truss system.



#### 10.3.3.4 Diagonal stress fields for members having unbonded tendon

- (1) Sections having both bonded and unbonded tendons shall be treated as in Clause 10.3.3.3 making use of only bonded tendons as reinforcement.
- (2) In the case of precast elements joined by unbonded prestressing tendons in the tension chord (e.g. segmental construction), the section at ULS may act as tied arch with joints partially opening. This effect of opening of joints on shear resistance should be considered. Under these conditions, in absence of detailed analysis, the force in the tension chord, provided by the unbonded tendons should be assumed to remain unchanged after the joints have opened. In consequence, as the applied load increases and joints open further, the inclination of concrete strutt within the web increases. The depth of concrete section available for the flow of the web compression decreases to a value of  $h_{red}$  (Refer Fig. 10.7)



- A** Axes of theoretical tension tie of truss model  
**B** Axes of theoretical compression struts for compression field with  $\theta_{max}$  &  $\theta_{min}$   
**C** Field A for arrangement of stirrups with  $\theta_{max}$  ( $\cot \theta = 1.0$ )  
**D** Field B for arrangement of stirrups with  $\theta_{min}$  ( $\cot \theta = 2.5$ )

**Fig. 10.7 Diagonal Stress Fields Across the Joint in the Web**

The shear capacity can be evaluated in accordance with Eq.10.7 and Eq.10.11 as applicable, by assuming a value of  $\theta$  and effective reinforcement area derived from the minimum value of residual depth  $h_{red}$

$$h_{red} = \frac{V_{NS}}{b_w \cdot v \cdot f_{cd}} (\cot \theta + \tan \theta) \quad \text{Eq. 10.18}$$

Shear reinforcement stirrups, having the following area (Eq. 10.19) per unit length should be provided within a distance  $h_{red} \cot \theta$ , but not greater than the segment length, from both edges of the joint.

$$\frac{A_{sw}}{s} = \frac{V_{NS}}{h_{red} f_{ywd} \cot \theta} \quad \text{Eq. 10.19}$$

The prestressing force should be increased, if necessary, such that at the ultimate limit state under the combination of bending moment and shear, the joint opening is limited to the value  $h-h_{red}$ . The value of  $h_{red}$  shall be more than  $0.5h$ .

#### 10.3.3.5 Minimum shear reinforcement

For beams, minimum shear reinforcement ratio ( $\rho_{min}$ ) shall be

$$= \frac{0.072 \sqrt{f_{ck}}}{f_{yk}} \quad \text{Eq. 10.20}$$

#### 10.3.4 Interface shear

The shear stress that arises between the interfaces of concrete placed at different times is referred to as interface shear.

Precast beam with cast-in-situ slab is one of the typical case where interface shear has to be designed for.

The interface shear is resisted by friction at the interface and by reinforcement placed across the shear plane.

The interface shear stress should satisfy the following:

$$v_{Edi} \leq v_{Rdi}$$

where,

$v_{Edi}$  is the interface shear stress

$v_{Rdi}$  is the resisting capacity at section.

$$v_{Edi} = \beta v_{Ed} / z b_i$$

$\beta$  is the ratio of the longitudinal force in the new concrete and the total longitudinal force.

$v_{Edi}$  is the transverse shear force.

$z$  is the lever arm and

$b_i$  is the width of the interface.

$$V_{Rdi} = \mu \sigma_n + \rho f_{yd} [\mu \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha] \leq 0.5 v f_{cd}$$

Eq. 10.21

In the absence of more detailed information, surfaces may be classified as very smooth, smooth, rough or indented, with the following examples:

**Very smooth** : a surface cast against steel, plastic or specially prepared wooden moulds:  $\mu = 0.5$

**Smooth** : a slipformed or extruded surface, or a free surface left without further treatment after vibration :  $\mu = 0.6$

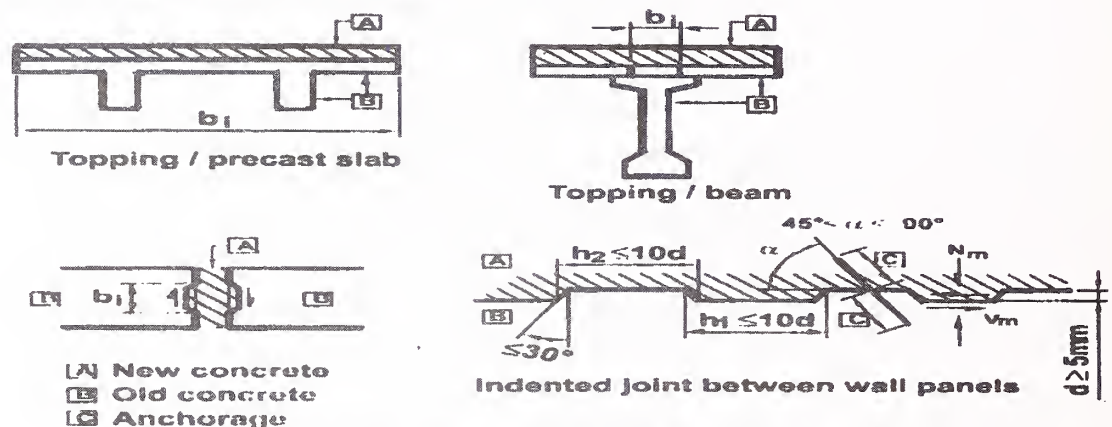


Fig. 10.8 Typical Cases of Interfaces for Shear

**Rough**: a surface with at least 3 mm roughness at about 40 mm spacing, achieved by raking, exposing of aggregate or other methods giving an equivalent behaviour :  $\mu = 0.7$

**Indented**: a surface with indentations complying with Fig. 10.8

$\alpha$  is the angle of the reinforcement to the interface.

$\sigma_n$  is the minimum coexisting normal stress  $< 0.6 f_{cd}$

$\rho = A_s / A_j$  where  $A_s$  is the area of reinforcement crossing the joint  $A_j$  is the interface area of the joint.

Minimum reinforcement across the horizontal interface to resist the interface shear shall be 0.15 percent of interface area.

### 10.3.5 Shear in the flange portion of flanged beams and box sections

Flexural compression and tension is carried mainly by the flanges and the variation of flexure leads to shear at the junction of flanges with the webs. The flanges also will be



subjected to shear flow in their own plane. The design for this shear is based on a truss model in the plane of the flanges with compression struts and tensile reinforcement (Fig.10.9).

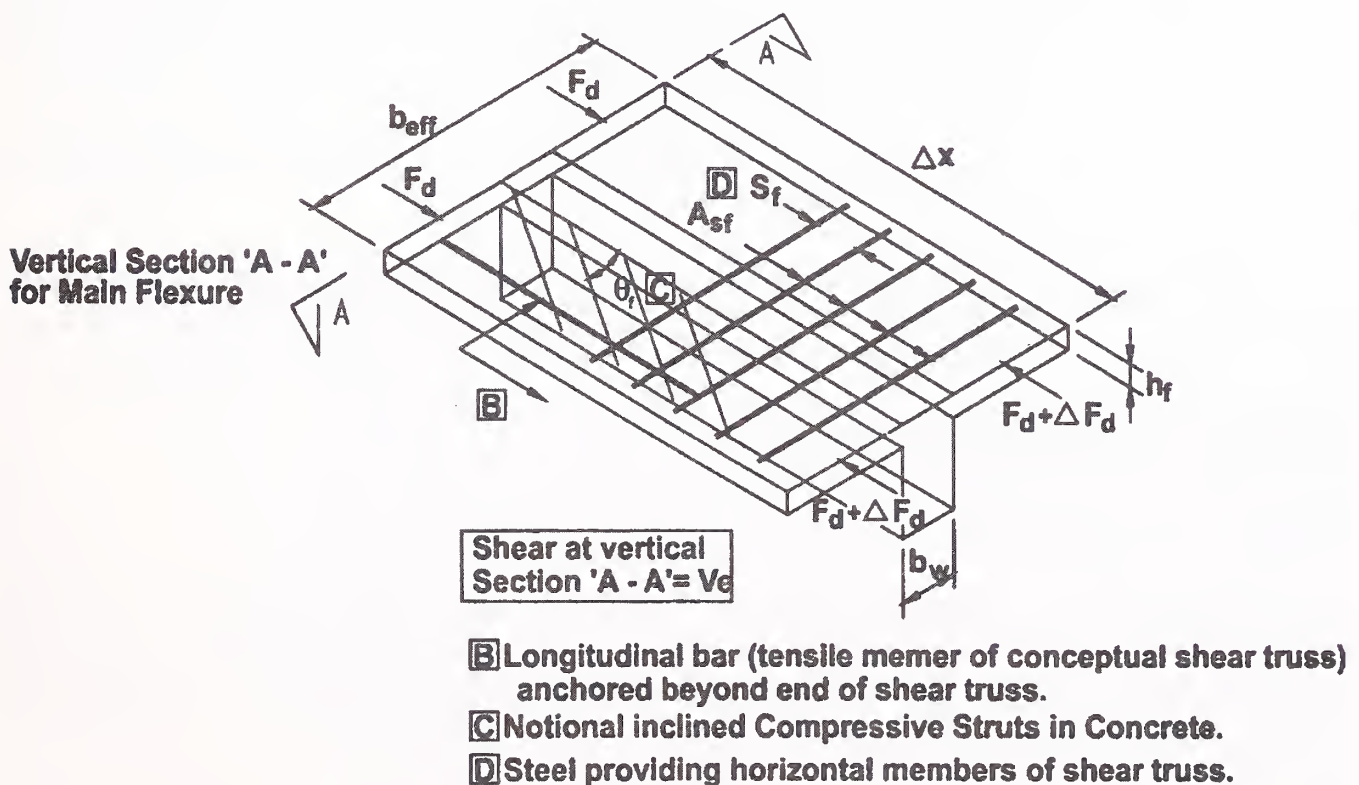
- (1) The longitudinal shear stress  $v_{Edf}$  at the junction between one side of flange and the web is determined by the change of normal (longitudinal) force in a definite distance.

$$v_{Edf} = \left[ \frac{\Delta F_d}{h_f \cdot \Delta x} \right] \quad \text{Eq.10.22}$$

where  $h_f$  is the thickness of flange at the junction of the flange and the web

$\Delta x$  is the length under consideration,

$\Delta F_d$  is the change of the normal force in the flange over the length  $\Delta x$



**Fig.10.9 Shear Design Between Flange & Web of Compression Flange  
(Tension slab has similar truss with direction of  $F$ ,  $F + \Delta F$  reversed)**

- (2) The transverse reinforcement per unit length  $\frac{A_{sf}}{s_f}$  may be determined as follows:

$$\frac{A_{sf}}{s_f} = \frac{V_{Edf} \cdot h_f}{f_{yd} \cot \theta_f} \quad \text{Eq. 10.23}$$

For verification of concrete compression  $h_f$  should be reduced by the depth of concrete compression zone in transverse bending.

To prevent crushing of the compression struts in the flange, the following condition should be satisfied

$$V_{Ed} \leq v f_{cd} \sin \theta_f \cos \theta_f$$

**Note:** The recommended values in the absence of more rigorous calculation are:

$$1.0 \leq \cot \theta_f \leq 2.0 \quad \text{for compression flanges } (45^\circ \geq \theta_f \geq 26.5^\circ)$$

$$1.0 \leq \cot \theta_f \leq 1.25 \quad \text{for tension flanges } (45^\circ \geq \theta_f \geq 38.6^\circ)$$

- (3) In the case of combined shear between the flange and the web, and transverse bending, the area of steel should be the greater of that given by Eq.10.23 or half that given in Eq. 10.23 plus that required for transverse bending.
- (4) If  $V_{Ed}$  is less than or equal to  $0.4 f_{ctd}$ , no extra reinforcement above that for flexure is required.
- (5) Longitudinal tension reinforcement in the flange should be anchored beyond the strut required to transmit the force back to the web at the section where this reinforcement is required (Refer Fig.10.9).

## 10.4 Design for Punching Shear

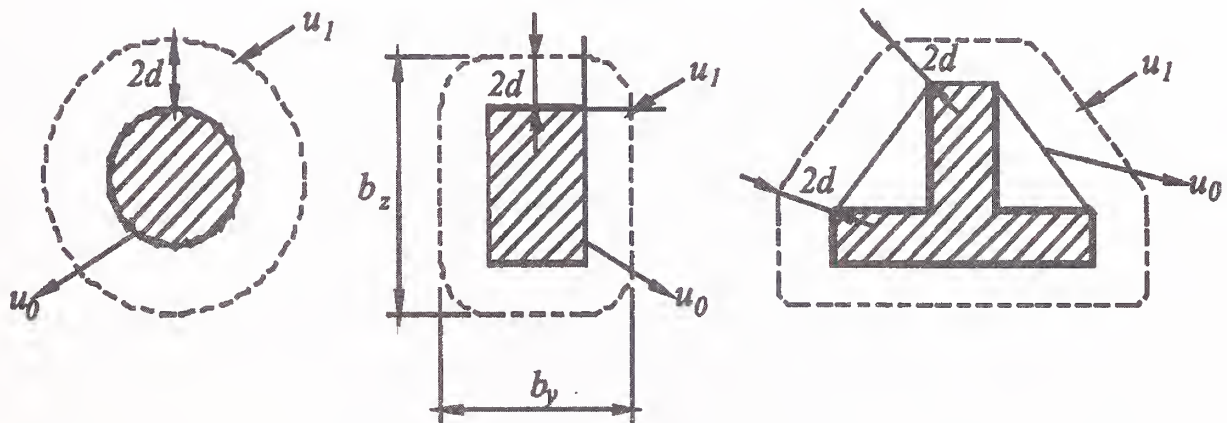
### 10.4.1 General

The rules in this Section are complementary to those given in earlier Sections. This Section covers shear due to punching force (penetrating force) on two dimensional structural elements such as deck slabs, soffit slab, well caps and open foundations. The word 'slab' represents all these in Clause 10.4.

The punching normally happens when a concentrated force (load or reaction) acts over a small area of the two dimensional structural element and causes local shear failure surrounding the concentrated force in the element.

### 10.4.2 Loaded area and basic control perimeter

- (1) Punching shear is evaluated as shear stress at (a) face of the loaded area,  $u_0$  (b) along basic control perimeter  $u_1$  and (c) other perimeters as required in Clause 10.4.2(4).
- (2) The basic control perimeter  $u_1$  shall be taken at distance  $2d$  from the face of the loaded area (Refer Fig. 10.10) where the depth  $d$  of the element is taken as  $d = \frac{(d_x + d_y)}{2}$ ;  $d_x$  and  $d_y$  being effective depths in two orthogonal directions measured at the control perimeter.



**Fig. 10.10 Typical Basic Control Perimeters around Loaded Areas**

- (3) For a loaded area situated near an edge, on the edge or at a corner, the control perimeter should be taken as shown in Fig. 10.11. In such cases special edge reinforcement shall be provided, as per Clause 16.6.1.4.
- (4) Control perimeters at a distance less than  $2d$  should be considered for checking punching shear where the concentrated force of loaded area is partly resisted by a high pressure such as soil pressure on a base (e.g. foundation slab/raft) or by effects of a reaction or load within a distance of  $2d$  of the periphery of the area of application of force such as pile caps. (Refer Clause 10.4.5).



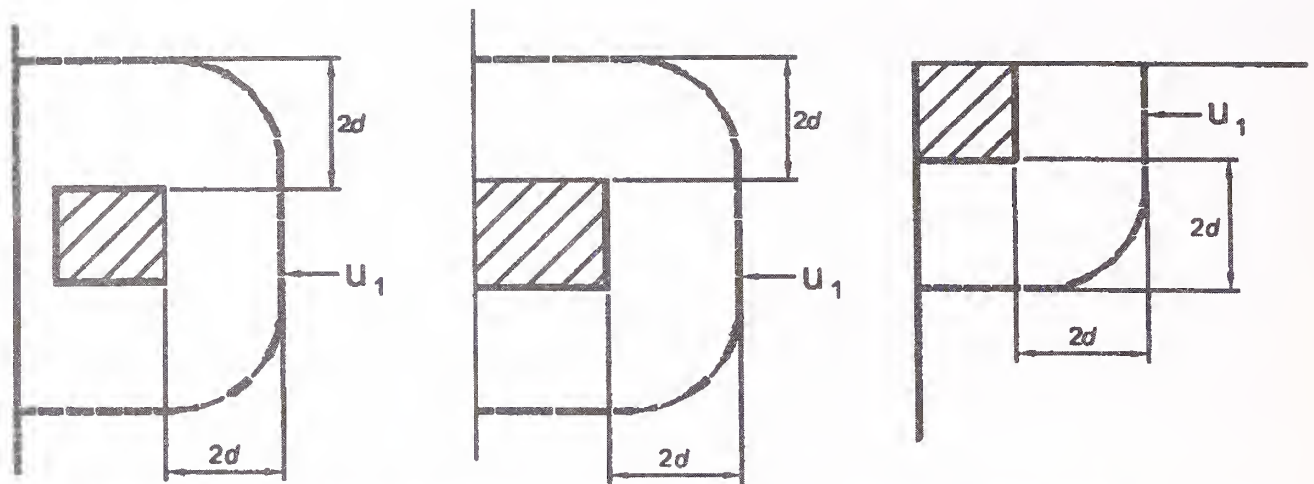


Fig. 10.11 Control Perimeters for Loaded Areas Close to or at Edge or Corner

#### 10.4.3 Punching shear stress

##### (1) General

Punching shear stress  $v_{Ed}$  on any control perimeter under consideration is given by

$$v_{Ed} = \frac{\beta V_{Ed}}{u_i d} \quad \text{Eq. 10.24}$$

where

$u_i$  is the length of the perimeter under consideration.

$\beta$  = Factor accounting for effect of bending moment and axial load acting on loaded area.

$\beta = 1$  for axial load without bending moment, and

$$\beta = 1 + k \left( M_{Ed} / V_{Ed} \right) \left( u_i / W_1 \right) \quad \text{for axial load and bending moment} \quad \text{Eq. 10.25}$$

where

$u_1$  is the length of the basic control perimeter.

$k$  is a coefficient dependent on the ratio between the column dimensions  $C_1$  and  $C_2$ ; its value is a function of the proportions of the unbalanced moment transmitted by uneven shear and by bending as shown in Table of Fig.10.12.

$W_1$  is a property which corresponds to a distribution of shear as illustrated in Fig.10.12 and is a function of the basic control perimeter  $u_i$  and the axis about which the moment is considered.

$$W_1 = \int_0^{u_i} |e| dl$$

$$\text{Eq. 10.26}$$

$dl$  is a length increment of the perimeter.

$e$  is the distance of  $dl$  from the axis about which the moment  $M_{Ed}$  acts.

(2) For rectangular interior column:

$$W_1 = 0.5(c_1)^2 + c_1c_2 + 4c_2d + 16d^2 + 2\pi dc_1 \quad \text{Eq. 10.27}$$

where

$c_1$  is column dimension parallel to the eccentric load.

$c_2$  is a column dimension perpendicular to the eccentricity of the load.

Values of $k$ for Rectangular Loaded Areas				
$c_1 / c_2$	$\leq 0.5$	1.0	2.0	$\geq 3.0$
$k$	0.45	0.6	0.7	0.8

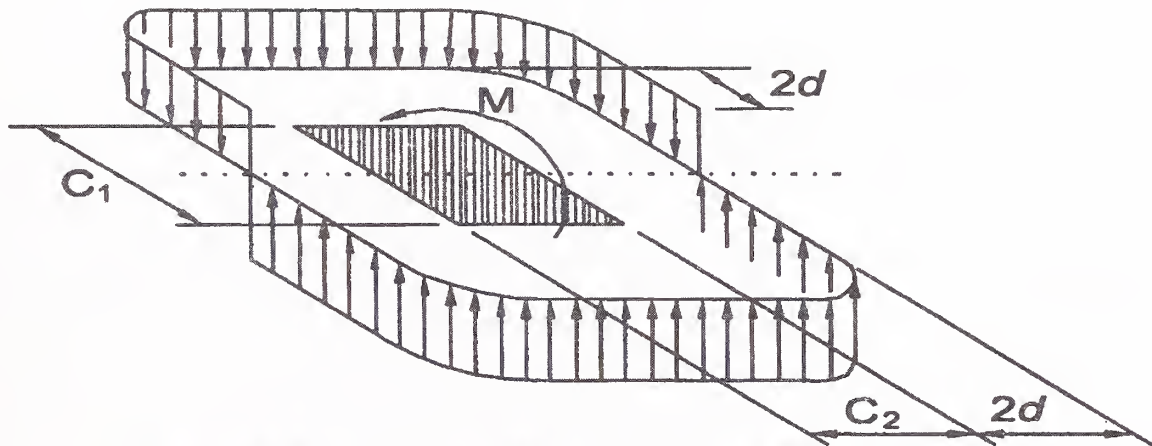


Fig. 10.12 Shear Distribution Due to Moment

For an internal rectangular column where the loading is eccentric to both axes, the approximate value of  $\beta$  is given by:

$$\beta = 1 + 1.8 \sqrt{\left(\frac{e_y}{b_z}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{e_z}{b_y}\right)^2} \quad \text{Eq. 10.28}$$

Where

$e_y$  and  $e_z$  are the eccentricities  $\frac{M_{Ed}}{V_{Ed}}$  along y and z axes respectively (Fig.8.3).

$b_y$  and  $b_z$  is the dimensions of the control perimeter (Fig. 10.10).

**Note:**  $e_y$  results from a moment about the z axes and  $e_z$  from a moment about the y axis.

- (3) For internal circular column:

$$\beta = 1 + 0.6\pi \left( \frac{e}{D + 4d} \right) \quad \text{Eq. 10.29}$$

Where  $D$  is the diameter of the circular column.

- (4) For edge column connections, where the eccentricity perpendicular to the slab edge (resulting from a moment about an axis parallel to the slab edge) is toward the interior and there is no eccentricity parallel to the edge, the punching force may be considered to be uniformly distributed along the reduced control perimeter  $u_2$ , as shown in Fig.10.13(a).

Where there are eccentricities in both orthogonal directions,  $\beta$  may be determined using the following expression:

$$\beta = \frac{u_1}{u_2} + k \left( \frac{u_1}{W_1} \right) e_{par} \quad \text{Eq. 10.30}$$

where

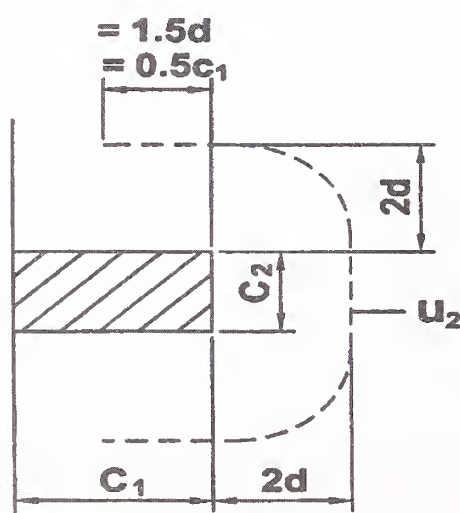
$u_1$  is the basic control perimeter (Fig. 10.11)

$u_2$  is the reduced basic control perimeter, refer Fig.10.13(a).

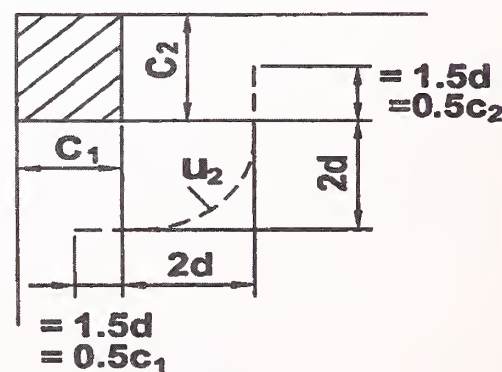
$e_{par}$  is the eccentricity parallel to the slab edge resulting from a moment about an axis perpendicular to the slab edge.

$k$  may be determined with the ratio  $c_1/c_2$  replaced by  $c_1/2c_2$

$W_1$  is a property calculated for the basic control perimeter  $u_1$ .



(a) Edge Column



(b) Corner Column

**Fig. 10.13 Reduced Basic Control Parameters  $u_1$  for Loaded Areas Close to Edge or at Corner**



For a rectangular column as shown in **Fig.10.13(a)**

$$W_1 = \frac{c_2^2}{4} + c_1 c_2 + 4c_1 d + 8d^2 + \pi d c_2 \quad \text{Eq. 10.31}$$

If the eccentricity perpendicular to the slab edge is not toward the interior, Eq.10.25 applies. When calculating  $W_1$  the eccentricity  $e$  should be measured from the centroid of the control perimeter.

- (5) For corner column, where the eccentricity is toward the interior of the slab, it is assumed that the punching force is uniformly distributed along the reduced control perimeter  $u_2$ , as defined in Fig.10.13(b). The  $\beta$ -value may then be considered as:

$$\beta = \frac{u_1}{u_2} \quad \text{Eq. 10.32}$$

If the eccentricity is toward the exterior, Eq.10.25 applies.

The value of  $W_1$  will change depending upon the axis about which the bending moment acts.

#### 10.4.4 Punching shear resistance of slabs without shear reinforcement

The design punching shear resistance shall be assessed at the basic control perimeter, according to Clause 10.4.2. The design punching shear resistance (MPa) of slab may be calculated as follows:

$$v_{Rd,c} = \frac{0.18}{\gamma_c} K (80 \rho_l f_{ck})^{1/3} + (0.1 \sigma_{cp}) \geq v_{\min} + 0.1 \sigma_{cp} \quad \text{Eq. 10.33}$$

where

$f_{ck}$  is in MPa

$$K = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{d}} \leq 2.0 \text{ where } d \text{ is depth in millimeters.} \quad \text{Eq. 10.34}$$

$$\rho_l = \sqrt{\rho_{ly} \cdot \rho_{lz}} \leq 0.02 \quad \text{Eq. 10.35}$$

$\rho_{ly} \cdot \rho_{lz}$  relate to the bonded tension steel in  $y$ - and  $z$ - directions respectively. The values  $\rho_{ly}$  and  $\rho_{lz}$  should be calculated as mean values taking into account a slab width equal to the column width plus  $3d$  each side.

$$\sigma_{cp} = \frac{(\sigma_{cy} + \sigma_{cz})}{2} \quad \text{Eq. 10.36}$$

where

$\sigma_{cy}, \sigma_{cz}$  are the axial concrete stresses in the critical section and directions in MPa, (positive if compression):

$$\sigma_{c,y} = \frac{N_{Ed,y}}{A_{cy}} \text{ and } \sigma_{c,z} = \frac{N_{Ed,z}}{A_{cz}} \quad \text{Eq. 10.37}$$

$N_{Edy}$ ,  $N_{Edz}$  are the longitudinal forces. The force may be from a load or prestressing action.

$A_{cy}$ ,  $A_{cz}$  are the area of concrete resisting axial forces.

$$v_{\min} = 0.031K^{3/2}f_{ck}^{1/2}$$

#### 10.4.5 Punching shear for foundation slabs and pile caps

- (1) The punching resistance of column bases for open foundations and pile caps should be verified at the face of the column and at control perimeters within  $2d$  from the periphery of the column.
- (2) For concentric loading the net applied force is

$$V_{Ed,red} = V_{Ed} - \Delta V_{Ed} \quad \text{Eq. 10.38}$$

where

$V_{Ed}$  is the applied shear force

$\Delta V_{Ed}$  is the net upward force within the control perimeter considered, i.e. upward pressure from soil minus self-weight of base.

$$v_{Ed,red} = \frac{V_{Ed,red}}{ud} \quad \text{Eq. 10.39}$$

$$v_{Rd} = 0.12K(80\rho_l f_{ck})^{1/3} \frac{2d}{a} \geq v_{\min} \frac{2d}{a} \quad \text{Eq. 10.40}$$

where

$v_{Rd}$  is punching shear resistance at control perimeter at distance  $a$

$a$  is the distance from the periphery of the column to the control perimeter considered.

$$K = 1 + \sqrt{\frac{200}{d}} \leq 2.0 \quad d \text{ in mm as defined in Eq. 10.34.}$$

$$v_{\min} = 0.031k^{3/2}f_{ck}^{1/2} \quad \text{Eq. 10.41}$$

- (3) For eccentric loading

$$v_{Ed} = \frac{V_{Ed,red}}{ud} \left[ 1 + k \frac{M_{Ed}u}{V_{Ed,red}W} \right] \quad \text{Eq. 10.42}$$

Where  $k$  is defined in Eq. 10.25 or Eq. 10.30 as appropriate and  $W$  is similar to  $W$ , but for perimeter  $u$ .

### 10.4.6 Design of section for punching shear

- (1) In bridges, punching should be avoided by providing adequate concrete thickness with sufficient reinforcement for resisting bending and shear, which should also be capable of resisting the worst local punching shear stresses.
- (2) The design procedure for punching shear is based on checks at the face of the column and at the basic control perimeter  $u_1$ . The following design shear stresses (MPa) along the control sections, are defined:

$v_{Rd.c}$  is the design value of the punching shear resistance of a slab without punching shear reinforcement along the control section considered.

$v_{Rd.max}$  is the design value of the maximum punching shear resistance along the control section considered.

where

$$v_{Rd.max} = \frac{1}{2} \cdot v \cdot f_{cd} \quad \text{Eq.10.43}$$

Where  $v$  is given in Eq. 10.6.

- (3) The following checks should be carried out:
  - (a) At the column perimeter, or the perimeter of the loaded area, the maximum punching shear stress should not be exceeded:

$$v_{Ed} < v_{Rd.max} \quad \text{Eq.10.44}$$

Where  $v_{Ed}$  is given by Eq.10.24 with  $u_i = u_o$

Where  $u_o$  :

- for an inner column = length of column, periphery in mm.
- for edge column =  $C_2 + 3d \leq C_2 + 2C_1$  (mm)
- for corner column =  $3d \leq C_1 + C_2$  (mm)

- (b) Punching shear reinforcement is not necessary if at control section.

$$v_{Ed} < v_{Rd.c} \quad \text{Eq.10.45}$$

## 10.5 Torsion

### 10.5.1 General

- (1) Torsional resistance in concrete elements, in which its longitudinal fibres are free to deform in longitudinal direction, is categorized into equilibrium torsion and compatibility torsion. Where the longitudinal

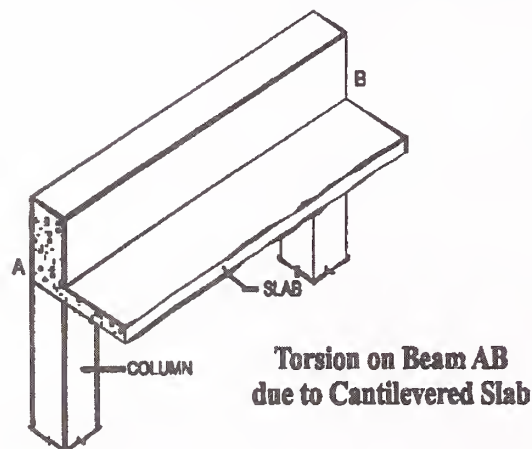


fibres are restrained by external element, warping torsion results. For example, when longitudinal restraint to the deformation of external walls of hollow sections or surfaces of solid sections exists, warping torsion results.

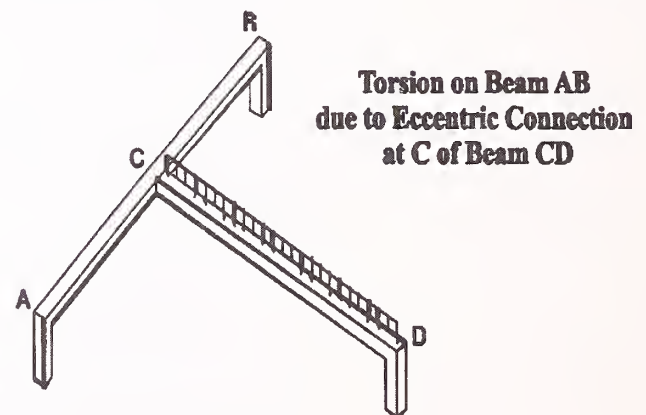
- (2) Equilibrium torsion is that which is essential to keep the element in equilibrium. Such elements shall be designed to cater for full torsional resistance in the ultimate limit state [Fig. 10.14(a)].
- (3) If torsional resistance is not essential for stability or static equilibrium of the element, but arises out of compatibility of displacement/ rotations of connected element, it is termed as compatibility torsion. It will not be necessary to consider torsion at ultimate limit state [Fig. 10.14(b)]

Such elements will be subjected to torsional deformations in service leading to cracking and deflection.

To limit the crack width and deformations in the limit state of serviceability, checks as given in Clause 12.3.5 shall be performed. Suitable reinforcement as per detailing Sections shall be provided.



**Fig. 10.14(a) Example of Equilibrium Torsion**



**Fig. 10.14(b) Examples of Compatibility Torsion**

- (4) The torsional resistance of a closed section may be calculated on the basis of a thin-walled closed section, in which equilibrium is satisfied by a closed shear flow. Solid sections may be modelled by equivalent thin-walled sections.

Complex shapes, such as T-sections, may be divided into a series of sub-sections, each of which is modelled as equivalent thin walled hollow section. The total torsional resistance is taken as sum of the individual sub-sections.

- (5) The distribution of the acting torsional moments over the sub-sections should be in proportion to their uncracked torsional stiffnesses. For hollow sections such as box sections, the equivalent wall thickness should not exceed the actual wall thickness.
- (6) Each sub-section may be designed separately. For conversion of solid sub-section to equivalent hollow section procedure given in Fig.10.15 defining the effective thickness of wall  $t_{ef,i}$  may be followed.
- (7) In the analysis, torsional stiffness may be calculated on the following basis:
  - (a) In case of equilibrium torsion, the stiffness should be based on uncracked sectional resistance, i.e. gross-section.
  - (b) In case of compatibility torsion, the torsional stiffness may be calculated on the basis of cracked section.

Torsional stiffness of cracked section may be assumed as 25 percent of that of the uncracked section (Refer Clause 7.4).

## 10.5.2 Design procedures

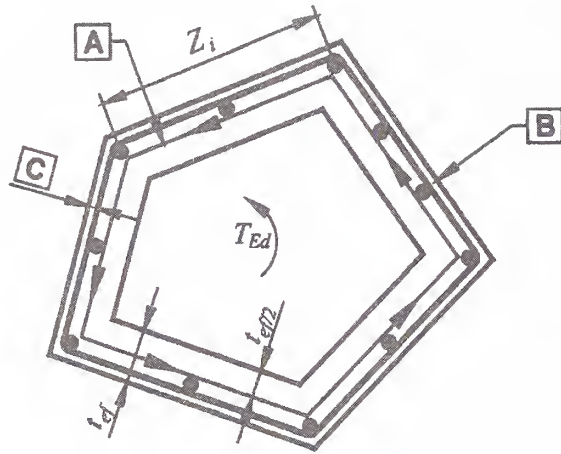
### 10.5.2.1 Hollow section and equivalent closed thin wall section

- (1) The shear stress in a wall of a section subject to a pure torsional moment may be calculated from:

$$\tau_{t,i} = \frac{T_{Ed}}{2A_k t_{ef,i}} \quad \text{Eq. 10.46}$$

The design torsional shear force  $V_{Ed,i}$  in a wall 'i' due to torsion is given by  $V_{Ed,i} = \tau_{t,i} t_{ef,i} z_i$  where  $T_{Ed}$  is the applied design torsion (see Fig. 10.15).

- (2) For resisting torsion, reinforcement has to be provided both in longitudinal and transverse direction.



[A] - CENTRE LINE

[B] - OUTER EDGE OF EFFECTIVE CROSS SECTION

[C] - COVER

$A_k$  is the area enclosed by the centrelines of the connecting walls, including inner hollow areas.

$\tau_{t,i}$  is the torsional shear stress in wall  $i$

$t_{ef,i}$  is the effective wall thickness. It may be taken as  $A / u$ , but should not be taken as less than twice the distance between edge and centre of the longitudinal reinforcement. For hollow sections the real thickness is an upper limit.

$A$  is the total area of the cross-section within the outer perimeter, including inner hollow areas.

$u$  is the outer perimeter of the cross-section

$z_i$  is the side length of wall  $i$  defined by the distance between the inter-section points with the adjacent walls.

**Fig. 10.15 Notations and Definitions used in Section 10.5.2.1**

- (3) The shear due to torsion and that due to flexure in both hollow and solid members may be superimposed, where the model of converting solid section to an equivalent closed section is used. The design of reinforcement is based on truss model. The strut inclination as taken for truss analogy for shear shall be the same for the elements considered to resist torsion. The design reinforcement for the combined shear and torsion, may be considered as per Clause 10.3.3.2 and 10.3.3.3.

- (4) The maximum resistance of a member subjected to torsion and shear is limited by the capacity of the concrete struts. In order not to exceed this resistance the following condition should be satisfied:

$$T_{Ed} / T_{Rd,max} + V_{Ed} / V_{Rd,max} \leq 1.0 \quad \text{Eq. 10.47}$$

where

$T_{Ed}$  is the design torsional moment

$V_{Ed}$  is the design transverse force

$T_{Rd,max}$  is the design torsional resistance moment according to

$$T_{Rd,max} = 2\nu\alpha_{cw}f_{cd}A_k t_{ef,i} \sin \theta \cos \theta \quad \text{Eq. 10.48}$$

where  $\nu$  a strength reduction factor for concrete cracked in shear as is referred in Eq. 10.6 and  $\alpha_{cw}$  is as given in Notations.



$V_{Rd,max}$  is the maximum design shear resistance according to Clause 10.3.3.2 and 10.3.3.3. In solid cross-sections the full width of the web may be used to determine  $V_{Rd,max}$ .

- (5) The required cross-sectional area of the longitudinal reinforcement for resisting torsion ( $\Sigma A_{sl}$ ) may be calculated from the equation mentioned below:

$$\frac{\Sigma A_{sl} f_{yd}}{u_k} = \frac{T_{Ed}}{2A_k} \cot \theta \quad \text{Eq. 10.49}$$

where

$u_k$  is the perimeter of the area  $A_k$

$f_{yd}$  is the design yield stress of the longitudinal reinforcement  $A_{sl}$

$\theta$  is the angle of compression struts

In compressive chords, the longitudinal reinforcement may be reduced in proportion to the available compressive force. In tensile chords the longitudinal reinforcement for torsion should be added to the other reinforcement. The longitudinal reinforcement should generally be distributed over the length,  $z_l$  (Fig.10.16).

#### 10.5.2.2 *Warping torsion*

- (1) For closed thin-walled sections and solid sections, warping torsion may normally be ignored unless the longitudinal elongation of the walls/surfaces of the section is restrained by other members.
- (2) In open thin walled members it is necessary to consider warping torsion. For very slender cross-sections the calculation should be carried out on the basis of a beam grid model and for other cases on the basis of a truss model. In all cases the design should be carried out according to the design rules for bending and longitudinal normal force, and for shear.

## SECTION 11 ULTIMATE LIMIT STATE OF INDUCED DEFORMATION

### 11.1

#### General

- (1) This Section deals with structures and structural members whose load deformation behaviour and ultimate capacity are significantly affected by second order effects. Second order effects are defined as the additional effects of actions caused by structural deformations. Second order effects can be global, involving structure as a whole, and/or local, involving some of its members, such as columns, walls, compression flanges of beams etc.
- (2) Classical buckling defined as sudden failure due to instability of perfectly axially loaded members without horizontal load does not usually occur in practical reinforced/prestressed concrete members. However, long slender members at ultimate load exhibit large and disproportionate increase of deflections due to combined effect of geometric non-linearity ( $P-\Delta$  effect) and non-linear structural response due to material non-linearity, progressive cracking and local plasticity. This reduces the ultimate load carrying capacity as compared to the short members of identical cross-section and steel ratio.

Therefore, long members should be designed to have higher moment resisting capacity as compared to short members of identical sectional details.

- (3) Second order linear elastic method of analysis shall be used for calculating second order effects. Equilibrium and resistance shall be verified in the deformed state for the most unfavourable combination of actions at ultimate limit state, taking into account uncertainties in geometry and position of axial loads as additional first order effects.
- (4) The distinction between treatment of long column and short column for purpose of this Section 11 is based on 10 percent criteria given in (5) below.

Structural behaviour shall be considered in all directions in which significant second order effects can occur. Biaxial bending shall be taken into account when necessary.

- (5) Second order effects may be ignored if they are less than 10 percent of the corresponding first order effects, calculated on the basis of (3) above.

- (6) In place of method described in (4) & (5) above, simplified criteria for identifying short and long members are given for isolated members of uniform cross-section in Clause 11.2.
- (7) For piers with variable sections and those acting as long composite system together with piles which are not laterally supported below pile caps, (as in case of piles in river portion between the pile cap and scour depth), full height of the substructure shall be analysed using method described in (3). For piles fully embedded in soil, the piers alone can be separately analysed for slenderness effects.

## 11.2 Simplified Slenderness Criteria

### 11.2.1 Slenderness criteria for isolated members (columns) of uniform cross-section

#### (1) Slenderness Ratio

The slenderness ratio  $\lambda$  is defined as  $l_e / i$ , where  $i$  is the radius of gyration of the uncracked concrete section. The effective length  $l_e$  is the length of a pin-ended column with constant axial force having the same cross-section and same buckling load as the actual member.

- (2) Second order effects may be ignored if the slenderness ratio  $\lambda$  based on  $l_e$  as per Clause 11.2.2 is less than a certain value  $\lambda_{lim}$  as per Eq.11.1.

$$\lambda_{lim} = 20.A.B.C / \sqrt{n} \quad \text{Eq.11.1}$$

where

$$A = 1 / (1 + 0.2\phi_{ef})$$

$\phi_{ef}$  is effective creep ratio.

$$\phi_{ef} = \phi(\infty, t_o) \cdot \frac{M_{oEqp}}{M_{oEd}}$$

$M_{oEqp}$  = First order B.M. in quasi-permanent load combination in SLS.

$M_{oEd}$  = First order B.M. in design load combination in U.L.S.

$$B = \sqrt{1 + 2\omega}$$

$$C = 1.7 - r_m$$



$\omega = A_s f_{yd} / (A_c f_{cd})$  mechanical reinforcement ratio.

$A_s$  = is the total area of longitudinal reinforcement.

$n = N_{Ed} / (A_c f_{cd})$  relative normal force

$r_m = M_{01} / M_{02}$  moment ratio

$M_{01}, M_{02}$  are the first order end moments at two ends of member as calculated from the analysis of structure, where  $|M_{02}| \geq |M_{01}|$ .

If the end moments  $M_{01}$  &  $M_{02}$  give tension on the same side,  $r_m$  should be taken positive (i.e.  $C \leq 1.7$ ), otherwise negative (i.e.  $C > 1.7$ ).

In the following cases,  $r_m$  should be taken as 1.0 (i.e.  $C = 0.7$ ):

- For unbraced members in general.
- For braced members in which the first order moments arise predominantly from imperfections or transverse loading.

**Note:** For initial dimensioning of member, simplified values of  $A = 0.7$ ,  $B = 1.1$ ,  $C = 0.7$  may be used.

- (3) In case of biaxial bending, the slenderness criterion may be checked separately for each direction. Depending on the outcome of this check, second order effects (a) may be ignored in both directions, (b) should be taken into account in one direction, or (c) should be taken into account in both directions.

### 11.2.2 Effective length (height) and slenderness ratio of columns and piers with bearings

- (1) For compression members in regular frames, the effective length  $l_e$  is determined in the following way:

Braced Members:

$$l_e = 0.5l_n \sqrt{\left(1 + \frac{k_1}{0.45 + k_1}\right) \times \left(1 + \frac{k_2}{0.45 + k_2}\right)} \quad \text{Eq.11.2}$$

Unbraced members:

$$l_e = l_n \times \max \text{ of } \left\{ \sqrt{\left(1 + 10 \cdot \frac{k_1 \cdot k_2}{k_1 + k_2}\right)} ; \left(1 + \frac{k_1}{1 + k_1}\right) \times \left(1 + \frac{k_2}{1 + k_2}\right) \right\} \quad \text{Eq.11.3}$$

where

$k_1, k_2$  are the relative flexibilities of rotational restraints at ends 1 and 2 respectively.

$$k = \left( \frac{\theta}{M} \right) \left( \frac{EI}{l_o} \right)$$

$\theta / M$  = is the rotation of restraining members at a joint for unit bending moment ( $M=1$  unit)

$EI$  = is the bending stiffness of compression member

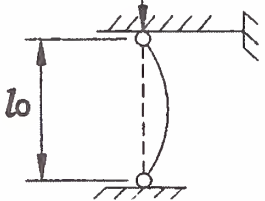
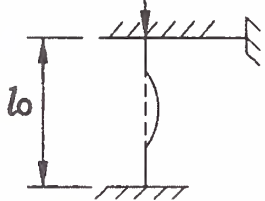
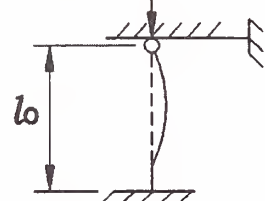
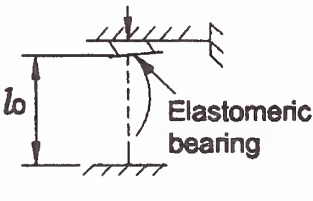
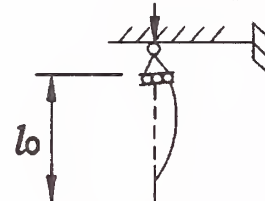
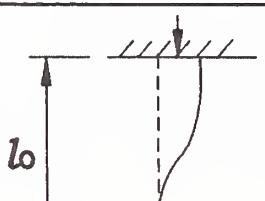
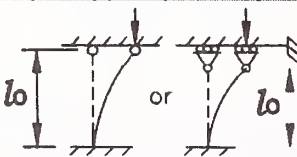
$l_o$  = is the clear height of compression member between end restraints.

#### Notes:

- (i) In the definition of effective lengths, the stiffness of restraining members should include the effect of cracking, unless they can be shown to be uncracked in ULS.
  - (ii)  $k = 0$  is the theoretical limit for rigid rotational restraint, and  $k = \infty$  represents the limit for no restraint at all. Since fully rigid restraint is rare in practise, a minimum value of 0.1 is recommended for  $k_1$  and  $k_2$ , if they are considered as fully rigid.
- (2) Alternatively, for piers / columns the effective length (height)  $l_e$  in a given plane of buckling may be obtained from Table-11.1 where  $l_o$  is the clear height between end restraints. The values are based on the following assumptions:
- (a) rotational restraint is at least  $\frac{4EI}{l_o}$  for cases 2 to 6 and  $\frac{8EI}{l_o}$  for case 7, where  $EI$  is the flexural rigidity of the column cross-section.
  - (b) lateral and flexural rigidities of elastomeric bearings are zero.

Where more accurate evaluation of the effective length is required or where end restraint values are less than those specified in (a), the effective length should be derived from first principles.

Table 11.1 Effective Length,  $l_e$  for Columns/Piers

Case	Idealised column and buckling mode	Restraints in Plane of Buckling			Effective Length, $l_e$
		Location	Position	Rotation	
1.		Top	Full	None	$1.0 l_0$
		Bottom	Full	None	
2.		Top	Full	Full *	$0.70 l_0$
		Bottom	Full	Full	
3.		Top	Full	None	$0.85 l_0$
		Bottom	Full	Full *	
4.		Top	None*	None*	$1.3 l_0$
		Bottom	Full	Full*	
5.		Top	None	None	$1.4 l_0$
		Bottom	Full	Full*	
6.		Top	None	Full*	$1.5 l_0$
		Bottom	Full	Full*	
7.		Top	None	None	$2.3 l_0$
		Bottom	Full	Full*	

Note : Positional restraints are given for directions at right angles to the member.



## 11.3 Non-linear Analysis of Structure and Elements

### 11.3.1 General

- (1) In case of members having varying sections and different types of loading such as permanent and quasi-permanent loads leading to creep effects and short term loads such as live loads, generalised methods of non-linear analysis taking into account the geometric non-linearity of structure need to be used.
- (2) Alternatively, a method based on nominal curvature (Clause 11.3.2) is suitable for isolated members.
- (3) Stress-strain relationships for concrete given in Annexure (A2.7) and for steel given in Section 6 (Fig.6.2 and 6.4) may be used. With stress-strain diagrams based on design values, a design value of the ultimate load is obtained directly from the analysis. In equation Eq. A2-26 and in the calculation of  $k$ -value,  $f_{cm}$  is then substituted by the design compressive strength  $f_{cd}$  and  $E_{cm}$  is substituted by:

$$E_{cd} = \frac{E_{cm}}{\gamma_{cE}}, \text{ where } \gamma_{cE} \text{ is taken as 1.2}$$

- (4) In the absence of more refined models, creep may be taken into account by modifying all strain values in the concrete stress-strain diagram using effective E value as per Clause 6.4.2.5.4(iii).

### 11.3.2 Method based on nominal curvature

#### 11.3.2.1 General

This method is primarily suitable for isolated members with constant normal force and a defined effective length  $l_e$ . The method gives a nominal second order moment based on a deflection, which in turn is based on the effective length and an estimated maximum curvature.

#### 11.3.2.2 Design bending moments

- (1) The design moment is:

$$M_{Ed} = M_{oEd} + M_2 \quad \text{Eq.11.4}$$

where

$M_{oEd}$  is the first order moment, including the effect of imperfections,  $M_2$  is the nominal second order moment, defined in (3)

The maximum value of  $M_{Ed}$  is given by the distributions of  $M_{oEd}$  and  $M_2$ ; the latter may be taken as parabolic or sinusoidal over the effective length.

For statically indeterminate members,  $M_{oEd}$  is determined for the actual boundary conditions, whereas  $M_2$  will depend on boundary conditions via the effective length.

- (2) Differing first order end moments  $M_{o1}$  and  $M_{o2}$  may be replaced by an equivalent first order end moment  $M_{oe}$ :

$$M_{oe} = 0.6 M_{o2} + 0.4 M_{o1} \geq 0.4 M_{o2} \quad \text{Eq. 11.5}$$

$M_{o1}$  and  $M_{o2}$  should have the same sign if they give tension on the same side, otherwise opposite signs. Furthermore,  $|M_{o2}| \geq |M_{o1}|$ .

**Note:** This clause (2) does not apply to cantilever columns or to bridge piers with bearings on top.

- (3) The nominal second order moment  $M_2$  in Eq. 11.4 is

$$M_2 = N_{Ed} \cdot e_2 \quad \text{Eq. 11.6}$$

where

$N_{Ed}$  is the design value of axial force

$$e_2 \text{ is the deflection} = \left( \frac{1}{r} \right) \cdot \frac{l_e^2}{c}$$

$1/r$  is the curvature, see Clause 11.3.2.3

$l_e$  is the effective length, see Clause 11.2.2

$c$  is a factor depending on the curvature distribution.

- (4) For constant cross-section,  $c=10$  ( $\pi^2$ ) is normally used. If the first order moment is constant, a lower value should be considered (8 is a lower limit, corresponding to constant total moment).

**Note:** The value  $\pi^2$  corresponds to a sinusoidal curvature distribution. The value for constant curvature is 8. Note that  $c$  depends on the distribution of the total curvature.

### 11.3.2.3 Curvature

- (1) For members with constant symmetrical cross-sections (including reinforcement), the following may be used:

$$\frac{1}{r} = K_r \cdot K_\varphi \cdot \frac{1}{r_0} \quad \text{Eq. 11.7}$$

where

$K_r$  is a correction factor depending on axial load,

$K_\phi$  is a factor for taking account of creep.

$$\frac{1}{r_0} = \varepsilon_{yd} / (0.45 d)$$

$$\varepsilon_{yd} = f_{yd} / E_s$$

$d$  = is the effective depth given in (2)

- (2) If all reinforcement is not concentrated on opposite sides, but part of it is distributed parallel to the plane of bending,  $d$  is defined as:

$$d = \left( \frac{h}{2} \right) + i_s \quad \text{Eq. 11.8}$$

where  $i_s$  is the radius of gyration of the total reinforcement area.

- (3)  $K_r$  in Expression (11.7) should be taken as:

$$K_r = (n_u - n) / (n_u - n_{bal}) \leq 1 \quad \text{Eq. 11.9}$$

where

$$n = \frac{N_{Ed}}{A_c f_{cd}} \text{ relative axial force.}$$

$N_{Ed}$  = is the design value of axial force.

$$n_u = 1 + \omega$$

$n_{bal}$  is the value of  $n$  at maximum moment resistance; the value 0.4 may be used

$$\omega = \frac{A_s f_{yd}}{A_c f_{cd}}$$

$A_s$  = is the total area of reinforcement.

$A_c$  = is the area of concrete cross-section

- (4) The effect of creep should be taken into account by the following factor:

$$K_\phi = 1 + \beta \phi_{ef} \geq 1 \quad \text{Eq.11.10}$$

where

$\phi_{ef}$  is the effective creep ratio (defined in 11.2.1)

$$\beta = 0.35 + \frac{f_{ck}}{200} - \frac{\lambda}{150} \quad \text{Eq.11.11}$$

where

$\lambda$  = is the slenderness ratio.



### 11.3.3 Biaxial bending

- (1) The general method described in Clause 11.3.1 may also be used for biaxial bending. Special care should be taken to identify the section along the member with the critical combination of moments.
- (2) For details of the use of simplified methods for biaxial moment taking second order deformation into account, Clause 8.3.2 may be referred.

## 11.4 Lateral Instability of Slender Beam

### 11.4.1 General

- (1) Lateral instability of slender beams shall be taken into account where necessary viz. for precast beams during transport and erection and for beams without sufficient lateral bracing in the construction stage and in the completed structure. Geometric imperfections shall also be taken into account.
- (2) A lateral deflection of  $l / 300$  should be assumed as a geometric imperfection in the verification of beams in unbraced conditions, with  $l$  = total length of beam. In finished structures, bracing from connected members may be taken into account
- (3) Second order effects in connection with lateral instability may be ignored if the following conditions are fulfilled:

-In persistent situations:  $\frac{I_{0l}}{b} \leq \frac{50}{(h/b)^{1/3}}$  and  $h/b \leq 2.5$  **Eq. 11.12**

- In transient situations:  $\frac{I_{0l}}{b} \leq \frac{70}{(h/b)^{1/3}}$  and  $h/b \leq 3.5$  **Eq. 11.13**

where

$I_{0l}$  is the distance between torsional restraints

$h$  is the total depth of beam in central part of  $I_{0l}$

$b$  is the effective width of compression flange

- (4) Torsion associated with lateral instability should be taken into account in the design of supporting structures.

### 11.4.2 Slenderness limits for beams

To ensure lateral stability, a simply supported or continuous beam should be so proportioned

that the clear distance between lateral restraints does not exceed  $60 b_e$  or ,  $250 \frac{b^2}{h}$  whichever is the lesser,

where

$h$  is the effective depth to tension reinforcement.

$b$  is the breadth of the compression face of the beam midway between restraints.

For cantilevers with lateral restraint provided only at the support, the clear distance from the free end of the cantilever to face of the support should not exceed  $25b$  or  $\frac{100 b^2}{h}$ , whichever is the lesser.

---

## SECTION 12 SERVICEABILITY LIMIT STATE

### 12.1 General

- (1) In order to verify that the structure and structural elements perform adequately during service life. The serviceability limit states shall have to be satisfied. The serviceability limit states are:-

- Stress level
- Crack width
- Deflection

Other limit states such as vibration may be of importance in a particular structure, but are not covered in this Section.

- (2) In calculation of stresses and deflection, the cross-section shall be assumed as uncracked provided tensile stress in concrete does not exceed  $f_{ctm}$  or  $f_{ctm}/\gamma$  and  $f_{ctm}$ . Calculation of minimum tension reinforcement is also based on the same value of  $f_{ctm}$  or  $f_{ctm}/\gamma$ . Where tensile stresses exceed  $f_{ctm}$  or  $f_{ctm}/\gamma$ , cross-section shall be considered as cracked.

### 12.2 Stress Limitation

#### 12.2.1 Allowable compressive stress in concrete

- (1) Maximum compressive stress in concrete under rare combinations of loads shall be limited to  $0.48 f_{ck}$ , in order to keep the longitudinal cracks, micro cracks or creep within acceptable limits.
- (2) Where compressive stress in concrete under quasi-permanent loads is within  $0.36 f_{ck}$ , linear creep may be assumed. In case compressive stress exceeds  $0.36 f_{ck}$ , non-linear creep shall be considered, for which Annexure A-2 may be referred.

#### 12.2.2 Allowable tensile stress in steel

In order to avoid inelastic strain and undesirable cracking/deformation of structure, maximum tensile stress (taking due account of long term creep of concrete) in the reinforcement shall be limited to  $0.8 f_{yk}$  under rare combination of loads. For prestressing steel, in order to avoid inelastic strain, limits prescribed in Clause 7.9.2 shall be adhered to.



## **12.3 Limit State of Cracking**

### **12.3.1 General**

Cracking takes place in tensile regions of concrete structures due to load effects, such as bending, shear, torsion and direct tension. Cracks may also be caused due to internal deformations such as shrinkage and temperature effects. The intent of the following provisions is to ensure, with acceptable probability, that the cracks will not impair the proper functioning or durability of the structure or cause its appearance to be unacceptable. Cracks due to other effects such as expansive chemical reactions need to be controlled by measures given under Section 14

### **12.3.2 Limiting crack width**

- (1) Due to the random nature of the cracking phenomenon, actual crack width cannot be predicted. However, a reasonable estimation of crack width can be made using the mathematical model given in Clause 12.3.4. The crack width, so calculated, shall be restricted to the values given in Table 12.1 for various conditions of exposure. The decompression limit check requires that no tensile stresses occur within 100mm of the surface of duct for bonded prestressing tendons.
- (2) For the crack width checks under combinations which include temperature distribution, the resulting member forces should be calculated using gross section concrete properties. The effect of self-equilibrating thermal stresses within a section may be ignored.
- (3) For members with only unbonded tendons, requirements for reinforced concrete elements apply. For members with a combination of bonded and unbonded tendons, requirements for prestressed concrete members with bonded tendons apply.
- (4) Crack width may be calculated according to Clause 12.3.4. Alternatively, limiting maximum bar size or spacing as per Clause 12.3.6 may be deemed to satisfy crack control criteria for reinforced concrete members.

**Table 12.1 Recommended Values of  $w_{max}$** 

<b>Condition of Exposure<sup>(1)</sup> As per Clause 14.3.1</b>	<b>Reinforced members and prestressed members with un-bonded tendons</b>	<b>Prestressed members with bonded tendons</b>
	<b>Quasi-permanent load combination<sup>(2)</sup> (mm)</b>	<b>Frequent load combination (mm)</b>
Moderate	0.3 <sup>(2)</sup>	0.2
Severe	0.3	0.2 <sup>(3)</sup>
Very Severe and Extreme	0.2	0.2 <sup>(4)</sup> and decompression
<p>(1) The condition of exposure considered applies to the most severe exposure the surface will be subjected to in service.</p> <p>(2) For moderate exposure class, crack width has no influence on durability and this limit is set to guarantee acceptable appearance.</p> <p>(3) For these conditions of exposure, in addition, decompression should be checked under the quasi-permanent combination of loads that include DL+SIDL+Prestress including secondary effect + settlement + temperature effects.</p> <p>(4) 0.2 applies to the parts of the member that do not have to be checked for decompression.</p>		

### 12.3.3 Minimum reinforcement for crack control

- (1) A minimum amount of untensioned reinforcement is required to control cracking in areas where tension due to external loadings or external restraints is expected. The amount of such reinforcement may be estimated from equilibrium between the tensile force in concrete just before cracking and tensile force in steel at yielding.
- (2) Minimum area of reinforcement may be calculated as follows. In profiled cross sections like T-beams and box girders, minimum reinforcement should be determined for the individual parts of the section (webs, flanges).

$$A_{s.min} \sigma_s = k_c k_{f_{ct,eff}} A_{ct}$$

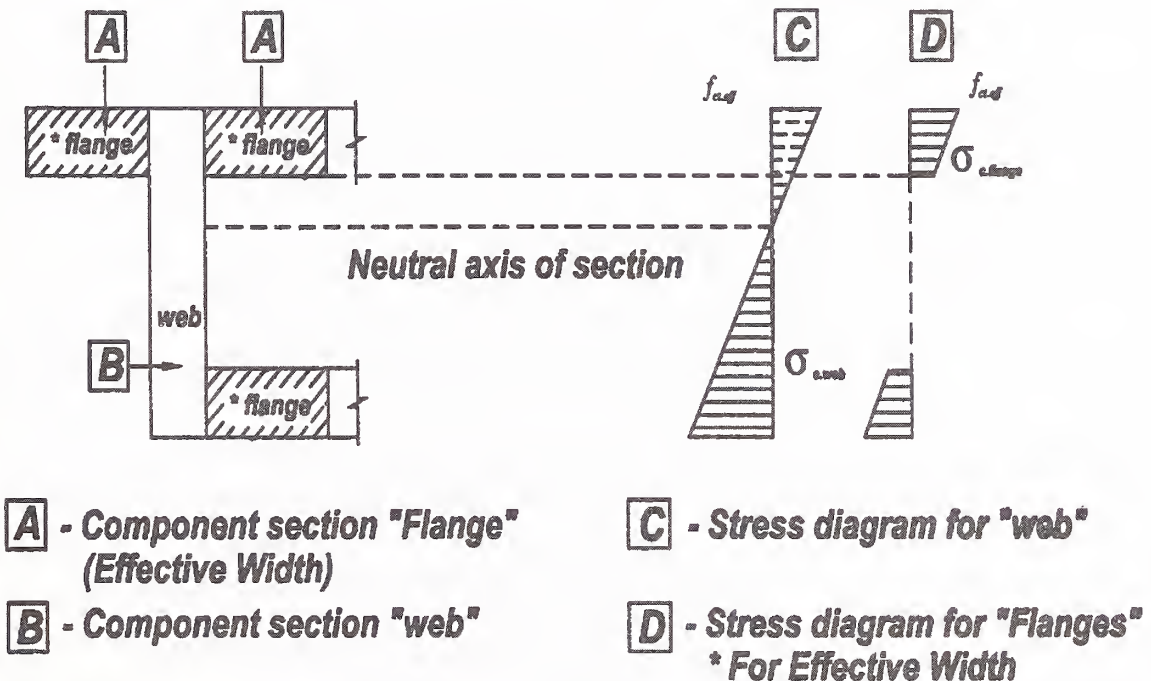
Eq 12.1

where

$A_{s,min}$  is the minimum area of reinforcing steel within the tensile zone

$A_{ct}$  is the area of concrete within tensile zone. The tensile zone is that part of the section which is calculated to be in tension just before formation of the first crack.

In the flanged cross sections such as T-beams and box girders the division into parts should be as indicated in Fig. 12.1.



### Stress distribution due to bending in web & flange

**Fig.12.1 Typical Division of a Flanged Cross-Section for Analysis of Cracking**

$\sigma_s$  is the absolute value of the maximum stress permitted in the reinforcement immediately after formation of the crack. This may be taken as the yield strength of the reinforcement,  $f_{yk}$ . A lower value may, however, be needed to satisfy the crack width limits according to the maximum bar size or the maximum bar spacing [refer Clause 12.3.6 (2)].

$f_{ct,eff}$  is the mean value of the tensile strength of the concrete effective at the time when the cracks may first be expected to occur  $f_{ct,eff} = f_{ctm}$  or lower,  $f_{ctm}(t)$ , if the minimum area of reinforcement is to be calculated for control of cracking earlier than 28 days.



In calculating the minimum reinforcement to cater for shrinkage  $f_{ct,eff}$  should be taken as the greater of 2.9 MPa or  $f_{ctm}(t)$ .

- $k$  is the coefficient which allows for the effect of non-uniform self-equilibrating stresses, which lead to a reduction of restraint forces
- = 1.0 for webs with  $h < 300$  mm or flanges with widths less than 300 mm
  - = 0.65 for webs with  $h > 800$  mm or flanges with widths greater than 800 mm.

Intermediate values may be interpolated

- $k_c$  is a coefficient which takes account of the stress distribution within the section just prior to cracking and of the change of the lever arm:

For pure tension  $k_c = 1.0$

For bending or bending combined with axial forces:

- For rectangular sections and webs of box sections and T-sections:

$$k_c = 0.4 \left[ 1 - \frac{\sigma_c}{k_1 (h/h^*) f_{ct,eff}} \right] \leq 1 \quad \text{Eq. 12.2}$$

- For flanges of box sections and T-sections:

$$k_c = 0.9 \frac{F_{cr}}{A_{ct} f_{ct,eff}} \geq 0.5 \quad \text{Eq. 12.3}$$

where

- $\sigma_c$  is the mean stress of the concrete acting on the part of the section under consideration:

$$\sigma_c = \frac{N_{Ed}}{bh} \quad \text{Eq. 12.4}$$

- $N_{Ed}$  is the axial force at the serviceability limit state acting on the part of the cross-section under consideration (compressive force positive).  $N_{Ed}$  should be determined under the relevant combination of actions considering the characteristic value of prestress and axial forces.

- $k_1$  is a coefficient considering the effects of axial forces on the stress distribution:

$$k_1 = 1.5 \text{ if } N_{Ed} \text{ is a compressive force}$$

$$k_1 = \frac{2h^*}{3h} \text{ if } N_{Ed} \text{ is a tensile force}$$

$$h^* = h \quad \text{for } h < 1.0 \text{ m}$$

$$h^* = 1.0 \text{ m} \quad \text{for } h \geq 1.0 \text{ m}$$

$F_{cr}$  is the absolute value of the tensile force within the flange just prior to cracking due to the cracking moment calculated with  $f_{ct, eff}$

- (3) Contribution of prestressing steel towards minimum reinforcement for crack control shall be ignored.
- (4) In prestressed members, no minimum reinforcement is required in sections where the concrete is in compression under the rare combination of loads and the characteristic value of prestress. However minimum reinforcement for other considerations such as, early thermal and shrinkage cracking, prior to application of prestressing, shall be provided as per Section 16.

#### 12.3.4 Calculation of crack width

- (1) Crack width varies between the reinforcement bars depending upon the spacing of the bars. The crack width,  $W_k$ , may be calculated from Eq.12.5.

Due account should also be taken of the effects of restrained thermal and shrinkage effects.

$$W_k = S_{r, max} (\varepsilon_{sm} - \varepsilon_{cm}) \quad \text{Eq 12.5}$$

where

$s_{r, max}$  is the maximum crack spacing (Refer Eq.12.8, 12.11 or 12.12)

$\varepsilon_{sm}$  is the mean strain in the reinforcement under the relevant combination of loads, including the effect of imposed deformations, restrained thermal and shrinkage effects and taking into account the effects of tension stiffening. For prestressed members only the additional tensile strain beyond the state of zero strain of the concrete at the same level is considered

$\varepsilon_{cm}$  is mean strain in the concrete between cracks

- (2)  $\varepsilon_{sm} - \varepsilon_{cm}$  may be calculated from:

$$\varepsilon_{sm} - \varepsilon_{cm} = \frac{\sigma_{sc} - k_t \frac{f_{ct, eff}}{\rho_{p, eff}} (1 + \alpha_e \rho_{p, eff})}{E_s} \geq 0.6 \frac{\sigma_{sc}}{E_s} \quad \text{Eq 12.6}$$

where

$\sigma_{sc}$  is the stress in the tension reinforcement assuming a cracked section.

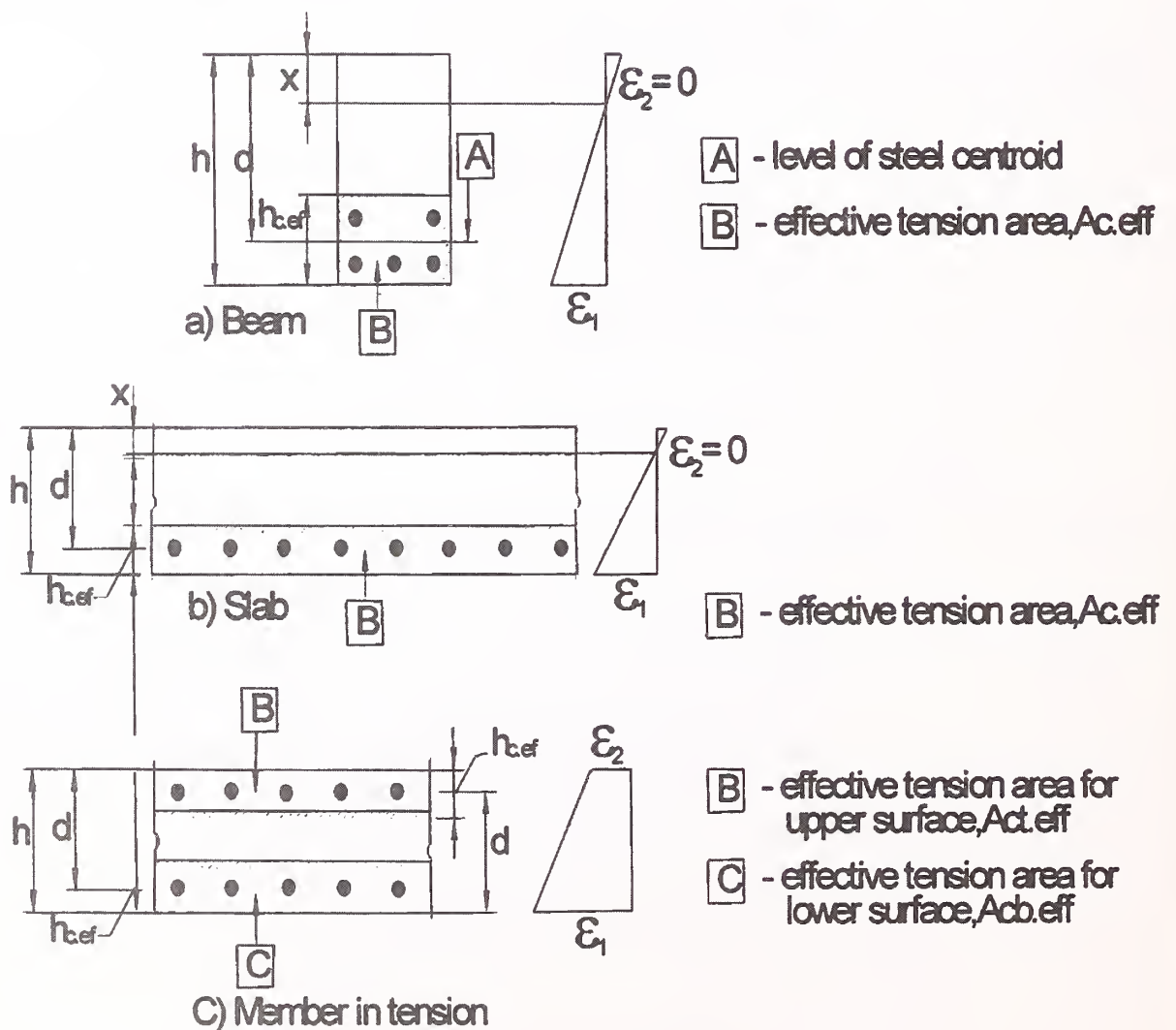
$\alpha_e$  is the ratio  $E_s/E_{cm}$

$$\rho_{p,eff} = A_s / A_{c,eff}$$

**Eq 12.7**

$A_{c,eff}$  is the effective area of concrete in tension surrounding the reinforcement, of depth  $h_{c,eff}$  where  $h_{c,eff}$  is the lesser of  $2.5(h-d)$ ;  $(h-x)/3$ ; or  $h/2$  (refer Fig.12.2).

$k_t$  is a factor dependent on the duration of the load which may be taken as 0.5.



**Fig. 12.2 Effective Tension Area (Typical Cases)**



- (3) In situations where spacing of bonded reinforcement within the tension zone is reasonably close (i.e.  $\leq 5(c+\phi/2)$ ), the maximum final crack spacing may be calculated from Eq. 12.8.

$$S_{r,max} = 3.4c + \frac{0.425k_1k_2\phi}{P_{p-eff}} \quad \text{Eq. 12.8}$$

where

$\phi$  is the bar diameter. Where bars of different diameters are used in a section, an equivalent diameter,  $\phi_{eq}$ , should be used. For a section with  $n_1$  bars of diameter  $\phi_1$  and  $n_2$  bars of diameter  $\phi_2$ , the Eq. 12.9 should be used

$$\phi_{eq} = \frac{n_1\phi_1^2 + n_2\phi_2^2}{n_1\phi_1 + n_2\phi_2} \quad \text{Eq. 12.9}$$

$c$  is the clear cover to the longitudinal reinforcement

$k_1$  is a coefficient which takes account of the bond properties of the bonded reinforcement:

= 0.8 for deformed bars

= 1.6 for bars with an effectively plain surface

For epoxy coated bars, the above values shall be increased by 25 percent.

$k_2$  is a coefficient which takes account of the distribution of strain:

= 0.5 for bending

= 1.0 for pure tension

For cases of eccentric tension or local areas, intermediate values of  $k_2$  should be used which may be calculated from Eq. 12.10:

$$k_2 = \frac{(\varepsilon_1 + \varepsilon_2)}{2\varepsilon_1} \quad \text{Eq. 12.10}$$

Where  $\varepsilon_1$  is the greater and  $\varepsilon_2$  is the lesser tensile strain at the boundaries of the section considered, assessed on the basis of a cracked section.

For the case of deformed bars associated with pure bending

$$S_{r,max} = \frac{3.4c + 0.17\phi}{\rho_{p,eff}} \quad \text{Eq. 12.11}$$

Where the spacing of the bonded reinforcement exceeds  $5(c+\phi/2)$  or where there is no bonded reinforcement within the tension zone, an upper bound limit to the crack width may be found by assuming maximum crack spacing:

$$S_{r,max} = 1.3(h - x) \quad \text{Eq. 12.12}$$

Where 'h' is the effective depth and 'x' is depth of neutral axis from the compression face.

- (4) Where the angle between the axes of principal stress and the direction of the reinforcement, for members reinforced in two orthogonal directions 'y' & 'z', is significant ( $>15^\circ$ ), then the crack spacing  $S_{r,max}$  may be calculated from the following expression:

$$S_{r,max} = \frac{1}{\frac{\cos \theta}{S_{r,max,y}} + \frac{\sin \theta}{S_{r,max,z}}} \quad \text{Eq 12.13}$$

where

$\theta$  is the angle between the reinforcement in the y direction and the direction of the principal tensile stress.

$S_{r,max,y}$   $S_{r,max,z}$  are the crack spacings calculated in the y and z directions respectively, according to Clause 12.3.4 (3).

**Note:** Where simplified methods of calculating crack width are used they should be based on the properties given in this Code or substantiated by tests.

### 12.3.5 Control of shear cracks within webs

Where it is considered necessary to check shear cracking, particularly for prestressed members, the reinforcement required for crack control can be determined as follows:

- (1) The directionally dependent concrete tensile strength  $f_{ctb}$  within the webs should be calculated from:

$$f_{ctb} = \left(1 - 0.8 \frac{\sigma_3}{f_{ck}}\right) f_{ctk,0.05} \quad \text{Eq. 12.14}$$

where

$f_{ctb}$  is the concrete tensile strength prior to cracking in a biaxial state of stress in webs.

$\sigma_3$  is the larger compressive principal stress, taken as positive.

$$\sigma_3 < 0.6f_{ck}$$

$f_{ctk.0.05}$  is lower characteristic tensile strength (Table 6.5)

- (2) The larger tensile principal stress in the web  $\sigma_1$  is compared with the corresponding strength  $f_{ctb}$  obtained from Eq. 12.14.

If  $\sigma_1 < f_{ctb}$ , the minimum reinforcement in accordance with Clause 12.3.3 should be provided in the longitudinal direction.

If  $\sigma_1 \geq f_{ctb}$ , the crack width should be controlled in accordance with Clause 12.3.6 or alternatively calculated and verified in accordance with Clause 12.3.4 taking into account the angle of deviation between the principal stress and reinforcement directions.

### 12.3.6 Control of cracking without direct calculation

- (1) The rules given in Section 12.3.4 may be presented in tabular form by restricting the bar diameter or spacing as a simplification.
- (2) Table 12.2 gives maximum bar diameter subjected to different stress levels of steel under relevant combination of load for which crack width is to be controlled. Table 12.3 gives the maximum spacing of bars in mm for two crack widths for similar condition.

- (3) The values in the table are based on the following assumptions:

$c=40\text{mm}$ ;  $f_{ct,eff}=2.8\text{ MPa}$ ;  $h_{cr}=0.5$ ;  $(h-d)=0.1h$ ;  $k_1=0.8$ ;  $k_2=0.5$ ;  $k_3=0.5$  and  $k=1.0$

- (4) Where the minimum reinforcement given by Clause 12.3.3 is provided, crack widths are unlikely to be excessive if:

- for cracking dominantly caused by restraint, the bar sizes given in Table 12.2 are not exceeded where the steel stress is the value obtained immediately after cracking (i.e.  $\sigma_s$  in Eq. 12.1).
- for cracks caused mainly by loading, either the provisions of Table 12.2 or Table 12.3 shall be complied with. The steel stress should be calculated on the basis of a cracked section under the relevant combination of actions.



- (5) For pre-tensioned concrete, where crack control is mainly provided by tendons with direct bond, Table 12.2 or Table 12.3 may be used with a stress equal to the total stress minus prestress.
- (6) For post-tensioned concrete, where crack control is provided mainly by untensioned reinforcement, the tables may be used with the stress in this reinforcement calculated the effect of prestressing forces included.

**Table 12.2 Maximum Bar Diameters  $\phi_s$  for Crack Control**

Steel stress [MPa]	Maximum bar size [mm]	
	$w_k = 0.3 \text{ mm}$	$w_k = 0.2 \text{ mm}$
160	32	25
200	25	16
240	16	12
280	12	-
320	10	-

**Table 12.3 Maximum Bar Spacing for Crack Control**

Steel stress [MPa]	Maximum bar spacing [mm]	
	$w_k = 0.3 \text{ mm}$	$w_k = 0.2 \text{ mm}$
160	300	200
200	250	150
240	200	100
280	150	50
320	100	-

- (7) It should be noted that there are particular risks of large cracks occurring in locations where there are sudden changes of stress, e.g.
- at changes of section
  - near concentrated loads

- at positions where bars are curtailed
- at areas of high bond stress, particularly at the ends of laps

Care should be taken at such locations to minimize the stress changes wherever possible. However, the rules for crack control given above will normally ensure adequate control at these points provided that the rules for detailing reinforcement given in Section 16 are complied with.

## **12.4 Limit State of Deflection**

### **12.4.1 General**

Cable supported bridges are not in the purview of this Code, for which specialist literature may be followed.

- (1) The deflections/deformations of a member or structure shall not be such that it adversely affects its proper functioning or appearance. In some cases, expected deflections may need to be adjusted in the structural geometry by pre-cambering, so as to attain the requisite profile at the time of placing expansion joints and wearing course.
- (2) Appropriate limiting values of deflection taking into account the nature of the structure, bridge deck furniture and functional needs of the bridge, should be established. In the absence of other criteria, the following deflection limits under Live Load may be considered
  - Vehicular : Span/800,
  - Vehicular and pedestrian or : Span/1000,  
pedestrian alone
  - Vehicular on cantilever : Cantilever Span/300, and
  - Vehicular & pedestrian and : Cantilever Span/375  
pedestrian only on cantilever  
arms

### **12.4.2 Calculation of deflection due to sustained loads**

- (1) The calculation method adopted shall represent the true behaviour of the structure under relevant actions with accuracy appropriate to the objectives of the calculation. In case of cracked members,

appropriate value of cracked moment of inertia shall be used. If, actual value of cracked moment of inertia cannot be determined, it may be taken equal to 70 percent of uncracked moment of inertia. For uncracked members such as prestressed concrete members, fully under compression, uncracked moment of inertia may be used.

- (2) For loads with long enough duration to cause creep, the total deformation including creep may be calculated by using an effective modulus of elasticity for concrete according to Eq.12.15

$$E_{c,eff} = \frac{E_{cm}}{1 + \phi(\infty, t_0)} \quad \text{Eq 12.15}$$

where

$\phi(\infty, t_0)$  is the creep coefficient relevant for the load and time interval (see Clause 6.4.2.7).

- (3) Shrinkage curvatures may be assessed using Eq 12.16

$$\frac{1}{r_{cs}} = \varepsilon_{cs} \alpha_e \frac{S}{I} \quad \text{Eq 12.16}$$

where

$1/r_{cs}$  is the curvature due to shrinkage

$\varepsilon_{cs}$  is the free shrinkage strain (refer Clause 6.4.2.(6))

$S$  is the first moment of area of the reinforcement about the centroid of the section

$I$  is the second moment of area of the section

$\alpha_e$  is the effective modular ratio =  $E_s / E_{c,eff}$



## **SECTION 13 PRESTRESSING SYSTEMS**

### **13.1 General**

This Section covers requirements of the parts of prestressing systems which are incorporated in the structure. Prestressing systems manufactured by specialist manufacturers shall be compatible with the standard prestressing wires/strands covered in Section 6. The stressing equipment, de-stressing/re-stressing facilities, and grouting arrangements shall be compatible with the tendons.

### **13.2 Anchorages for Post Tensioning Systems**

#### **13.2.1 Anchorages to be used**

Following types of anchorages normally used in bridges shall meet the minimum requirements given in this Section.

- (1) Anchorages partially or fully embedded in concrete in which the prestressing force is transferred within the body of the prestressed element by combination of bearing, friction and wedge action.
- (2) Externally mounted anchorages which transfer prestressing force of tendons to concrete through a bearing plate which is externally mounted.

#### **13.2.2 Minimum requirements of anchorage capacity**

- (1) The anchorage device should be capable of holding and transferring force of not less than 95 percent of the actual mean tensile ultimate strength of the tendons it is expected to hold, without failure of any of the parts of the anchorage-tendon assembly.
- (2) The anchorage tendon assembly shall be capable of withstanding not less than two million cycles of fatigue load varying between 60 percent to 65 percent of nominal UTS of tendons it is expected to hold, without suffering more than 5 percent breakage of wires/strands at the load frequency of not more than 500 cycles per minute.

#### **13.2.3 Load transfer to concrete element through end block**

The end block is the portion of the concrete element through which the concentrated load applied at anchorages is transmitted to the whole cross section of the element. The concrete and the reinforcement in this region shall be designed to transfer load not less than

110 percent of nominal UTS of tendons it is expected to hold. The crack width shall not exceed 0.25 mm at 80 percent of UTS.

#### **13.2.4 Acceptance tests for anchorage-tendon assembly**

The anchorage–tendon assemblies shall comply with the following acceptance tests as per FIP “Recommendations for the acceptance of post-tensioning systems” – (June 1993).

- (1) Static load test with tendon-anchorage.
- (2) Dynamic load test with tendon-anchorage assembly.
- (3) Load transfer test.

#### **13.3 Mechanical Couplers**

Mechanical couplers of fixed or movable type are devices in which individual lengths of tendons are anchored in two collinear directions to form one continuous tendon. The couplers shall meet the requirements of strength of individual anchorages as specified in Clause 13.2, and be able to transfer full force of tendon from one to another. The anchorage and stressing of second tendon should not disturb the anchorage of the first tendon in case of fixed couplers.

#### **13.4 Sheathing Ducts and Joints**

The sheathing ducts shall be either in mild steel as per Clause 13.4.2 or in HDPE as per Clause 13.4.3. They shall be in as long lengths as practicable from handling and transportation considerations without getting damaged. The internal joints of the duct lengths shall be watertight when bent to the minimum radius of bending required in the structure as specified in Clause 13.4.1 (2).

##### **13.4.1 Common requirements of joints of sheathing**

- (1) The ducts lengths shall be joined by adopting any one or more of the following methods as convenient to suit the individual requirements of the location, subject to satisfactory pressure tests, before adoption.
  - Using corrugated threaded sleeve couplers which can be tightly screwed to the outside of the sheathing ducts.
  - Integrating the two ends by welding using electric roaster machine or mirror machine.
  - Using heat shrink couplers.



- (2) The sheathing ducts and connections should be fully leak-tight against water pressure equivalent to  $1.1 \times$  (maximum expected gravity head of grouting material + grouting pressure). The joints should also be leak-tight and pressure resistant for above pressure.
- (3) External tendons shall be housed in either High Density Poly-Ethylene (HDPE) sheaths or metallic steel sheaths (plain or with protective coatings), which have smooth internal surfaces.

#### **13.4.2**

##### **M.S. sheathing ducts**

- (1) Unless otherwise specified, the material shall be Cold Rolled Cold Annealed (CRCA) Mild Steel intended for mechanical treatment and surface refining but not for quench hardening or tempering.
- (2) The material shall be clean and free from rust and normally of bright metal finish. However, in case of use in aggressive environment galvanised or lead coated mild steel strips shall be adopted.
- (3) The thickness of metal sheathing shall not be less than 0.3 mm, 0.4 mm and 0.5 mm for sheathing ducts having internal diameter upto 50 mm, 75 mm and 90 mm and above respectively. For larger diameter ducts, thickness of sheathing shall be based on recommendations of prestressing system supplier.

#### **13.4.3**

##### **Corrugated HDPE sheathing ducts**

- (1) The material for the ducts shall be high density polyethylene with more than 2 percent carbon black to provide resistance to ultraviolet degradation. Properties of raw materials shall comply with the technical report Bulletin 7 published by FIB "Corrugated plastic ducts for internal bonded post tensioning"
- (2) The wall thickness of the duct as manufactured shall be 2.0 mm, 2.5 mm, 3.0 mm, and 4.0 mm for ducts of internal diameter up to 50 mm, 85 mm, 100 mm and 125 mm respectively. The minimum residual wall thickness after loss (wear resistance) shall not be less than 1.5 mm for ducts upto 85 mm in diameter and not less than 2 mm for ducts greater than 85 mm in diameter.
- (3) The ducts shall be corrugated on both sides. The ducts shall transmit full tendon strength from the tendon to the surrounding concrete over a length not greater than 40-ducts' diameters.



### 13.5 End Block Design and Detailing

Requirements given in this clause are in addition to those given in Clause 16.14 on detailing. The overall design of the end block shall take into account the stress distribution based on elastic distribution of forces in uncracked section and suitable reinforcement shall be provided to take up the tensions respecting the crack width limitations. The bursting forces in the end blocks, should be assessed on the basis of the ultimate tensile strength.

#### 13.5.1 Bursting reinforcement in end-block for post tensioned tendons

##### 13.5.1.1 Externally mounted anchorage

##### (1) Individual Square End Block

The bursting tensile force,  $F_{bst}$  existing in an individual square end block loaded by a symmetrically placed square anchorage or bearing plate, may be derived from Table 13.1 and Fig.13.1

**Table 13.1 Design Bursting Tensile Forces in End Blocks**

$Y_{po} / Y_o$	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7
$F_{bst} / P_k$	0.26	0.23	0.19	0.16	0.12

Note: For intermediate values linear interpolation may be made.

where

$2Y_o$  = is the side of end block.

$2Y_{po}$  = is the side of loaded area.

When circular anchorages or bearing plates are used, the side of the equivalent square area should be used.

$P_k$  = is the load in the tendon

$F_{bst}$  = is the bursting tensile force.

This force,  $F_{bst}$  will be distributed in a region extending from  $0.2Y_o$  to  $2Y_o$  from the loaded face of the end block as shown in Fig.13.1.

Reinforcement provided in this region to sustain the bursting tensile force may be calculated based on a tensile strength of  $0.87 f_y$  except that the stress should be limited to a value corresponding to a strain of 0.001 when the concrete cover to the reinforcement is less than 50 mm.

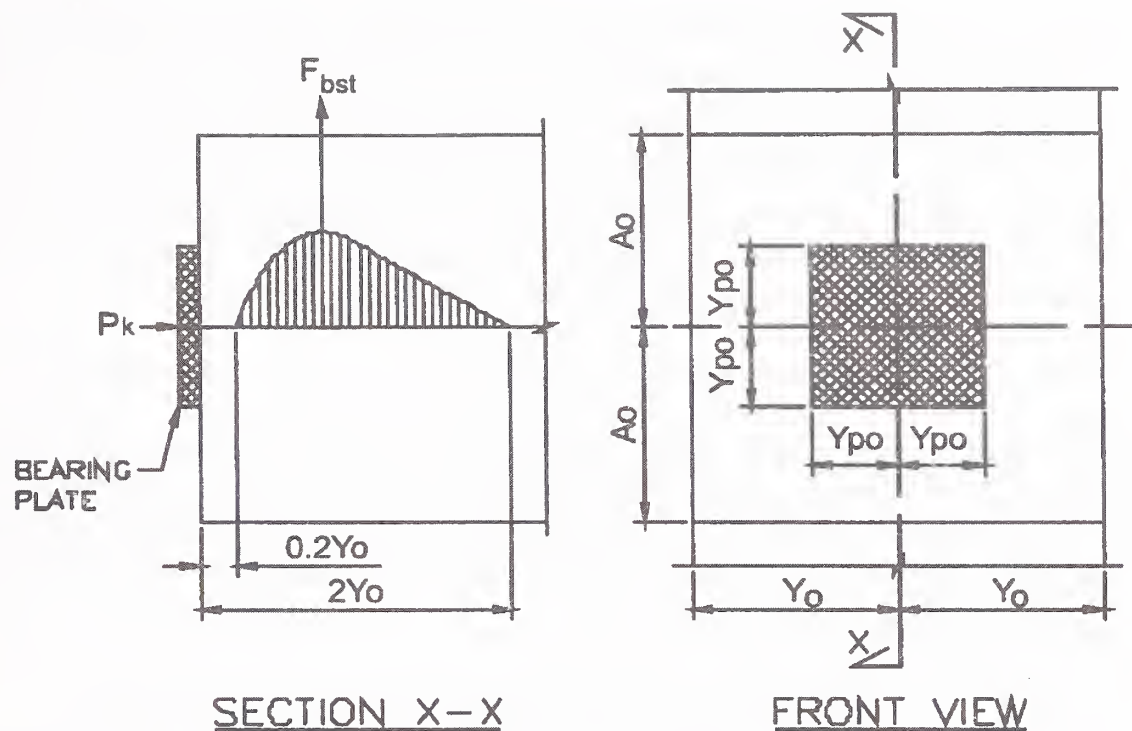


Fig.13.1 Loaded Face of the end block

(2) Rectangular End Block ( $2 A_o \times 2 Y_o$ )

In the rectangular end blocks, the bursting tensile forces in the two principal directions can be assessed on the similar basis as in Table 13.1. The shape of the loaded area of anchorage should be taken as a concentric rectangular area having the same shape as the end block and the same area as that of actual anchorage. Alternatively the higher of the two reinforcements can be provided in both directions

13.5.1.2 *Internal (embedded) anchorages*

Where the anchorages are embedded in concrete, the concrete behind anchorages is subjected to complex tri-axial set of forces where the main compressive thrust is limited to remain below the multi-axial compressive capacity and tensions in transverse directions are taken up by suitable reinforcement. Although theoretical assessment may be possible, the design and detailing is made as per recommendations of the manufacturers of the anchorage system.

13.5.1.3 *Group of anchorages*

Where groups of anchorages or bearing plates occur, the end block should be divided into a series of symmetrically loaded prisms and each prism treated in the same manner. In detailing the reinforcement for the end block as a whole, it is necessary to ensure that the



groups of anchorages are appropriately tied together. Special attention should be paid to end blocks having a cross-section different in shape from that of the general cross-section of the beam and reference should be made to specialist literature. Compliance with the above requirements will generally ensure that bursting tensile forces along the loaded axis are provided for. In case where large concentrated tendon forces are involved alternative methods of design based on specialist literature and manufacturer's data as per Clause 13.5.3 may be more appropriate.

### 13.5.2 Spalling reinforcement for post-tensioned tendons

Consideration should also be given to the spalling tensile stresses that occur in end blocks. Where the anchorage or bearing plates are highly eccentric, these stresses reach a maximum at the loaded face. The end face of anchorage zone shall be continuously reinforced to prevent edge spalling. Reinforcement shall be placed as close to the end face as possible.

### 13.5.3 Bursting reinforcement for pre-tensioned members

The bursting resistance of pre-tensioned anchorage zone provided by vertical reinforcement in the ends of pre-tensioned beams shall be taken as:

$$P_r = f_s A_s$$

where

$f_s$  = Stress in steel not exceeding 140 MPa

$A_s$  = Total area of vertical reinforcement located within the distance  $h/5$  from the end of the beam (mm<sup>2</sup>).

$h$  = Overall depth of precast member (mm)

The bursting resistance  $P_r$  shall not be less than 4 percent of the prestressing force at transfer.

The end vertical reinforcement shall be as close to the end of the beam as practicable.

## 13.6 Protective Grouting

- (1) Post tensioned tendons shall be bonded to concrete of the prestressed member as well as protected from corrosion by cement grout which shall fill the ducts fully, without leaving any entrapped air or water pockets, voids created by evaporation of excess water in the grout and bleeding.
- (2) Unbonded tendons placed either in ducts embedded in concrete or externally located shall be protected from corrosion by suitable



fillers. Grouting by cement, wax, nuclear grade (low sulphur) grease are some of the options. For materials other than cement or such long life permanent materials, arrangements for inspection and refilling or replacement of grouting materials shall be made. Factory made coated wires/strands embedded in polyethylene ducts with suitable fill are acceptable. Manufacturer's recommendations shall be followed for the specialist materials and techniques.

### **13.7 Protection of Post Tensioned Tendons and Anchorages**

In order to achieve a durable post-tensioning system, matching with the design service life of the structure, suitable corrosion protection of the post-tensioning system, is necessary. The corrosion protection system shall take into account:

- (a) Temporary protection of the tendons, ducts, anchorages and all accessories from manufacturer handling storage, transport till incorporation in the structure.
  - (b) Semi-permanent protection of the system in situations where the tendons and anchorages are exposed to atmosphere for an extended period of time.
  - (c) Permanent protection of prestressing system applied either at the factory or at site shall be according to stressing of the surrounding. Special care is warranted since most parts of the tendon or other component are generally not accessible during service life.
-

## **SECTION 14 DURABILITY**

### **14.1 General**

This Section covers design for durability and suggests provisions to ensure that adequate durability is achieved.

The structure shall be designed such that deterioration over its design service life does not impair the performance of the structure below that intended, having due regard to the service environment and the anticipated level of maintenance.

One of the main characteristics influencing the durability of concrete is its permeability to the ingress of water, oxygen, carbon dioxide, chloride, sulphate and other potentially deleterious substances. Degree of permeability is governed by the constituents, the mix proportions and workmanship used in making concrete. A suitably low permeability can be achieved by having adequate cement content, low water cement ratio and ensuring complete compaction of the concrete followed by adequate curing. Use of blended cements will also help to achieve low permeability.

The factors influencing durability of concrete include:

- (1) The environment,
- (2) The cover to embedded steel,
- (3) The type and quality of constituent materials,
- (4) The cement content and water/cement ratio,
- (5) Workmanship to obtain full compaction and efficient curing and
- (6) The shape and size of the member.

### **14.2 Common Mechanisms Leading to the Deterioration of Concrete Structures**

Common mechanisms of deterioration of concrete structures in service are:

- (1) Corrosion of reinforcement/prestressing tendons
- (2) Frost attack
- (3) Alkali-aggregate reactions
- (4) Attack from sulphates
- (5) Attack by aggressive chemicals
- (6) Acid attack and
- (7) Abrasion

Description of the mechanisms is given in Annexure B-2.

### 14.3 Design for Durability

Basic steps in designing for durability are:

- (1) To establish the aggressiveness of the service environment (exposure condition), with respect to the various mechanisms of deterioration. Different components of the structure can be exposed to different service environments.
- (2) To select the type of structure suitable for the service environment.
- (3) To select the appropriate materials, mix proportions, workmanship, design and detailing, including minimum cover to steel.

#### 14.3.1 Classification of exposure conditions

The general environment to which the concrete structure will be exposed during its service life is classified into four levels of severity. In doing so, it is possible that the classification relates to specific mechanisms of deterioration. The relative importance of the various mechanisms will vary from region to region in a country and no generally applicable ordering of the mechanisms can be made. However, there seems no doubt that the commonest and most serious form of degradation worldwide is corrosion of reinforcement. It can also be stated that, of the two initiating mechanisms for corrosion viz. - carbonation and chlorides; chlorides have caused the greater amount of damage by far. The classification in **Table 14.1** caters essentially to corrosion of steel in concrete.

**Table 14.1 Classification of Service Environment**

Sl. No.	Environment	Exposure conditions
(1)	Moderate	Concrete dry or permanently wet; concrete continuously under water.
(2)	Severe	Wet, rarely dry; humid (relative humidity > 70 percent), completely submerged in sea water below mid-tide level; concrete exposed to coastal environment,
(3)	Very severe	Moderate humidity (relative humidity 50 to 70 percent); concrete exposed to air-borne chloride in marine environment; freezing conditions while wet.
(4)	Extreme	Cyclic wet and dry, concrete exposed to tidal, splash and spray zones in sea, concrete in direct contact with aggressive sub-soil/ground water, concrete in contact with aggressive chemicals.



**14.3.2 Durability provisions****14.3.2.1 Concrete mix proportions and cover**

Presence of moisture is necessary for most of the deleterious actions to proceed and low permeability of concrete is a prerequisite for durability. Greater impermeability is achieved primarily by the control of water/cement ratio and selection of the cement type.

The water/cement ratio governs the strength of concrete, and strength classes are accordingly chosen, as an indirect control on these parameters.

Cover (or clear cover) is the distance from the concrete surface to the surface of the nearest reinforcement, including links, stirrups and surface reinforcement. Cover is more important from the consideration of corrosion of steel in concrete. The cover should at least be equal to the depth of likely chloride ingress by diffusion over a time period equal to the design service life. Chloride diffusion coefficient in concrete depends upon the water/cement ratio and the cement type; it is lower for blended cements, and lower water/cement ratios. It is possible to select combinations of the water cement ratio and cover thickness to achieve the objective. However, the selection of cover should also take into account other structural aspects like safe transmission of bond forces and control of crack width.

Taking these considerations into account, the requirements of concrete mix properties and cover for different exposure conditions considered in Table 14.1, for 20 mm size aggregate are given in Table 14.2.

**Table 14.2 Durability Recommendations for Service Life of at Least 100 Years  
(20 mm Aggregate)**

Exposure Condition	Maximum water/cement ratio	Minimum cement content, kg/m <sup>3</sup>	Minimum grade of concrete	Minimum Cover, mm
Moderate	0.45	340	M25	40
Severe	0.45	360	M30	45
Very Severe	0.40	380	M40	50
Extreme	0.35	400	M45	75

**Notes.**

- (1) All four recommendations given in the Table for a particular exposure condition, shall be satisfied.
- (2) For post tensioned tendons, the minimum clear cover measured from the outside of the sheathing shall be 75 mm.
- (3) For pre-tensioned tendons, minimum cover shall be 65 mm.

- (4) Minimum cover shown in Table 14.2 can be reduced by 5 mm in case of factory made precast concrete elements, high performance concrete, use of stainless steel reinforcement, or controlled permeability formwork (refer Clause 14.4.1). In case more than one of the above measures are adopted the reduction should not exceed 10 mm.
- (5) The term cement for maximum w/c ratio and minimum cement content in Table 14.2 includes all cementitious materials inclusive of additions mentioned in Clause 18.4.
- (6) For plain cement concrete, with or without surface reinforcement, the minimum grade of concrete can be lowered by 5 MPa and maximum water/cement ratio exceeded by 0.05.
- (7) For all foundations and elements below ground level minimum cover shall be 75 mm.
- (8) For design service life of 50 years or less, the minimum cover can be reduced by 5 mm.

#### 14.3.2.2 *Adjustments for other aggregate sizes*

For aggregate sizes other than 20 mm, the minimum cement content shown in Table 14.2 shall be adjusted as per Table 14.3.

**Table 14.3 Adjustments in Cement Content for Aggregates of Size other than 20 mm Size**

Aggregate size, mm	Adjustment in minimum cement content in Table 14.2, kg/m <sup>3</sup>
10	+ 40
20	0
40	- 30

#### 14.3.2.3 *Chloride content*

All constituents of concrete, viz. cement, aggregate, water chemical admixture and mineral admixture, may contain chlorides. Concrete may be contaminated by diffusion of chlorides from the external environment. Total acid soluble chloride content in the concrete mix, expressed as chloride ions, shall not exceed the following values by mass of cement;

Prestressed concrete	-	0.10 percent
Reinforced concrete (in severe, very severe or extreme exposure conditions)	-	0.20 percent
Reinforced concrete in moderate exposure conditions	-	0.30 percent



#### **14.3.2.4 Sulphate content**

Sulphates are present in cements, in some aggregates and mix water. They can also be imbibed from the service environment e.g. coastal environment. The total water-soluble sulphate content of the concrete mix, expressed as  $\text{SO}_3$ , shall not exceed 4 percent by mass of cement in the mix.

#### **14.3.2.5 Maximum cement content**

Cement content (excluding fly ash, GGBS or Silica Fume) shall not exceed  $450 \text{ kg/m}^3$ .

### **14.4 Additional Provisions for Specific Mechanisms of Deterioration**

Some additional provisions for different mechanisms of deterioration are given below.

#### **14.4.1 Corrosion of reinforcement**

The normal way to design against corrosion is to ensure that there is an adequate cover to the reinforcement and that the concrete in the cover region is of a high quality and is well cured. In extreme environments, however, there are other measures which may have to be adopted, such as:

- (1) Use of galvanized reinforcement or reinforcement with fusion-bonded epoxy coating.
- (2) Use of surface coatings to the concrete to inhibit the ingress of chlorides or carbon dioxide. Such coatings need periodic renewal.
- (3) Use of waterproofing membrane over the bridge deck.
- (4) Use of controlled permeability formwork (CPF) liners, which effectively reduce the water-cement ratio of cover concrete and reduce the chloride diffusion into the concrete.
- (5) Application of cathodic protection to the structure.
- (6) Use of stainless steel reinforcement.

One major factor in the avoidance of corrosion problems is the form of the structure. Areas of exposed concrete on which water can stand or can drain across, are particularly at risk.

#### **14.4.2 Sulphate attack**

Depending upon the concentration of  $\text{SO}_3$  ions in soil, subsoil or ground water, appropriate protective measures comprise selection of proper type of cement, mix proportions and protective coatings in severe cases. The details are given in Table 14.4.



**Table 14.4 Requirements for Concrete Exposed to Sulphate Attack**

Class	Concentration of sulphates as SO <sub>3</sub>			Type of cement (Note ii)	Minimum cement content, kg/m <sup>3</sup>	Maximum water cement ratio	Minimum grade of concrete
	In soils		In ground water, g/l				
	Total SO <sub>3</sub> , %	SO <sub>3</sub> in 2:1 water: soil extract, g/l					
1	Traces	< 1.0	< 0.3	- OPC, PPC or PSC	280	0.5	M25
2	0.2 to 0.5	1.0 to 1.9	0.3 to 1.2	- OPC, PPC or PSC - SRPC	330 310	0.5	M25
3	0.5 to 1.0	1.9 to 3.1	1.2 to 2.5	- SRPC, - PPC or PSC	330 350	0.5 0.45	M25 M30
4	1.0 to 2.0	3.1 to 5.0	2.5 to 5.0	- SRPC	370	0.45	M35
5	> 2.0	> 5.0	>5.0	- SRPC with protective coatings	400	0.4	M40

**Notes :**

- (i) If the requirements of maximum water/cement ratio, minimum grade of concrete and minimum cement content from other durability considerations as given in Table 14.2 are more stringent than those given in Table 14.4 then the former will govern.
- (ii) Type of cements: OPC: Ordinary Portland Cement, PPC: Portland Pozzolona Cement, PSC: Portland Slag Cement, SRPC: Sulphate Resisting Portland Cement.

**14.4.3 Alkali – silica reaction**

The alkali-silica reaction can be alleviated by the following methods:-

- (1) Use of aggregates which have been found to perform satisfactorily in practice,
- (2) Use of non-reactive aggregate from alternate sources,
- (3) Use of low-alkali OPC having total alkali content not more than 0.6 percent (Na<sub>2</sub>O equivalent). Further advantage can be obtained by use of fly ash, ground granulated blast furnace slag or silica fume as part replacement of low alkali OPC. In such cases, fly ash content should be at least 20 percent or slag content at least 50 percent,

- (4) Measures to reduce the degree of saturation of concrete during service such as use of impermeable membranes,
- (5) Limiting the cement content of the concrete mix and thereby limiting total alkali content in the concrete mix,

For more guidance, specialist literature may be referred.

#### **14.4.4 Frost attack**

Frost damage can be avoided by the following methods:-

- (1) Protecting the concrete from saturation.
  - (2) Using an air-entrained concrete mix. The small bubbles of entrained air within the matrix can provide pressure relief. The minimum amount of entrained air should be 3.5 percent for 20 mm size aggregate, and greater for smaller sizes. Air-entraining admixture should conform to IS 9103.
  - (3) Using high-strength concrete, with compressive strength of 45 MPa or more.
-

## SECTION 15 DETAILING: GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

### 15.1 General

- (1) The following detailing requirements apply to all structures using normal weight concrete, uncoated steel for reinforcement and prestressing. These are supplemented for specific applications by additional rules in Sections 16 & 17.
- (2) Modifications in provisions required for use of coated steels are given in Clause 15.4.

### 15.2 Reinforcing Steel

#### 15.2.1 Spacing of bars

- (1) The spacing of bars shall be such that the concrete can be placed and compacted satisfactorily for the development of adequate bond.  
  
The aggregate size,  $d_g$  shall be chosen to permit adequate compaction around the bars where  $d_g$  is the nominal size as per IS 383.
- (2) The clear distance, (horizontal and vertical) between individual parallel bars or horizontal layers of parallel bars shall not be less than maximum of (a) largest bar diameter (b) ( $d_g + 10$  mm) or (c) 20 mm.
- (3) Where bars are positioned in separate horizontal layers, the bars in each layer should be located vertically above each other. Where access for vibrator needle is required, the spacing between columns of bars shall not be less than 50 mm.
- (4) Lapped bars may touch one another within the lap length.

#### 15.2.2 Permissible bending

The minimum bend diameter of the bar shall be such as to avoid bending cracks in the bar and crushing or splitting of the concrete inside the bend.

The minimum diameter of the mandrel used for bending should be not less than the values given in Tables 15.1 & 15.2.



**Table 15.1 Minimum Mandrel Diameters for Bending of Bent-up Bars and Curved Bars to Avoid Splitting/Crushing of Concrete ( $\phi$  : Diameter of Bar)**

Value of concrete cover, perpendicular to plane of curvature	Bent-up Bars or Curved Bars	
	Plain (Fe 240)	HYSD (Fe 415 to Fe 600)
$\leq 3 \phi < 50 \text{ mm}$	$15 \phi$	$20 \phi$
$> 3 \phi > 50 \text{ mm}$	$10 \phi$	$15 \phi$

**Table 15.2 Minimum Mandrel Diameters for Cold Bending of Bars to Avoid Bending Cracks ( $\phi$  : Diameter of Bar)**

Type of Steel	For Hooks, Bends, Loops	
	$\phi < 20 \text{ mm}$	$\phi \geq 20 \text{ mm}$
Plain bars, (Fe 240)	$2.5 \phi$	$5 \phi$
HYSD Bars	$4 \phi$	$7 \phi$

### 15.2.3 Bond

#### 15.2.3.1 Bond conditions

The quality of the bond depends on the surface pattern of the bar, on the dimension of the member and on the position and inclination of the reinforcement with respect to direction of concreting.

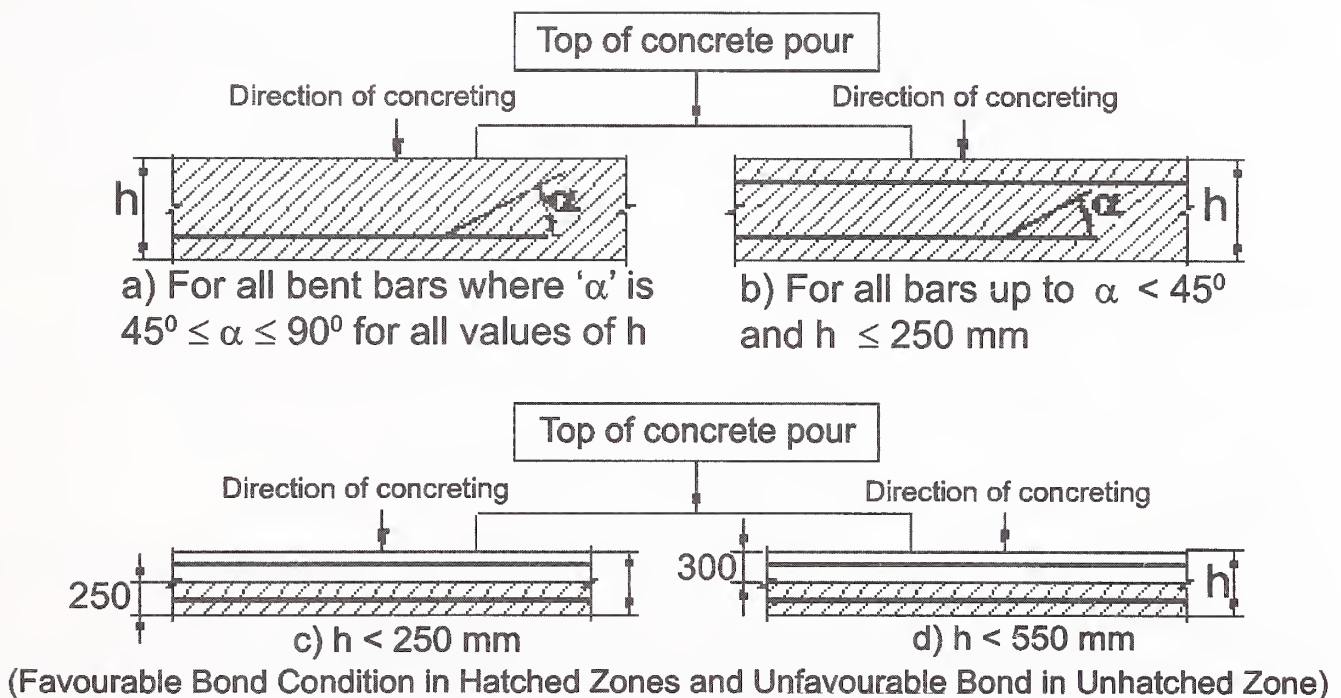
#### (1) Favourable bond conditions

For normal weight concrete, the bond conditions are considered to be favourable for:

- (a) All bars, with an inclination between  $45^\circ$  and  $90^\circ$  to the horizontal (Fig.15.1.a).
- (b) All bars which are horizontal or have inclination upto  $45^\circ$  to the horizontal and are:
  - (i) either placed in members whose depth in the direction of concreting does not exceed 250 mm (Fig. 15.1.b).

(ii) or embedded in members with a depth greater than 250 mm, and when concreting is completed, are :

- either in the lower half of the member (Fig.15.1.c),
- or at least in concrete portion located below 300 mm from its top surface (Fig.15.1.d).



**Fig.15.1 Description of Bond Conditions**



## (2) Unfavourable-bond conditions

All other conditions are considered as unfavourable bond conditions.

### 15.2.3.2 Ultimate bond stress

- (1) The ultimate bond strength shall be sufficient to prevent bond failure.
- (2) In favourable bond conditions, the design values for the ultimate bond stress  $f_{bd}$  are given in Table 15.3

**Table 15.3 Design Values  $f_{bd}$  (N/mm<sup>2</sup>) for Favourable Bond Conditions**  
**[These Values Incorporate ( $\gamma_c$ ) Value Equal To 1.5].**

Concrete Grade $f_{ck}$ MPa 	M 20	M 25	M 30	M 35	M 40	M 45	M 50	M 55	M 60 AND HIGHER
Re-Bar Grade where 									
Plain Bars Fe 240	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.45	1.5	1.6	1.7
High Yield Strength Deformed bars where $\phi \leq 32$ mm (Conforming to IS:1786)	1.95	2.25	2.7	3.0	3.2	3.4	3.75	4.0	4.3

- Notes:** (i) For unfavourable bond condition, the values given above should be multiplied by factor of 0.7.
- (ii) For  $\phi > 32$  mm, additional rules are given in Clause 15.2.6.
- (iii) For values of  $\gamma_c = 1.2$ , the above values can be increased by a factor  $\frac{1.5}{1.2} = 1.25$
- (iv) For concrete grade higher than M60, recommended  $f_{bd}$  is limited due to increased brittleness of concrete.

### 15.2.3.3 Basic anchorage length

- (1) The basic anchorage length ( $l_b$ ) is the straight length required for anchoring the force  $A_s f_{yd}$  in a bar, assuming constant bond stress equal to  $f_{bd}$ . In determining the basic anchorage length, the type of the steel and the bond properties of the bars shall be taken into consideration.

The basic anchorage length required for the anchorage of a bar of diameter  $\phi$  is:

$$l_b = (\phi / 4) (f_{yd} / f_{bd}) = k \cdot \phi \quad \text{Eq.15.1}$$

Where  $f_{yd}$  is design ultimate stress =  $f_y / 1.15$ .

Values for  $k$  for different grades of concrete and steel are given in Table 15.4.

- (2) For bent bars the basic anchorage length should be measured along the centre line of the bar.



**Table 15.4 Value of k for Favourable Bond**  
(These Values incorporate ( $\gamma_c=1.5$ ))

Concrete Grade MPa → Re-Bar Grade ↓	M 20	M 25	M 30	M 35	M 40	M 45	M 50	M 55	M 60 AND HIGHER
Plain Bars (Fe 240)	52	47	43	40	37	36	35	33	31
HYSD Bars Fe 415 & Fe 415D	45	39	33	30	28	27	24	23	21
HYSD Bars Fe 500 & Fe 500D $\phi \leq 32\text{mm}$	54	47	40	36	34	32	29	27	25
HYSD Bars Fe 550 & Fe 550D	60	52	44	40	37	35	32	30	28
HYSD Bars (Fe 600)	65	57	48	43	41	38	35	33	30

- Notes:** (1) For unfavourable bond condition the above values should be multiplied by factor of 1.43.
- (2) For  $\phi > 32 \text{ mm}$ , these lengths should be increased by multiplying factor  $\left( \frac{100}{132 - \phi} \right)$

## 15.2.4 Anchorage of longitudinal reinforcement

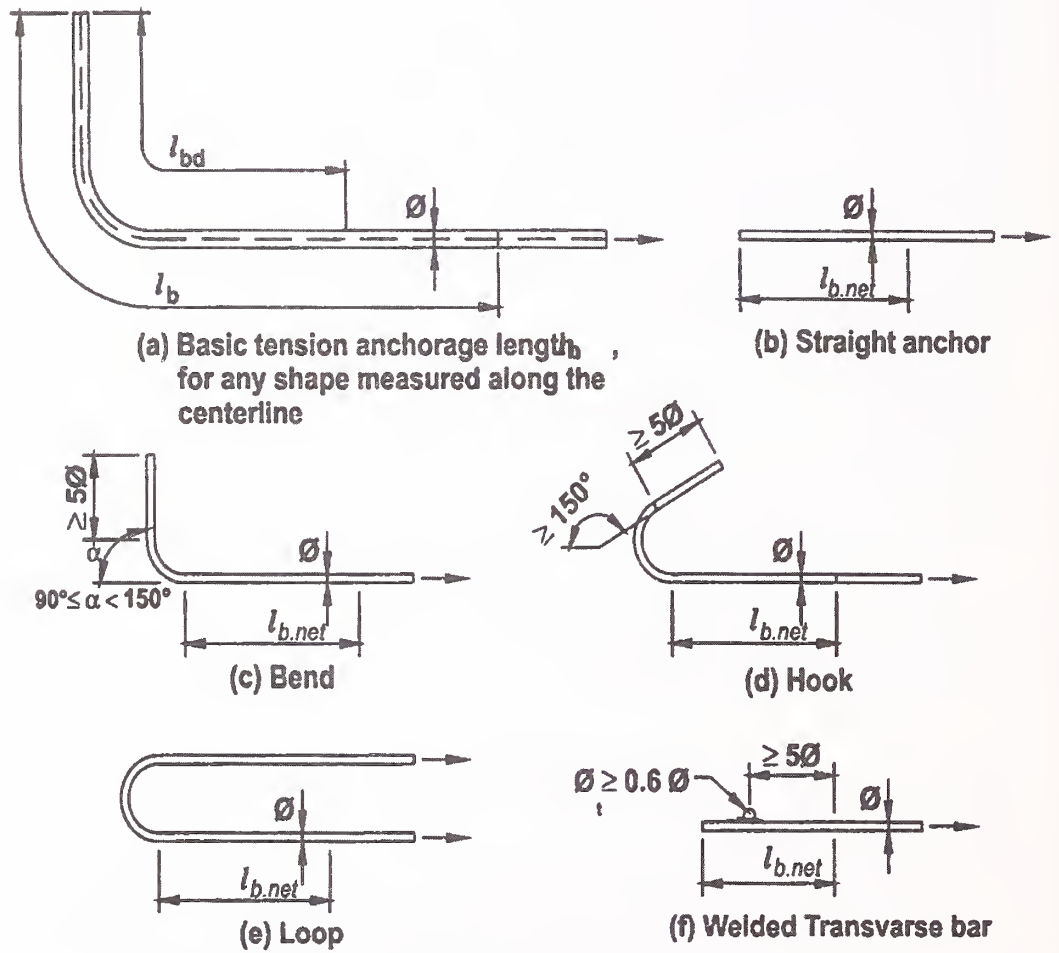
### 15.2.4.1 General

- (1) The reinforcing bars shall be so anchored that while their compressive or tensile forces are transmitted to the concrete the longitudinal cracking or spalling of concrete is avoided. Transverse reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Clause 15.2.5.1.3. In calculation of area of transverse reinforcement, the steel provided for any other reason such as distribution steel in slabs or shear reinforcement in beams, can be counted.
- (2) Where mechanical devices are used, their effectiveness shall be proven and capacity to transmit the concentrated force at the anchorage shall be established by tests.

### 15.2.4.2 Anchorage methods

- (1) The usual methods of anchorage for plain and HYSD bars are shown in Fig.15.2. Straight anchorages (b) or bends (c) should not be used to anchor plain bars of more than 8 mm diameter.
- (2) Anchorage for bars in compression shall be developed by straight

anchorage. Hooks and bends, if provided for any other reason, shall be deemed not effective providing anchorage in compression. The value of  $l_b$  in compression should be same as  $l_b$  in tension.



Note: For  $l_{b.net}$  values, refer clause 15.2.4.3

**Fig. 15.2 Methods of Anchorage**

#### 15.2.4.3 Design anchorage length

##### (1) Bars

The design anchorage length  $l_{b.net}$  may be calculated from :

$$l_{b.net} = \alpha_a \cdot l_b \cdot \frac{A_{s.req}}{A_{s.prov}} \geq l_{b.min} \quad \text{Eq.15.2}$$

where

$l_{b.net}$  : as shown in Fig.15.2.

$l_b = k \cdot \phi$  : as given by Eq. (15.1) and Table 15.4

$A_{s\ req}$  and  $A_{s\ prov}$  : Area of reinforcement required by design and that actually provided, respectively.

$\alpha_a$  is a coefficient which has the following values.

$\alpha_a = 1$  for straight bars and bars in compression.

$\alpha_a = 0.7$  for bent bars and loop bars in tension, if the concrete cover perpendicular to the plane of bending is at least  $3\phi$  in the region of the hook, bend, and bars having transverse welded bars (Fig. 15.2)

$l_{h\ min}$ : Denotes the minimum anchorage length.

- for anchorages in tension  $l_{h\ min} = 0.3 l_h$

- for anchorages in compression.  $l_{h\ min} = 0.6 l_h$

$l_{h\ min}$ : shall not be less than  $10\phi$  or 100 mm

## (2) Anchorage of links and shear reinforcement

(a) The anchorage of links and shear reinforcement shall normally be achieved by means of hooks, bends or by welded transverse reinforcement. For hooked or bent bar, a transverse bar of same or larger dia should be provided inside hook or bend.

(b) For the permissible curvature of hooks and bends, see Table 15.2.

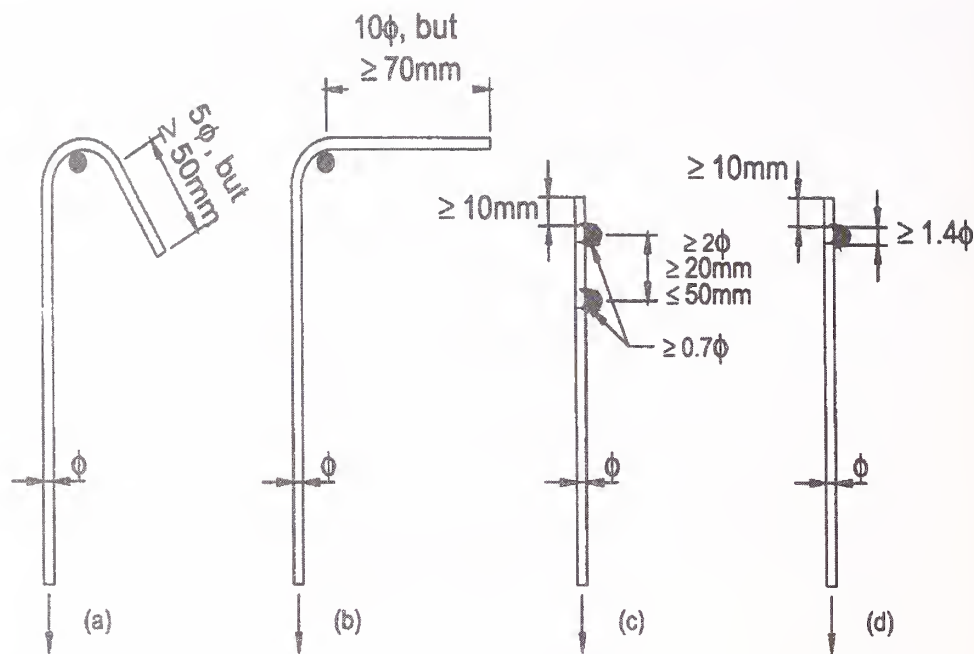
(c) The anchorage as a whole is considered to be satisfactory, where either (i) or (ii) below is satisfied.

(i) The curve of a hook or bend is extended by a straight length which is not less than  $5\phi$  or 50 mm if it is a continuation of an arc of  $135^\circ$  or more; Fig.15.3(a), or  $10\phi$  or 70 mm if it is a continuation of any arc of  $90^\circ$ , Fig.15.3(b).

(ii) Near the end of a straight bar there are :

- either two welded transverse bars, where dia. is not less than  $0.7$  dia. of anchored bar, Fig. 15.3(c).
- or a single welded transverse bar, the diameter of which is not less than  $1.4$  times the diameter of the bar, Fig. 15.3(d).





**Note:** For (c) and (d) cover should not be less than  $3\phi$  or 50 mm.

**Fig. 15.3 Anchorage of Links and Shear Reinforcement**

### 15.2.5 Splices

Splices of reinforcement shall be formed by

- (1) Laps of bars with straight ends or with end hooks.
- (2) Welding
- (3) Mechanical devices

The detailing of splices between bars shall be such that the transmission of forces from one bar to the next is assured and spalling of concrete or unacceptable crack widths (from durability point of view), do not occur in the neighbourhood of the splice.

#### 15.2.5.1 Splices of bars by laps

##### (1) Arrangement of lapped splices

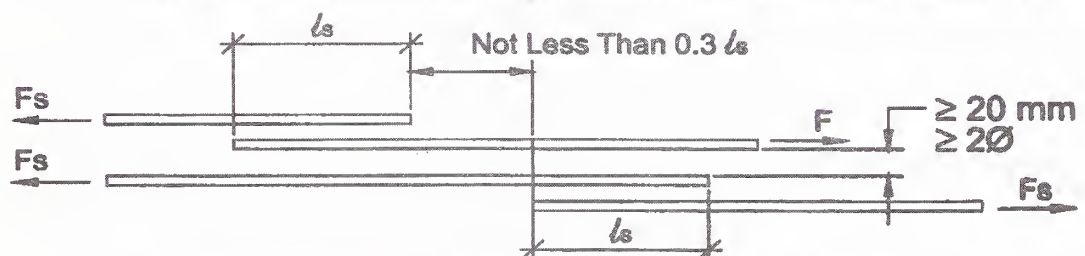
##### (a) As far as possible:

- Laps should not be located in areas of high stress
- Laps shall be staggered.
- Exceptions are however allowed under conditions as described in item (e) & (f).

- (b) The clear space between the two lapped bars in a splice should not be greater than  $4\phi$  or 50 mm as indicated in Fig.15.4 (a); otherwise the lap length should be increased by a length equal to the clear space where it exceeds  $4\phi$ .
- (c) For adjacent laps, the clear longitudinal distance between two laps and transverse distance between bars be as indicated in Fig.15.4 (b)
- (d) Transverse reinforcement as given in Clause 15.2.5.1.3 shall be provided for avoiding spalling or cracking of concrete.
- (e) Where provisions of (b) above are satisfied and the bars are all in one layer, 100 percent lapping of bars in tension at one section may be permitted for HYSD bars only. Where bars are in several layers the percentage should be reduced to 50 percent.
- (f) All bars in compression and secondary (distribution) reinforcement may be lapped at one section except where ductile detailing is required.



(a) Maximum Spacing Between Two Lapped Bars



(b) Longitudinal Spacing Between Staggered Laps

**Fig. 15.4 Arrangement of Splices**

## (2) Lap length of splices

The lap length  $l_s$  shall be (Fig. 15.4)

$$l_s = l_{b.net} \cdot \alpha_1 \geq l_{s.min}$$

**Eq. 15.3**

where

$l_{b.net}$  is anchorage length according to Eq. 15.2

$l_{s.min}$  = maximum of  $0.3 \cdot \alpha_1 \cdot l_b$  or  $15\phi$  or 200 mm

The Coefficient  $\alpha_1$  takes the following values:

Percentage of lapped bars relative to total cross-sectional area	< 25%	33%	50%	> 50%
$\alpha_1$	1	1.15	1.4	1.5

(3) *Transverse reinforcement*

- (a) If the diameter of the lapped bars is less than 20 mm, or if the area of lapped bars in any one section is less than 25 percent of total area of bars at that section, then the minimum transverse reinforcement provided for other reasons (e.g. shear reinforcement, distribution bars) is considered as sufficient.
- (b) If  $\phi \geq 20$  mm, then the total transverse reinforcement should be placed between the longitudinal reinforcement and the concrete surface, and have a total area [sum of all steel placed in parallel plane to the layer of the spliced reinforcement, (Fig.15.5)], of not less than the area  $A_s$  of one spliced bar ( $\Sigma A_{st} \geq 1.0 A_s$ ).
- (c) For the distribution of the transverse reinforcement Fig. 15.5 applies.
- (d) For splicing of bars in beams and columns the stirrups or links provided for other considerations can be taken into account to satisfy the requirement of (2) and its spacing shall not exceed 150 mm.

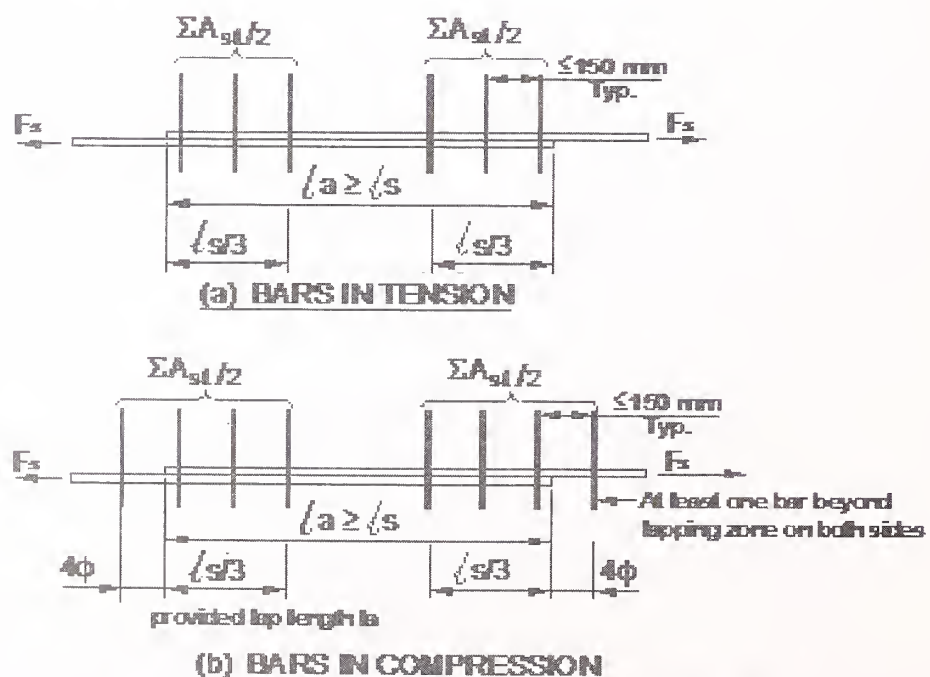


Fig. 15.5 Detailing of Transverse Reinforcement at Lapped-Splices



### 15.2.5.2 *Splicing by welding*

Welded joints may be used subject to the following :

- (1) Welding of Fe 240 grade bars conforming to IS 432 shall be permitted. Welding of other grades of bars shown in Table 15.1 is generally not recommended except in special cases mentioned in (8) below.
- (2) In special cases the HYSD bars conforming to IS 1786 may be welded after confirming that the equivalent carbon percentage calculated from the chemical comparisons as given below are within the limitations of CE mentioned below:

For guaranteed weldability, the Carbon Equivalent, CE using the formula:

$$C.E. = C + \frac{Mn}{6} + \frac{Cr + Mo + V}{5} + \frac{Ni + Cu}{15} \text{ shall not be more than 0.53}$$

percent, when microalloys/low alloys are used. When microalloys/low alloys are not used, carbon equivalent using the formula:

$$CE = C + \frac{Mn}{6} \text{ shall not be more than 0.42 percent.}$$

Reinforcement bars/wires with carbon equivalent above 0.42 percent should, however be welded with precaution. Use of low hydrogen basic coated electrodes with matching strength bars/wires is recommended.

- (3) Welding shall conform to IS 2751 and IS 9417 except as provided herein.
- (4) Generally, shop welding in controlled conditions is to be preferred, where feasible. Site welding where necessary shall, however, be permitted when the facilities, equipment, process, consumables, operators, welding procedure are adequate to produce and maintain uniform quality at par with that attainable in shop welding to the satisfaction of the engineer.
- (5) Welding may be carried out by metal arc welding process. Oxy-acetylene welding shall not be permissible. Any other process may be used subject to the approval of the engineer and necessary additional requirements to ensure satisfactory joint performance. Precautions on over heating, choice of electrode, selection of correct current in arc welding etc., should be strictly observed.
- (6) All bars shall be butt welded except for smaller diameter bars with diameter of less than 20 mm which may be lap welded. Single-V or

Double-V butt joints may generally be used. For vertical bars single bevel or double bevel butt joints may be used.

- (7) Welded joints shall be located well away from bends and not less than twice the bar diameter away from a bend.
- (8) Joint welding procedures which are to be employed shall invariably be established by a procedure specification and shall be qualified prior to use by tests as prescribed in IS 2751. All welders and welding operators to be employed shall have to be qualified by tests prescribed in IS 2751. Inspection of welds shall conform to IS 822 and destructive or non-destructive testing may be undertaken when deemed necessary. Joints with weld defects detected by visual inspection or dimensional inspection shall not be accepted.

#### 15.2.5.3 *Splicing by mechanical devices*

- (1) Bars may be spliced with mechanical devices, e.g. by special grade steel sleeves swaged on to the bars in end to end contact or by threaded couplers. A mechanical splice including its connecting elements shall develop in tension or compression at least 125 per cent of the characteristic strength  $f_y$ .
  - (a) For established systems the design shall be based on manufacturer's test certificate of ultimate strength with appropriate safety factor to be selected by the designer. In addition, field testing on selected samples from actual supply at site shall be carried out, both for acceptance and as quality control tool.
  - (b) For new systems acceptance testing shall be carried out in laboratories. In addition, field testing on selected samples from actual supply at site shall be carried out, both for acceptance and as quality control tool.
- (2) At location of mechanical splices reduction in minimum cover may be accepted but should not be less than 30 mm.

### 15.2.6 **Additional rules for high yield steel deformed (HYSD) bars exceeding 32 mm in diameter**

#### 15.2.6.1 *General*

- (1) The rules given below are complementary to those given in Clause 15.2.3.



- (2) Splicing by lapped joints shall not be used either for tension or compression bars.
- (3) Bars of  $\phi > 32$  mm shall be used only in elements whose minimum depth is not less than 15 times, the diameter of the bar.
- (4) When large bars are used, adequate crack control shall be ensured either by using surface reinforcement as per Clause 16.5.4 (4). or by calculation as per Section 12.
- (5) Splitting forces are higher and dowel action is greater with the use of large diameter bars. Such bars should be anchored with mechanical devices. As an alternative they may be anchored as straight bars, but links should be provided as confining reinforcement.
- (6) Generally large diameter bars should not be lapped. Exceptions include sections with a minimum dimension 1.0 m or where the stress in steel is not greater than 80 percent of the design ultimate strength.
- (7) Transverse reinforcement, additional to that for shear, should be provided in the anchorage zones where transverse compression is not present.
- (8) For straight anchorage lengths (see Fig. 15.6 for the notation used) the additional reinforcement referred to in (7) above should not be less than the following:

- in the direction parallel to the tension face:

$$A_{sh} = 0.25 A_s n_1 \quad \text{Eq. 15.4}$$

- in the direction perpendicular to the tension face:

$$A_{sv} = 0.25 A_s n_2 \quad \text{Eq. 15.5}$$

where

$A_s$  is the cross sectional area of an anchored bar,

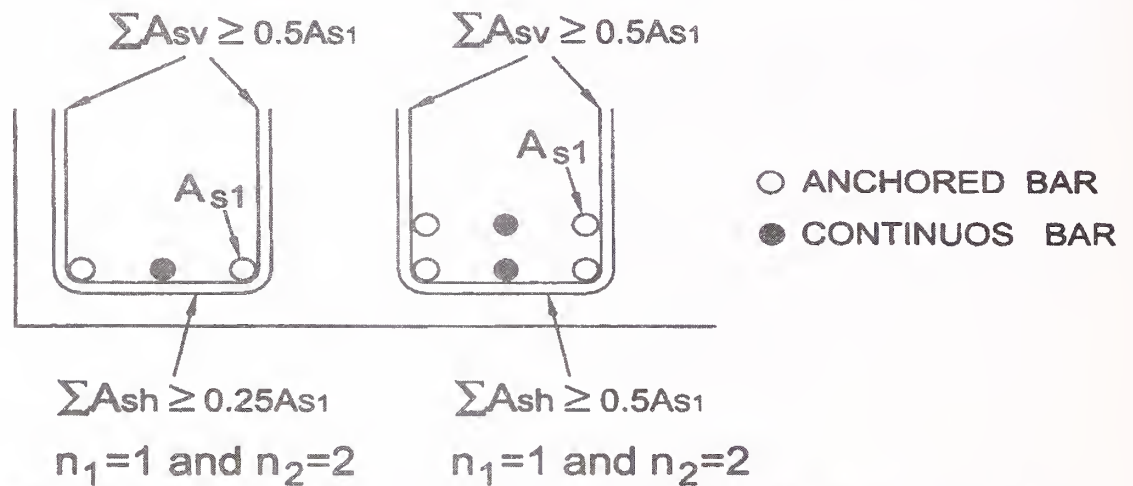
$n_1$  is the number of layers with bars anchored at the same point in the member

$n_2$  is the number of bars anchored in each layer.

- (9) The additional transverse reinforcement should be uniformly distributed in the anchorage zone and the spacing of bars should not exceed 150 mm.



- (10) For surface reinforcement provisions of Section (16.5.4) applies. The area of surface reinforcement should not be less than  $0.01 A_{ct, eff}$  where  $A_{ct, eff}$  is the area of cover portion outside the stirrups/links.



**Fig.15.6 Additional Reinforcement in an Anchorage for Large Diameter Bars where there is no Transverse Compression**

## 15.2.7 Bundled high strength deformed bars

### 15.2.7.1 General

#### (1) Bundle of same Types of Bars

Unless otherwise stated, the rules for individual bars also apply for bundles of bars. In a bundle, all the bars shall be of the same characteristics, type and grade, and preferably of same dia. Bars of different diameters can be bundled provided the ratio of diameters does not exceed 1.7.

#### (2) Equivalent Diameter

In design, the bundle is replaced by a notional bar having the same sectional area and the same centre of gravity as the bundle.

The 'equivalent diameter'  $\phi_n$  of this notional bar is such that:

$$\phi_n = \phi \sqrt{n_b} \leq 55 \text{ mm} \quad \text{Eq. 15.6}$$

where  $n_b$  is the number of bars in the bundle, which is limited to:

- Four for vertical bars in compression and for bars in a lapped joint for lap length portion.
- Three for all other cases.

(3) Use of Equivalent Diameter

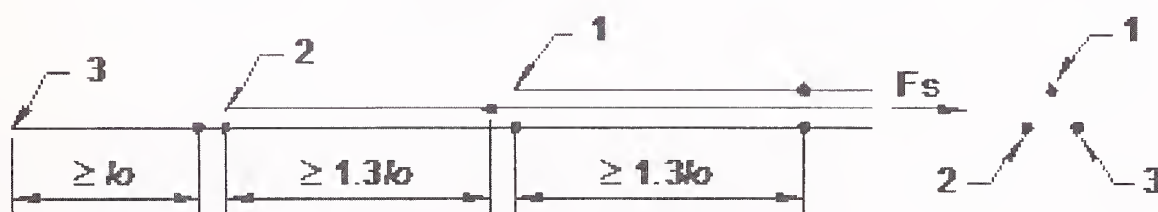
For a bundle, provision of Section 15.2.1 applies using the equivalent diameter  $\phi_n$  in place of  $\phi$ . Where two touching bars are positioned one above the other, and where bond conditions are favourable, such bars need not be treated as a bundle.

(4) Minimum Concrete Cover and Spacing of Bar

The equivalent diameter  $\phi_n$  is taken into account in evaluation of the minimum cover and spacing between bundles. However, the minimum cover and spacing are measured from the actual outside contour of the bundle of bars.

### 15.2.7.2 Anchorage of bundled bars

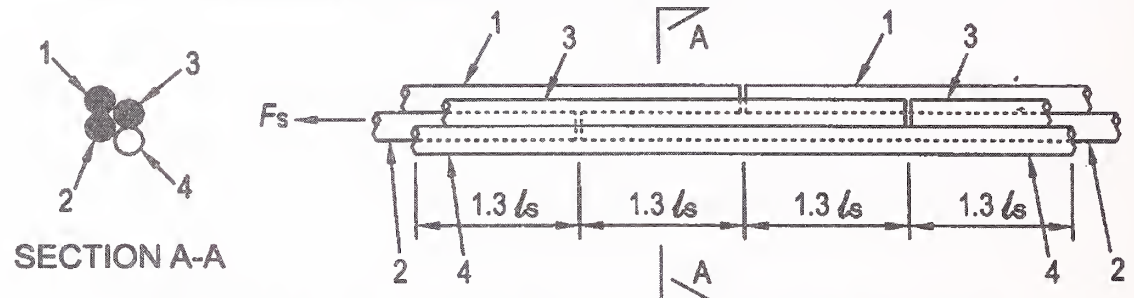
- (1) Bundles of bars in tension may be curtailed over end and intermediate supports. Bundles with an equivalent diameter of less than 32 mm may be curtailed near a support without the need for staggering bars. Bundles with an equivalent diameter of equal to or more than 32 mm which are anchored near a support should be staggered in the longitudinal direction as shown in Fig. 15.7.
- (2) For bars anchored with widely spaced anchor points (E) [Fig.15.7], the diameter of the individual bar may be used in assessing  $l_o$ .



**Widely Spaced Cut-off Points (E) spaced at  $>1.3 l_o$ .**

**Fig. 15.7 Anchorage of Bundles of Bars**

- (3) For compression anchorages bundled bars need not be staggered. For bundles with an equivalent diameter  $\geq 32$  mm, at least four links having a diameter of  $\geq 12$  mm should be provided at the ends of the bundle within distance of  $0.33 l_o$ . One number of further link should be provided just beyond the end of the curtailed bar.



**Fig.15.8 Lap Joint in Tension including a Fourth Bar**

#### 15.2.7.3 *Lapping of bundled bars*

- (1) The lap length should be calculated in accordance with Clause 15.2.7.1 using equivalent diameter of bar.
- (2) Bundles which consist of two bars with an equivalent diameter  $< 32$  mm may be lapped without staggering individual bars. In this case the equivalent bar diameter should be used to calculate  $l_o$ .
- (3) For bundles which consist of two bars with an equivalent diameter of  $\geq 32$  mm, or of three bars, individual bars should be staggered in the longitudinal direction by at least  $1.3 l_o$ . For this case the diameter of a single bar may be used to calculate  $l_o$ . Care should be taken to ensure that there are not more than four bars in any lap cross section.

### 15.3 **Prestressing Units**

#### 15.3.1 **Arrangement of the prestressing tendons/cable ducts**

##### 15.3.1.1 *General*

- (1) The spacing of cable-ducts or pre-tensioned tendons shall be such as to ensure that placing and compacting of the concrete can be carried out satisfactorily and good bond can be attained between the concrete and tendons/ducts.
- (2) In case of post tensioned bonded cables, bundles of more than two ducts are not permitted. A pair of ducts placed horizontally or vertically touching each other may be permitted only in the straight



portion of the cable subject to limitations given below and Fig.15.9.

- Two cables can be grouped horizontally provided each duct diameter is not more than 50 mm.
- Two cables can be grouped vertically provided each duct diameter is not more than 110 mm.
- Two cables shall not be bundled over the curved length of cable in the plane of curvature.

### 15.3.1.2 Concrete cover

The concrete cover between the inner surface of the formwork and either a pre-tensioned tendon or a duct shall be fixed with due regard to the size of the tendons or of the duct, as well as the durability requirements. Minimum cover for pre-tensioned tendons shall be not less than the maximum of the diameter of tendon, nominal aggregate size plus 10 mm, and durability requirement as per Clause 14.3.2.1. The minimum cover for post tensioned ducts shall not be less than 75 mm. Local reduction in cover at externally jointed locations of ducts is acceptable.

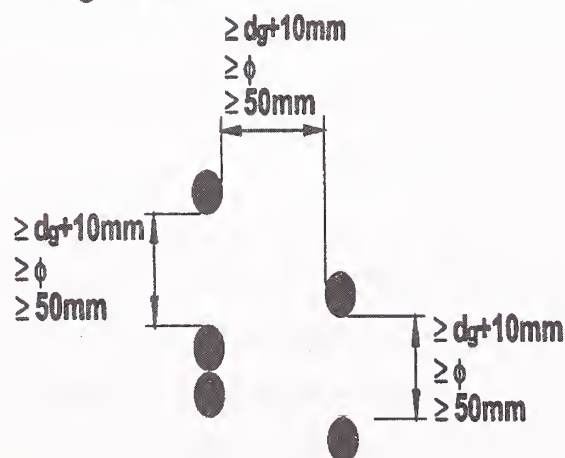
### 15.3.1.3 Horizontal and vertical spacing between cables ducts/tendons

#### 1) Post Tensioning

The minimum clear spacing between individual ducts :

- Between single ducts vertical spacing;  $\geq \phi_{\text{duct}}$  or 50 mm
- Between pair of ducts & next pair  $\geq \phi_{\text{duct}}$  or 50 mm or single duct;

where  $\phi_{\text{duct}}$  denotes the outer diameter of the duct (local reduction in spacing at externally jointed locations of ducts is acceptable).



**Note:** Where  $\phi$  is the diameter of post-tension duct and  $d_g$  is the maximum size of aggregate

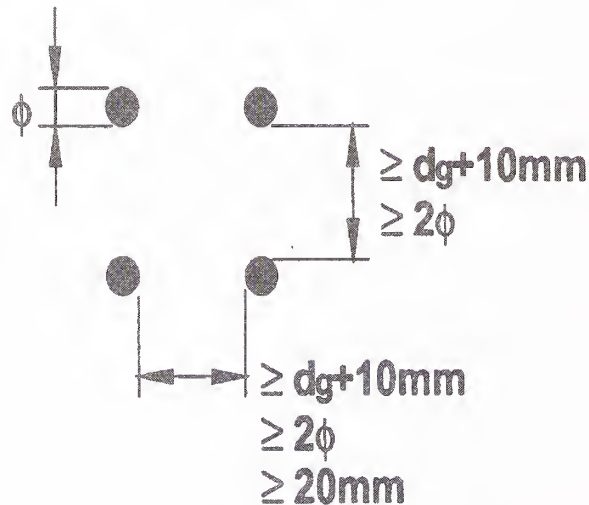
**Fig. 15.9 Minimum Clear Spacing between Ducts**

**(2) Unbonded Embedded Cables**

Spacing and cover requirements for embedded but unbonded post-tensioned tendons are the same as those for bonded cables.

**(3) Pre-Tensioning**

The minimum clear horizontal and vertical spacing of individual tendons is given in Fig.15.10



**Note:** Where  $\phi$  is the diameter of pre-tensioned tendon and  $d_g$  is the maximum size of aggregate

**Fig. 15.10 Minimum Clear Spacing between Pre-tensioned Tendons**

**15.3.1.4** *Cable spacing for thin sections and curved portions of cables*

Refer Clause 7.10 for special checks and additional recommendations.

**15.3.2** **Anchorage and couplers for prestressing tendons**

**15.3.2.1** *Post-tensioning systems*

- (1) The anchorage devices used for post-tensioned tendons and the anchorage lengths in the case of pre-tensioned tendons shall be such as to enable the full design strength of the tendons to be developed.
- (2) Anchorages for post-tensioned tendons shall meet the requirements of Clause 13.2. The specification 13.2.4 are mandatory for new systems. For the established systems, the client/owner may at his discretion ask for fresh tests to verify the suitability of the system.
- (3) Where couplers are used, these shall be so placed that they do not

adversely affect the load carrying capacity of the member and that any temporary anchorage which may be needed during construction can be introduced in a satisfactory manner. The requirements of minimum concrete cover over couplers and reinforcement for bursting and spalling shall be as per the specifications of manufacturers and should be subjected to acceptance tests similar to those covered in 13.2.4 for anchorages.

- (4) In general, couplers should be located away from intermediate supports.
- (5) The use of couplers for more than on 50 percent of the tendons at any cross-section should be avoided.

The distance between any two successive sections at which cables are coupled should not be closer than 1.5 m. for structural members where depth is less than 2.0 m and not closer than 3.0 m. for members of depth greater than 2.0 m.

- (6) If tendons are anchored at a construction joint or within a concrete member (whether on an external rib, within a pocket or entirely inside the member), it should be checked that a minimum residual compressive stress of at least 3 MPa is present in the direction of the anchored prestressing force, under the frequent load combination. If the minimum residual stress is not present, reinforcement should be provided to cater for the local tension beyond terminated tendon near the anchor. The check for residual stress is not required if the tendon is coupled at the anchorage considered.
- (7) Anchorage of tendons in top surface of deck shall not be permitted.
- (8) For tendons anchored in the deck slab and soffit slab, local thickening or blisters shall be so provided that minimum cover to anchorage shall not be less than 200 mm.

#### 15.3.2.2 *Pre-tensioning systems*

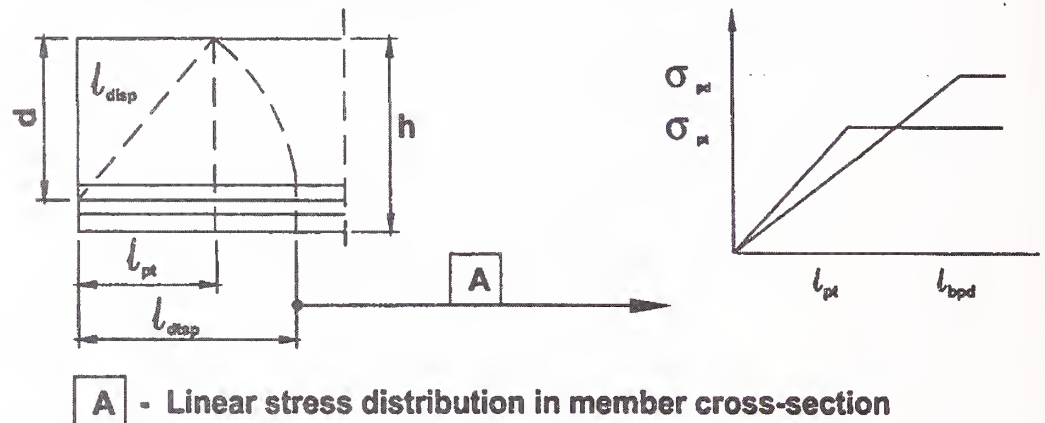
- (1) Anchorage of pre-tensioned tendons

In anchorage regions for pre-tensioned tendons, the following length parameters should be considered, Refer Fig.15.11.

- (a) Transmission length  $l_{pt}$  over which the prestressing force ( $P_o$ ) is fully transmitted to the concrete.



- (b) Dispersion length,  $l_{disp}$  over which the concrete stresses gradually disperse to a linear distribution across the concrete section, is as per Eq. 15.11
- (c) Anchorage length,  $l_{bpd}$  over which the tendon force  $F_{pd}$  in the ultimate limit state is fully anchored in the concrete; see Section 15.3.2.2(3) (d).



**Fig. 15.11 Transfer of Prestress in Pre-tensioned Elements; Length Parameters**

## (2) Transfer of Prestress

- (a) At release of tendons, the prestress may be assumed to be transferred to the concrete by a constant bond stress  $f_{bpt}$  where:

$$f_{bpt} = \eta_{p1} \eta_1 f_{ctd}(t) \quad \text{Eq. 15.7}$$

where

$\eta_{p1}$  = is a coefficient that takes into account the type of tendon and the bond situation at release.

$\eta_{p1}$  = 2.7 for indented wires

$\eta_{p1}$  = 3.2 for 3 and 7-wire strands.

$\eta_1$  = 1.0 for good bond conditions.

= 0.7 otherwise.

$f_{ctd}(t)$  is the design tensile strength at time of release 't' (Refer Clause 6.4.2.3), taken as  $0.7 f_{ctm}(t) / \gamma_c$

**Note:** Values of  $\eta_{p1}$  for types of tendons other than those given above may be obtained by actual testing.

- (b) The basic value of the transmission length,  $l_{pt}$ , is given by:

$$l_{pt} = \frac{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \phi \sigma_{pm0}}{f_{bpt}} \quad \text{Eq. 15.8}$$

where

- $\alpha_1 =$  1.0 for gradual release  
 $=$  1.25 for sudden release  
 $\alpha_2 =$  0.25 for tendons with circular cross section  
 $=$  0.19 for 3 and 7-wire strands  
 $\phi =$  is the nominal diameter of tendon  
 $\sigma_{pm0} =$  is the tendon stress just after release

- (c) The design value of the transmission length should be taken depending on the design situation, given in Eq. 15.9 or 15.10.

$$l_{pt1} = 0.8 l_{pt} \quad \text{Eq. 15.9}$$

OR

$$l_{pt2} = 1.2 l_{pt} \quad \text{Eq. 15.10}$$

Note :The lower value is used for verification of local stresses at release, the higher value for ultimate limit states (shear, anchorage etc.).

- (d) Concrete stresses may be assumed to have a linear distribution outside the dispersion length.

$$l_{disp} = \sqrt{l_{pt}^2 + d^2} \quad (\text{Refer Fig. 15.11}) \quad \text{Eq. 15.11}$$

- (e) Alternative build-up of prestress may be assumed, if adequately justified and if the transmission length is modified accordingly.

### (3) Anchorage of Tensile Force for the Ultimate Limit State

- (a) The anchorage of tendons should be checked in sections where the concrete tensile stress exceeds  $f_{ctk0.05}$ . The tendon forces should be calculated for a cracked section, including the effect of

shear according to Section 10.3.3.3(6). Where the concrete tensile stress is less than  $f_{ctk,0.05}$  no anchorage check is necessary.

(b) The bond strength for anchorage in the ultimate limit state is:

$$f_{bpd} = \eta_{p2} \eta_1 f_{ctd} \quad \text{Eq. 15.12}$$

where

$\eta_{p2}$  is a coefficient that takes into account the type of tendon and the bond situation at anchorage

= 1.4 for indented wires or

= 1.2 for 7-wire strands

$\eta_1$  is as defined in Eq. 15.7.

(c) Due to increasing brittleness with higher concrete strength,  $f_{ctk,0.05}$  should here be limited to the value for M75.

(d) The total anchorage length for anchoring a tendon with stress  $\sigma_{pd}$  is:

$$l_{bpd} = l_{pt2} + \alpha_2 \phi (\sigma_{pd} - \sigma_{pm,\infty}) / f_{bpd} \quad \text{Eq. 15.13}$$

where

$l_{pt2}$  is the upper design value of transmission length =  $1.2 l_{pt}$

$\alpha_2$  as defined in Clause 15.3.2.2 (2)

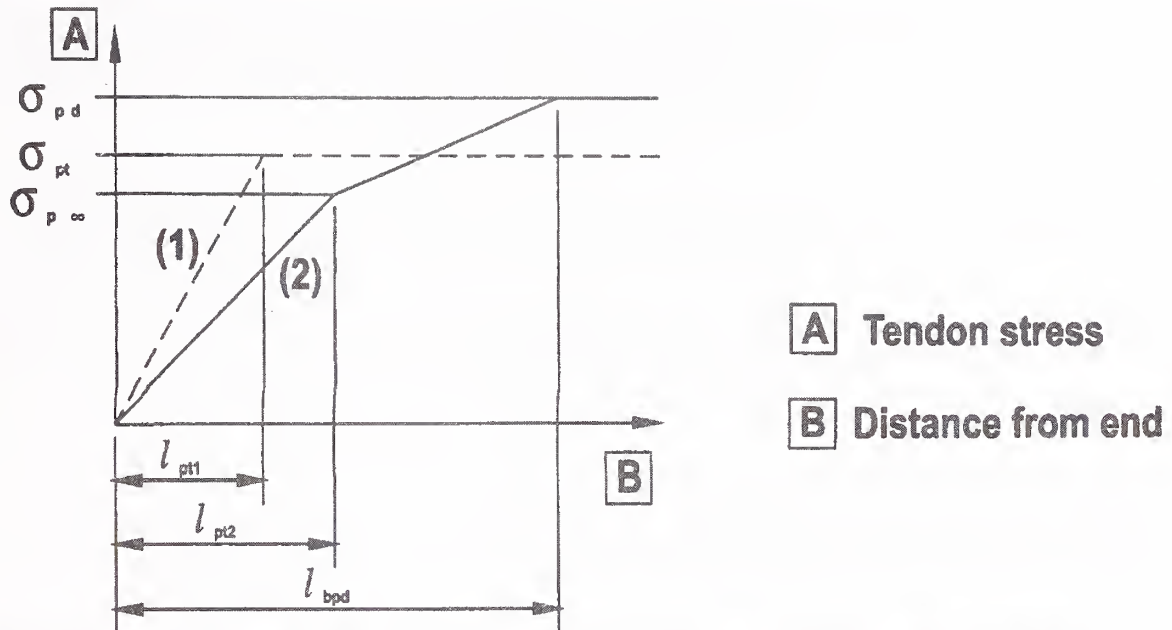
$\sigma_{pd}$  is the tendon stress corresponding to the force described in (a)

$\sigma_{pm,\infty}$  is the prestress after all losses

(e) Tendon stresses in the anchorage zone are illustrated in Fig. 15.12.

(f) In case of combination of ordinary and pre-tensioned reinforcement, within the same zone of concrete the anchorage capacities of each may be separately calculated and added for design verification.





**Fig.15.12 Stresses in the Anchorage Zone of Pre-Tensioned Members:**  
**Curve (1) At Release of Tendons, Curve (2) At Ultimate Limit State.**

#### (4) Deviators

(a) A deviator shall satisfy the following requirements:

- Withstand both longitudinal and transverse forces that the tendon applies to it and transmit these forces to the structure;
- ensure that the radius of curvature of the prestressing tendon does not cause any overstressing or damage to it.

(b) In the deviation zones the tubes forming the sheaths shall be able to sustain the radial pressure and longitudinal movement of the prestressing tendon, without damage and without impairing its proper functioning.

(c) The radius of curvature of the tendon in a deviation zone shall not be less than 40 times the diameter of wire/strand.

(d) Designed tendon deviations up to an angle of 0.01 radians may be permitted without using a deviator. The forces developed by the change of angle shall be considered in design.

## 15.4 Coated Steels

For coated steel, the bond is affected by coating system and the details of manufacture. The following values may be used:

- (1) For fusion bonded epoxy coated high yield strength deformed bars

(HYSD) and prestressing tendons, bond values given in previous Sections shall be reduced by 20 percent, and anchorage and lap lengths increased by 25 percent.

The factor of 0.7 for reduction of above modified lap length to account for hooks and bends, shall remain unchanged.

- (2) For galvanised and stainless steel, the bond is to be taken the same as for non-galvanised steel.

---

## SECTION 16 DETAILING REQUIREMENTS OF STRUCTURAL MEMBERS

### 16.1 General

- (1) Detailing requirements given below are in addition to those given in Section 15.
- (2) Minimum areas of reinforcement are given in order to prevent a brittle failure, wide cracks and also to resist forces arising from restrained actions.
- (3) In addition to the detailing of reinforcement and prestressing steel, the dimensional restrictions on various types of elements are also covered.

### 16.2 Columns of Solid Section

#### 16.2.1 Sectional dimensions

- (1) These Clauses deal with columns of any cross-sectional shape for which the larger dimension of solid concrete section is not greater than 4 times the smaller dimension of the concrete section.
- (2) For purpose of this Section, columns are classified in two types (i) Pedestal columns and (ii) Other columns.

Pedestal columns are defined as those columns for which length/least radius of gyration is less than 12.

#### 16.2.2 Longitudinal reinforcement

- (1) Longitudinal reinforcement for pedestal columns shall not be less than 0.15 percent of cross-sectional area of concrete.
- (2) For other columns, bar diameter shall not be less than 12 mm and spacing measured along periphery of column, not more than 200 mm.
- (3) For other columns, the minimum cross-sectional area of total longitudinal reinforcement  $A_{s, \min}$  should be derived from the following condition:

$$A_{s, \min} = \frac{0.10 N_{ED}}{f_{yd}} \text{ or } 0.002 A_c \text{ which ever is greater}$$



where

$f_{yd}$  is the design yield strength of the reinforcement,

$N_{Ed}$  is the design axial compression force.

$A_c$  is the gross cross-sectional area of concrete.

- (4) The maximum cross-sectional area of reinforcement, outside lap portion shall not be more than  $0.04 A_c$ . At lap section, it shall not be greater than  $0.08 A_c$ .
- (5) The longitudinal bars should be distributed around the periphery of the section. For columns of circular cross-section the minimum number of bars is six. For columns having a regular polygonal cross section or having two adjacent surfaces meeting at any angle, at least one bar shall be placed near the junction of the two surfaces.

### 16.2.3 Transverse reinforcement

Concrete columns shall have transverse reinforcement to hold the longitudinal reinforcement in place and avoid its buckling. The transverse reinforcement shall be in the form of lateral ties (polygonal links), circular rings, helix and open ties, used singly or in combination as required.

- (1) Helical reinforcement intended for making use of increased load capacity by confinement of concrete, shall satisfy requirements in (i) & (ii) in addition to other requirements given in (2) to (9).
  - (i) The end of helical reinforcement consisting of evenly spaced helical turns shall be properly anchored. The splicing of the helical turns shall be made by welding or by a lap of one and a half turns.
  - (ii) The pitch of the helical turns shall not be more than 75 mm nor more than one sixth the diameter of the core of the column.
- (2) The diameter of the transverse reinforcement shall not be less than 8 mm or one quarter of the maximum diameter of the longitudinal bar, whichever is greater.
- (3) The transverse reinforcement shall be adequately anchored.
- (4) The spacing of the transverse reinforcement along the column axis shall not exceed the lesser of the following:
  - 12 times the minimum diameter of the longitudinal bars,

- the least dimension of the column,
  - 200 mm
- (5) At location of laps, the transverse reinforcement shall satisfy requirements of Clause 15.2.5.1.(3)
  - (6) Where the direction of the longitudinal bar changes (e.g. at changes in column size), the spacing of transverse reinforcement should be calculated, taking account of the lateral forces involved. These effects may be ignored if the change of direction is less than or equal to 1 in 12.
  - (7) At the location of change in dimension of concrete section (e.g. flaring of section) transverse reinforcement should be provided to balance internal transverse tensile stresses in concrete.
  - (8) Every longitudinal bar (or group of longitudinal bars) placed at a corner should be held in two directions by transverse reinforcement. The included angle between these two directions should not be more than 135 degrees.
  - (9) A maximum of 3 bars on one face and not more than 5 bars on two faces meeting at each corner including the corner bar, can be secured against buckling by any one set of transverse reinforcement. The distance of the farthest bar thus supported from the corner of column shall not be more than 150 mm.
  - (10) No bar within a compression zone should be further than 150 mm from a restrained bar.

### 16.3

#### R.C. Walls and Wall Type Piers

- (1) These clauses deal with reinforced concrete walls of which the larger dimension measured horizontally is more than four times the smaller dimension.
- (2) The amount and proper detailing of reinforcement may be derived from FEM analysis or strut-and-tie model within the dispersal zone of concentrated loads. For walls subjected to predominantly out of plane bending, the rules of slab apply if they are more severe.

#### 16.3.1

##### Vertical reinforcement

- (1) The diameter of bar should not be less than 12 mm.
- (2) The total area of the vertical reinforcement should be between  $0.0024 A_c$  and  $0.04 A_c$  outside the locations of laps of vertical steel.



- (3) This reinforcement should be provided at two faces taking into account the direct axial force and biaxial bending, but shall not be less than  $0.0012 A_c$  on either face.
- (4) The distance between two adjacent vertical bars shall not exceed 200 mm.

### **16.3.2 Horizontal reinforcement**

- (1) Horizontal reinforcement running parallel to the faces of the wall should be provided and arranged at each surface between the vertical reinforcement and the nearest surface. The area of total horizontal reinforcement should not be less than 25 percent of the area of total vertical reinforcement or  $0.001A_c$  whichever is greater.
- (2) The spacing between two adjacent horizontal bars shall not be more than 300 mm.
- (3) The diameter shall not be less than one quarter of that of the largest diameter of vertical bars, nor less than 8 mm.

### **16.3.3 Transverse reinforcement**

If the area of the load carrying vertical reinforcement in two faces exceeds  $0.02 A_c$  this reinforcement should be enclosed by stirrups in accordance with Clause 16.2.3 for columns.

## **16.4 Hollow Piers/Columns**

Hollow piers/columns shall satisfy all of the following conditions:

- (1) The largest overall dimension is not greater than four times the smallest overall dimension.
- (2) The height is such that the ratio of effective length to radius of gyration is not less than 12.
- (3) The two ends are capped by solid structural members of sufficient thickness to ensure that for unit as a whole, the plane sections remain plane under action of axial load and bending. A solid reinforced concrete slab, having thickness not less than  $1/3^{\text{rd}}$  the size of clear inside dimension of the hollow section in the direction of spanning of the slab and integrally connected to the walls of the hollow pier/column, may be considered to fulfil the requirement.
- (4) The wall thickness shall not be less than 300 mm.

### **16.4.1 Detailing rules**

- (1) For wall type pier of non-circular hollow section with length less than four times the width, the rules for solid columns stipulated in Clause 16.2 will apply.



- (2) For wall type pier of non-circular of hollow section with length more than 4 times the width, the rules as per Clause 16.3 will apply.

## 16.5 Beams

### 16.5.1 Longitudinal reinforcement

#### 16.5.1.1 Minimum and maximum reinforcement percentage

- (1) The effective cross-sectional area of the longitudinal tensile reinforcement should be not less than that required to control cracking (Section 12), nor less than  $A_{s,min}$  where,

$$A_{s,min} = 0.26 \frac{f_{ctm}}{f_{yk}} b_t d \text{ but not less than } 0.0013 b_t d \quad \text{Eq. 16.1}$$

where

$b_t$  denotes the mean width of the tension zone; for a T-beam or L-beam with the flanges in compression, only the width of the web is taken into account in calculating the value of  $b_t$ .

$f_{ctm}$  should be determined with respect to the relevant strength class.

- (2) The cross-sectional areas of the tension reinforcement shall not be greater than  $0.025A_c$  at sections other than at laps. The total of tension and compression reinforcement shall not exceed  $0.04 A_c$  at a section.

#### 16.5.1.2 Tensile steel in flanged section

The total amount of tensile reinforcement  $A_s$  of a flanged cross-section (e.g. at intermediate supports of continuous T-beam) may be divided approximately equally over the effective width of the flange (Refer Fig. 16.1).

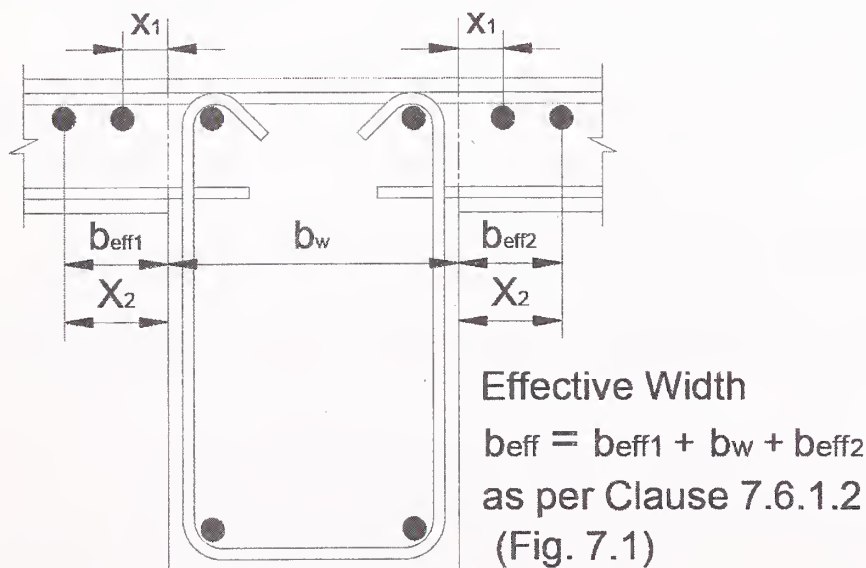


Fig. 16.1 Internal and External Parts of a T-Beam

### 16.5.1.3 Length of the longitudinal tension reinforcement and anchorage in tension zone

The curtailment of longitudinal steel and anchorage of the same in tension zone is done as described below with help of Fig. 16.2.

- (1)  $F_s$  is the tensile force in the longitudinal reinforcement obtained by a cross-section analysis according to Sections 8 & 9 including effect of axial force in member, if any.
- (2) For members with shear reinforcement the additional tensile force should be calculated from  $\Delta F_{td} = 0.5V_{ED} (\cot \theta - \cot \alpha)$ . The total force  $\frac{M_{Ed}}{z} + \Delta F_{td}$  should be taken not greater than  $\frac{M_{Ed,max}}{z}$  where  $M_{Ed,max}$  is the maximum moment along the beam.
- (3) For members without shear reinforcement  $\Delta F_{td}$  may be estimated by shifting the moment curve a distance  $a_l = d$  in unfavourable direction according to Clause 10.3.2(6). This 'shift rule' may also be used as an alternative for members with shear reinforcement,

where

$$a_l = z \left( \frac{\cot \theta - \cot \alpha}{2} \right) \quad \text{Eq. 16.2}$$

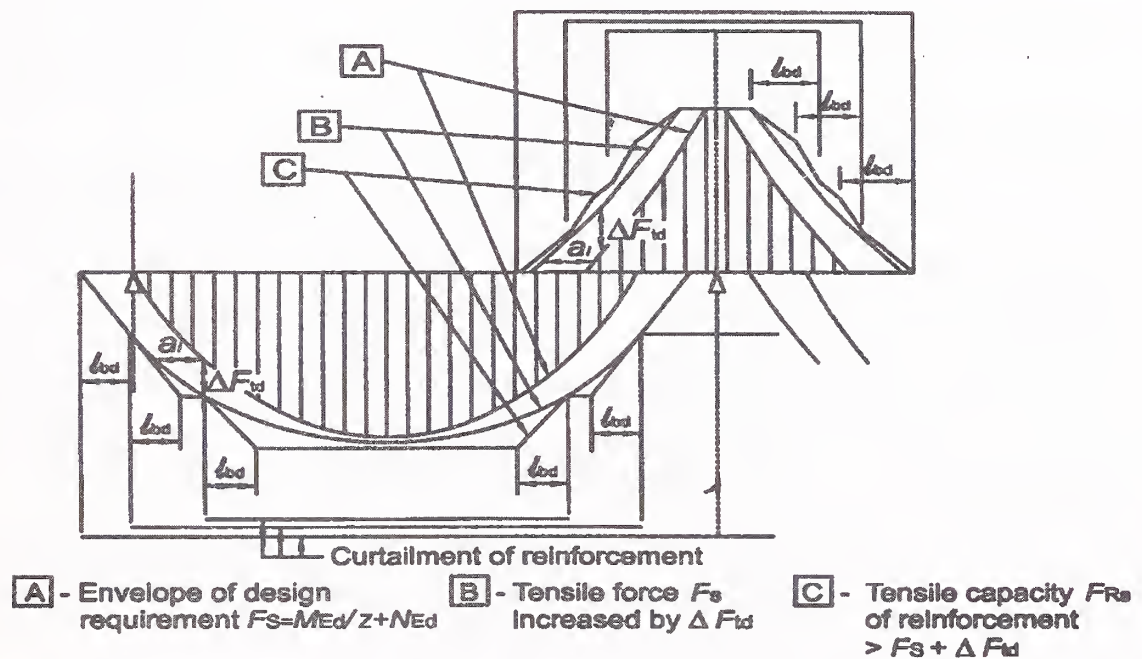
where  $\theta$  is the angle of the concrete strut with the longitudinal axis for the shear reinforcement calculated according to the variable strut inclination method, as per Section 10.

The additional tensile force is illustrated in Fig. 16.2.

- (4) The envelope line of the tensile force carried by the longitudinal reinforcement is obtained by a horizontal displacement ' $a_l$ ' of the envelop line of  $F_s$ .
- (5) The resistance of bars within their anchorage lengths may be taken into account, assuming a linear variation of force as shown in Fig. 16.2. As a simplification this contribution may be ignored.
- (6) For reinforcement in the flange, placed outside the web  $a_l$  should be further increased by the distance equal to the distance of the bar from the web. (distance  $X_1, X_2$  in Fig. 16.1) .
- (7) Curtailed reinforcement should be effectively anchored beyond point

where it is no longer required. The anchorage length ( $l_a$ ) should not be less than larger of distance ' $d$ ' or  $l_{b,net}$  where ' $d$ ' is the effective depth of member and  $l_{b,net}$  is calculated as per Eq. 15.2 of Section 15.

- (8) The diagram of the resisting tensile forces should lie outside the envelope line of the acting tensile force, displaced as described above.
- (9) The anchorage lengths of bent-up bars which contribute to the resistance to shear should be not less than  $1.3 l_{b,net}$  when anchored in the tension zone and  $0.7 l_{b,net}$  when anchored in the compression zone.



**Fig. 16.2 Curtailment of longitudinal reinforcement**

#### 16.5.1.4

##### *Anchorage of span reinforcement at an end support*

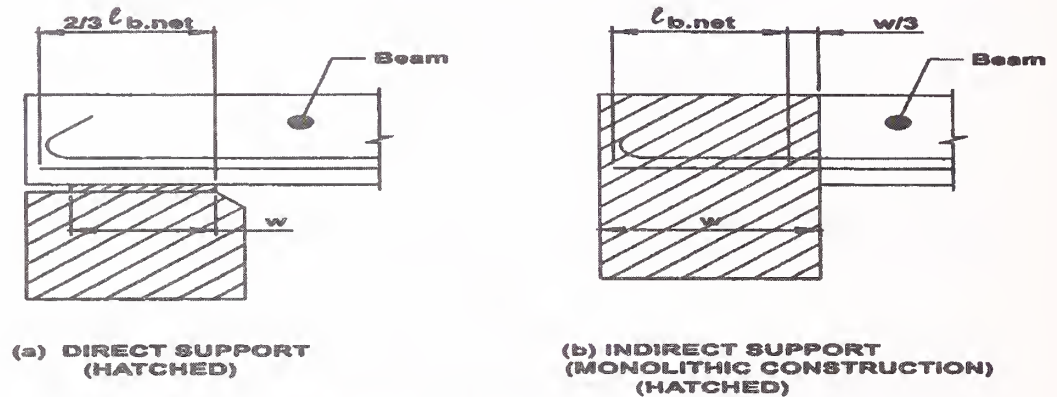
- (1) Over supports with little or no end fixity it is necessary to retain not less than one-quarter of the maximum reinforcement in the span.
- (2) The anchorage of the reinforcement should be capable of resisting a tensile force of:

$$F_s = V_{Ed} \cdot \frac{a_1}{d} + N_{Ed} \quad \text{Eq. 16.3}$$

Where  $N_{Ed}$  denotes the design axial force taken by the steel, and  $V_{Ed}$  as defined in Section 10, and  $a_1$  as defined in Clause 16.5.1.3.  $N_{Ed}$  is taken as positive if it is tensile and negative if it is compressive.



- (3) (a) For a direct support [Refer Fig.16.3(a)] the anchorage length is measured from the line of contact between the beam and its support. It should be minimum as  $\frac{2}{3} l_{b.net}$ .
- (b) For an indirect support [Refer Fig.16.3 (b)]  $l_{b.net}$  is taken from distance  $\frac{w}{3}$  from the face of support, where  $w$  is total width of the support with  $l_{b.net}$  taken according to Eq. 15.2 of Section 15.

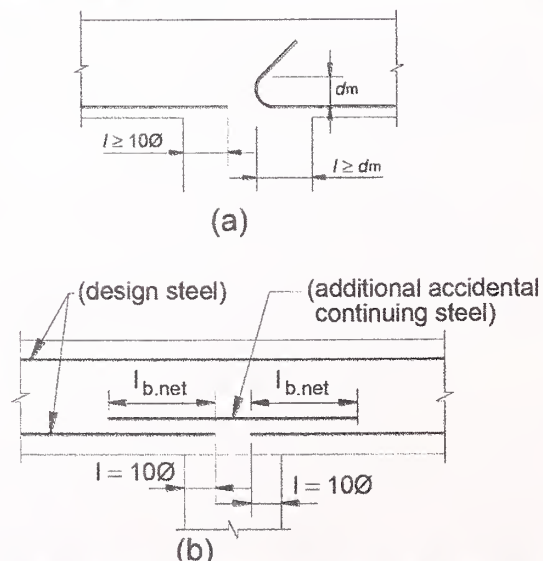


**Fig. 16.3 Anchorage End Supports**

#### 16.5.1.5

#### *Anchorage of span reinforcement at intermediate supports*

- (1) Amount of span reinforcement (steel for sagging moment) carried upto and over intermediate support should not be less than one quarter of steel present in span.
- (2) Anchorage should have a length of not less than  $10 \varnothing$  for straight bars or not less than the diameter of the mandrel for hooks and bends, as shown in Fig. 16.4.



**Fig. 16.4 Anchorage at Intermediate Supports**

**16.5.2****Shear reinforcement**

- (1) The shear reinforcement should form an angle of 45° to 90° with the longitudinal axis of the structural element.
- (2) The shear reinforcement may consist of a combination of
  - (a) Links enclosing the longitudinal tensile reinforcement as well as the compression zone of concrete,
  - (b) Bent-up bars;
  - (c) Shear assemblies in the form of cages, ladders etc. of HYSD bars which do not enclose the longitudinal reinforcement, but are properly anchored both in the compression and tension zones.
- (3) At least 50 percent of the necessary shear reinforcement should be in the form of links.
- (4) Links should be effectively anchored. A lap joint may be allowed in web only for high yield strength deformed bars.
- (5) The shear reinforcement ratio is given by Eq. 16.4

$$\rho_w = \frac{A_{sw}}{s.b_w \sin \alpha} \quad \text{Eq. 16.4}$$

The minimum value  $\rho_{w.min}$  for  $\rho_w$  is as given by:

$$\rho_{w.min} = \frac{(0.072\sqrt{f_{ck}})}{f_{yk}} \quad \text{Eq. 16.5}$$

In above equations:

$\rho_w$  = is the shear reinforcement ratio.

$A_{sw}$  = is the area of shear reinforcement within lengths.

$s$  = is the spacing of the shear reinforcement, measured along longitudinal axis of the member.

$b_w$  = is the minimum breadth of the web of the member.

$\alpha$  = is the angle between the shear reinforcement and the longitudinal axis (i.e. for vertical stirrups  $\alpha = 90^\circ$  and  $\sin \alpha = 1$ ).

- (6) The minimum clear distance between vertical legs of shear reinforcement should be largest of :

- $d_g + 10 \text{ mm}$

- 40 mm
  - $2 \phi$  of shear Reinforcement.
- (7) The maximum longitudinal spacing  $s_{l,max}$  of successive series of stirrups or shear assemblies should not exceed  $s_{l,max}$ , where,

$$s_{l,max} = 0.75d(1 + \cot \alpha) \quad \text{Eq, 16.6}$$

- (8) The maximum longitudinal spacing of bent-up bars should not exceed  $s_{b,max}$  where,

$$s_{b,max} = 0.6 d (1 + \cot \alpha) \quad \text{Eq, 16.7}$$

- (9) The transverse spacing of the legs in a series of shear links should not exceed:

$$s_{t,max} = 0.75d \leq 600 \text{ mm} \quad \text{Eq. 16.8}$$

### 16.5.3 Torsional reinforcement

- (1) The torsion links should consist of fully closed loops formed by lapping straight portions which have bents or hooks at free ends. The links should form an angle of  $90^\circ$  with the axis of the structural element.
- (2) The provisions of Clause 16.5.2 (5) and (7) are generally sufficient to provide the minimum torsion links required.
- (3) The longitudinal bars should be so arranged that there is at least one bar at each corner, the others being distributed uniformly around the inner periphery of the links, spaced at not more than 350 mm centres
- (4) The longitudinal spacing of the torsion links should not exceed  $1/8$ th of the outer perimeter of the member.
- (5) The spacing in (4) above should also satisfy the requirements in Clause 16.5.2 (7) for maximum spacing of links.

### 16.5.4 Surface reinforcement

- (1) In certain cases, (e.g. clear cover to main reinforcement being larger than 50 mm and in webs) it may be necessary to provide surface reinforcement, either to control cracking or to ensure adequate resistance to spalling of the cover.
- (2) Surface reinforcement to control cracking in webs should normally be provided in beams over 1 m deep. It should be provided in two



directions, parallel and orthogonal to main tension reinforcement in the beam. The maximum spacing of bars shall be 200 mm. The reinforcement already provided from other considerations can be taken into account to cover this requirement.

- (3) The requirements of minimum cover needed for reinforcing bars also apply to surface reinforcement.
- (4) The area of surface reinforcement  $A_{s.sur}$  should be not less than  $0.01 A_{ct.ext}$  where  $A_{ct.ext}$  is the area of cover portion outside the stirrups/links.
- (5) The longitudinal bars of the surface reinforcement may be taken into account as a part of longitudinal bending reinforcement and the transverse bars as a part of shear reinforcement provided that they meet the requirements for the arrangement and anchorage of these types of reinforcement.
- (6) Any surface reinforcement in prestressed beams can be taken into account while calculating surface steel as required by (4) above.

## **16.6 Solid Slabs**

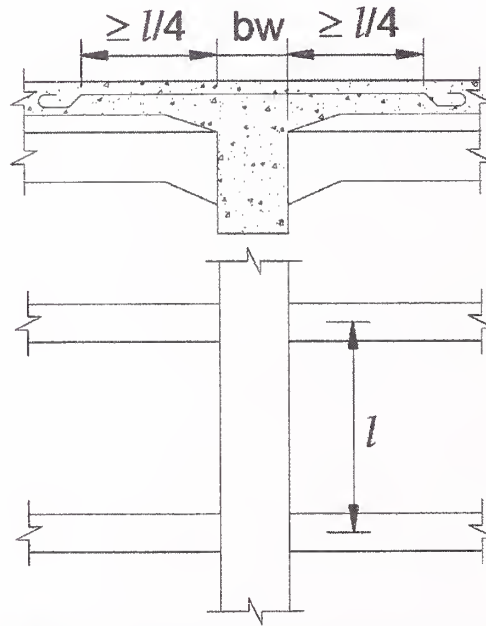
This Clause applies to two-way and one-way solid slabs, where effective span to thickness ratio is equal to or greater than 5 in both directions for two-way slabs and in the direction of span for one-way slab.

### **16.6.1 Flexural reinforcement**

#### **16.6.1.1 General**

- (1) For curtailment of the main reinforcement, clauses for beam given in Clause 16.5.1.3 apply.
- (2) The minimum and maximum steel percentages in the main direction should be as for beam given in Clause 16.5.1.1.
- (3) Secondary transverse reinforcement should be provided in one-way slab. This should be at least 20 percent of the main reinforcement.
- (4) The maximum spacing of the bars for structural purposes is as follows where 'h' denotes the total depth of the slab:
  - For the principal reinforcement in one-way slab and reinforcement in both directions in two-way slab :  $S_{max}$  shall be lesser of  $2h$  or 250 mm.

- For secondary reinforcement in one way slab  $S_{max}$  shall be lesser of 3 h or 400 mm.
- (5) For slabs provided with shear reinforcement, additional force in the main longitudinal reinforcement as per Clause 16.5.1.3 shall be considered, taking  $a_e$  = effective depth.
- (6) Rules as per Clause 16.5.1.3 also apply to slabs.
- (7) Where the principal reinforcement in a slab which is considered as the flange of a T-beam or L-beam is parallel to the beam, transverse reinforcement shall be provided at the top of the flange. This reinforcement shall not be less than sixty percent of the main reinforcement of the slab at its mid-span unless it is specially calculated. The length of such reinforcing bars shall be as indicated in Fig. 16.5.



**Fig. 16.5 Provision of Reinforcing Bars**

#### 16.6.1.2 Anchorage of bottom main steel at intermediate supports

The anchorage should have a minimum length of  $10 \phi$  for straight bars or not less than the diameter of mandrel for hooks and bends. Refer Fig.16.3.

#### 16.6.1.3 Reinforcement in slabs near end supports

- (1) In slabs, half the calculated span reinforcement should continue up to the support and be anchored therein. For end supports, rule given in Clause 16.5.1.4 applies for measuring anchorage length.

- (2) The anchorage of reinforcement should be capable of resisting a tensile force :

$$F_s = V_{sd} \cdot \frac{a_l}{d} + N_{sd} \quad \text{Eq. 16.9}$$

where

$N_{sd}$  is the axial tensile force in the slab

$d$  is effective depth of slab and

$a_l$  is as defined in Clause 16.5.1.3.

- (3) Where partial fixity occurs along one side of slab, but is not taken into account in the analysis, the top reinforcement should be capable of resisting not less than 25 percent of the maximum moment in the span. This reinforcement should be provided for length of not less than 0.2 times the adjacent span measured from the inner face of the support.

#### 16.6.1.4 Reinforcement at the free edges

- (1) Stiffening of unsupported edge

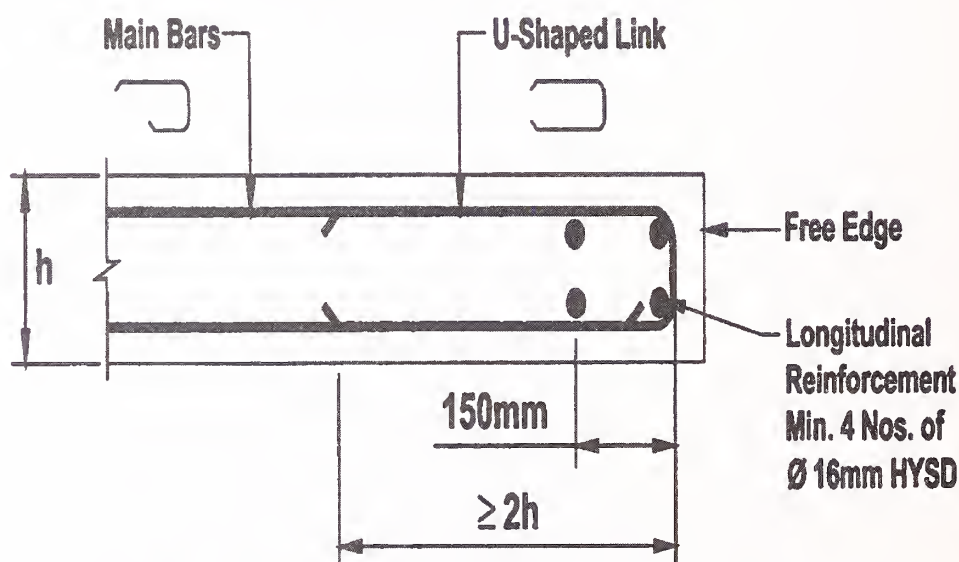
Unsupported slabs carrying vehicular live load (or accidental wheel load) shall be suitably stiffened as indicated below:

- (a) Each unsupported edge of a slab parallel to traffic and beyond the clear road width, shall be so stiffened as to give a resisting moment for any type of flexure equal to or in excess of that of a 500 mm strip of the main roadway slab adjoining the edge. In case of a roadway slab of uniform depth, whether the reinforcement is one-way (parallel to or across the traffic) or two-way, the maximum resisting moment of the roadway slab adjoining the edge and given by a 500 mm strip in any direction shall be taken as the criterion for the resisting moment of the stiffened edge. When the roadway slab is of varying depth in the direction parallel to the edge concerned, the stiffening at any particular point along the length of edge shall be adjusted according to the resisting moment of the 500 mm adjacent strip at that particular point.

Stiffening of edge may consist of a reinforced kerb section, or an edge stiffening beam. Where concrete crash barriers are provided over the full length of free edge, they may be considered as stiffening beams.



- (b) Unsupported edge along a line across the traffic of a roadway slab (as at the cantilever end of a solid slab cantilever bridge) shall be suitably stiffened for a strip of at least 500 mm width by providing top and bottom reinforcement across the direction of traffic in addition to that required for articulation and local strengthening for expansion joint, if any. In this strip, the top and bottom reinforcement each shall not be less than the average area of longitudinal reinforcement for 500 mm width at the end of the cantilever.
- (2) For other cases where end stiffening is not required to carry traffic across, detailing shall be as follows:
  - (a) Along a free (unsupported) edge, a slab should normally contain longitudinal and transverse reinforcement generally arranged as shown in Fig. 16.6.
  - (b) The normal reinforcement provided for a slab may be detailed in such a way as to act as edge reinforcement.



**Fig. 16.6 Edge Reinforcement for Slab**

#### 16.6.1.5 Corner reinforcement

If the detailing arrangements at a support are such that lifting of the slab at a corner is restrained, suitable reinforcement should be provided.

#### 16.6.2 Shear reinforcement

- (1) A slab in which shear reinforcement is provided should have a depth of at least 200 mm.

- (2) In detailing the shear reinforcement, Clause 16.5.2 applies except where modified by the following rules.
- (3) In slabs if  $V_{Ed} \leq \frac{1}{3} V_{RD,max}$ . (Refer Section 12), the shear reinforcement may consist entirely of bent-up bars or of shear assemblies.
- (4) The maximum longitudinal spacing of bent-up bars is  $S_{max} = d$ .
- (5) The maximum longitudinal spacing of successive series of links is given by :

$$s_{max} = 0.75d(1 + \cot \alpha) \quad \text{Eq. 16.10}$$

where  $\alpha$  is inclination of shear reinforcement.

## 16.7 Corbels

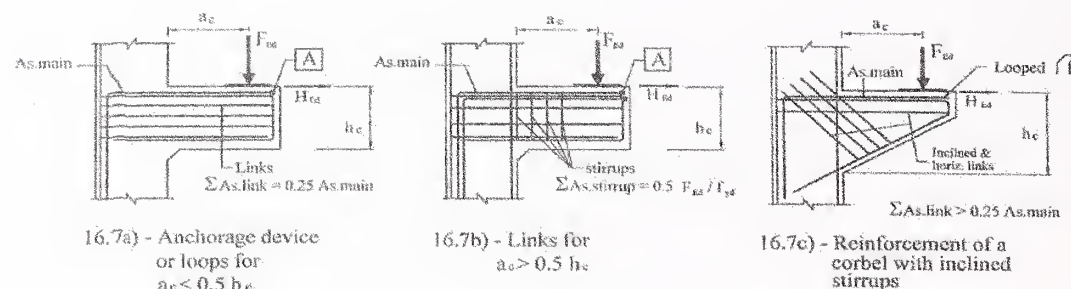
### 16.7.1 General

- (1) Corbels may be designed by using strut and tie model. The inclination of strut with respect to axial direction of the member to which corbel is attached, should lie between  $22^\circ$  and  $45^\circ$
- (2) The reinforcement, corresponding to the ties designed using strut and tie model should be fully anchored beyond the node under the bearing plate, by using U-hoops or anchorage devices such as welding to a cross bar, unless a length  $l_{b,net}$  is available between the node and the front of the corbel.  $l_{b,net}$  should be measured beyond the full width of compressive strut. It shall be fully anchored at the other end in the body of the member to which the bracket is attached.
- (3) In corbels with  $a_c \leq 0.5 h_c$  closed horizontal or inclined links with area  $A_{s,link}$  shall be provided in addition to the main tension reinforcement as shown in Fig.16.7(a) or Fig. 16.7(c), where:

$$A_{s,link} > 0.25 A_{s,main} \quad \text{Eq. 16.11}$$

- (4) In corbels with  $a_c > 0.5 h_c$  and  $F_{Ed} > V_{Rd,c}$  (Refer Section 10) closed vertical stirrups with area  $A_{s,stirrup}$  shall be provided in addition to the main tension reinforcement as shown in Fig. 16.7 (b), where:

$$A_{s,stirrup} \geq 0.5 F_{Ed}/f_{yd} \quad \text{Eq. 16.12}$$



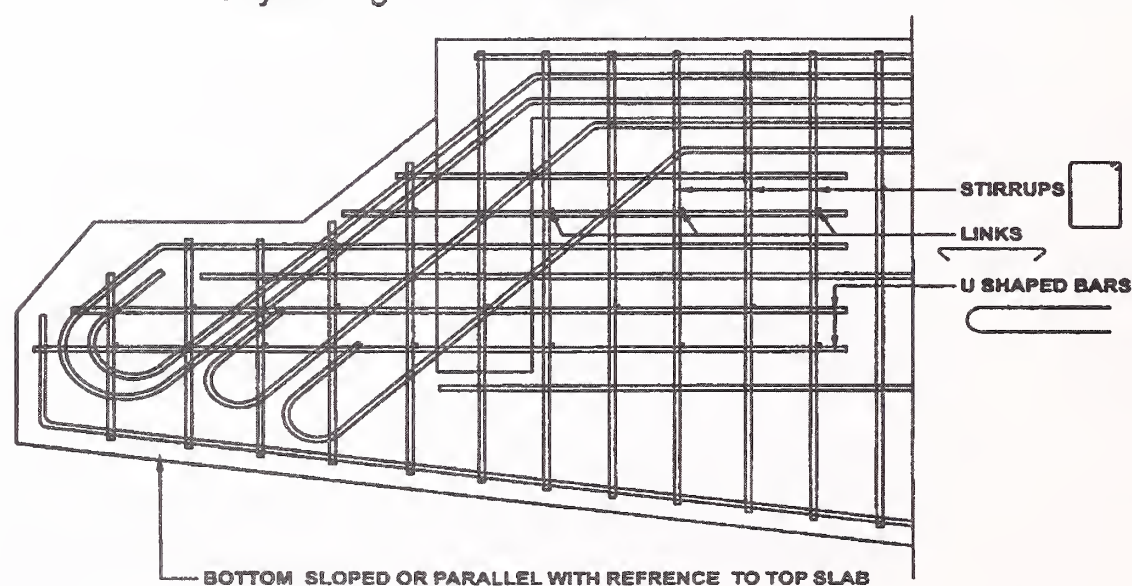
[A] - Anchorage device or loops

**Note:** Provide chamfer to avoid re-entrant corners in 16.7a) 16.7b) and 16.7c)

**Fig. 16.7 Reinforcement of a Corbel**

## 16.8 Articulations

- (1) The articulation acts analogously to the corbels, except that the local bearing load is distributed to full section by inclined tensile steel.
- (2) The general shape and arrangement of reinforcement shall be as shown in Fig.16.8. The design of bearings at articulations shall ensure that concentrated edge stresses will not be induced and the angular rotation of the cantilevers and the suspended span is possible without any damage to the articulation.



**Fig.16.8 Articulation – General Shape and Arrangement of Reinforcement**

## 16.9 Deep Beams

- (1) Deep beams (span/depth ratio less than 3) can be designed using appropriate elastic models or by plastic methods.
- (2) Generally, detailing rules for anchorages and laps given in Section 15 apply to the design of reinforcement.



- (3) The reinforcement corresponding to the ties, designed using strut and tie model, should be fully anchored beyond the nodes by bending up the bars, by using U hoops or by anchorage devices unless a sufficient length is available between the node and the end of the beam permitting an anchorage length of  $l_{b,net}$ .
- (4) Deep beams should normally be provided with a distributed reinforcement on both sides, the effect of each being equivalent to that of an orthogonal mesh with a reinforcement ratio of at least 0.15 percent in both directions, but not less than 150 mm<sup>2</sup> per metre in each face and in each direction. The spacing shall not exceed 200 mm.

## 16.10 Members with Unbonded Tendons

For members with only unbonded tendons, requirements for reinforced concrete elements apply.

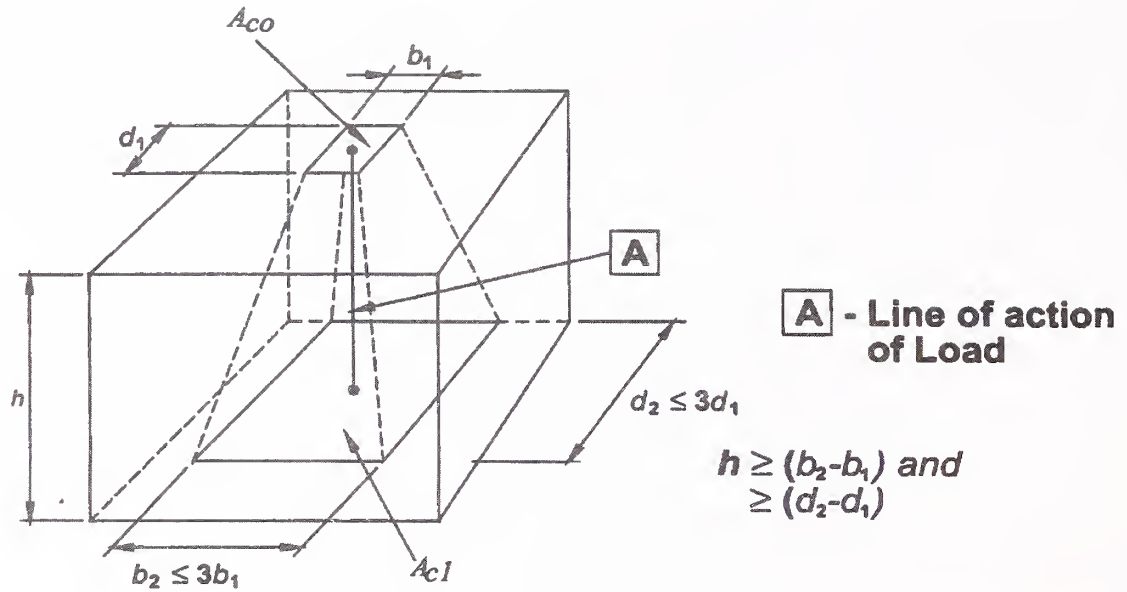
For members with a combination of bonded and unbonded tendons, requirements for prestressed concrete members with bonded tendons apply.

Crack width may be calculated according to Clause 12.3.4 and Clause 12.3.5. Alternatively, limiting maximum bar size or spacing as per Clause 12.3.6 may be deemed to satisfy crack control criteria for reinforced concrete members.

## 16.11 Concentrated Forces

### 16.11.1 General

- (1) Where one or more concentrated forces act at the end of a member or at the intersection of two structural members, local supplementary reinforcement should be provided capable of resisting the transverse tensile forces caused by these forces.
- (2) This supplementary reinforcement may consist of links or of layers of reinforcement bent in the shape of hair pins.
- (3) For uniform distribution of load on area  $A_{co}$ , (Fig. 16.9), the concentrated resistance force can be determined as follows:



**Fig. 16.9 Design Distribution for Partially Loaded Areas**

$$F_{Rdu} = A_{co} f_{cd} \sqrt{\frac{A_{cl}}{A_{co}}} \leq 3 f_{cd} A_{co}$$

**Eq. 16.13**

where

$$f_{cd} = f_{ck} / \gamma_c \text{ for concrete grade } \leq \text{M60.}$$

$A_{co}$  denotes the loaded area.

$A_{cl}$  denotes the maximum design distribution area at distance  $h$  with a similar shape to  $A_{co}$  having the same centre of area, which it is possible to inscribe in the total area  $A_c$  situated in the same plane as that of  $A_{cl}$ . The distance  $h$  satisfies conditions given in the figure.

The value of  $F_{Rdu}$  obtained from Eq. 16.13 should be reduced if the load is not uniformly distributed on area  $A_{co}$ .

- (4) For concrete classes equal to or higher than M60, in Eq. 16.13  $f_{cd}$  should be substituted by

$$f_{cd} = \frac{0.46 f_{ck}^{2/3}}{1 + 0.1 f_{ck}} \left( \frac{f_{ck}}{\gamma_c} \right)$$

**Eq. 16.14**

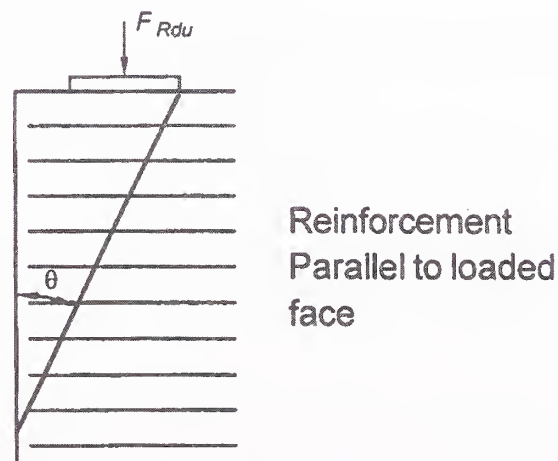
- (5) If the axial load is accompanied by large shear forces, three dimensional finite element analyses may be carried out using appropriate elements and mesh size and the relevant material properties.

- (6) Where prestressing anchorages are placed bearing on external surface, manufacturer's recommendation should be followed, as per Section 13.

### 16.11.2 Zones below bearings

- (1) The design of bearing zones of bridges should be in accordance with the rules given in this clause in addition to those in Clause 16.11.1.
- (2) The distance from the edge of the loaded area to the free edge of the concrete section should not be less than  $1/6$  of the corresponding dimension of the loaded area measured in the same direction. In no case should the distance to the free edge be less than 50 mm.
- (3) In order to avoid edge sliding, uniformly distributed reinforcement parallel to the loaded face should be provided to the point at which local compressive stresses are dispersed. This point is determined as follows:

A line inclined at an angle  $\theta$  ( $30^\circ$ ) to the direction of load application is drawn from the edge of the section to intersect with the opposite edge of the loaded surface, as shown in Fig.16.10. The reinforcement provided to avoid edge sliding shall be adequately anchored.



**Fig. 16.10 Edge Sliding Mechanism**

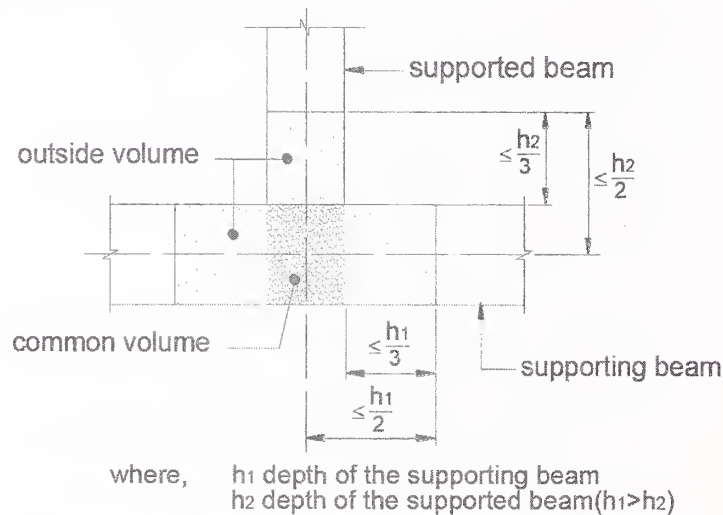
### 16.12 Forces Associated with Change in Direction

At points where considerable changes in the direction of the internal forces occur in concrete, reinforcing steel or prestressing steel, the associated forces in direction normal to the same shall be resisted by means of suitably anchored additional reinforcement. Refer Clause 7.10.1 for requirements of curved tendons.



### 16.13 Indirect Supports

- (1) In the case of a connection between a supporting beam and a supported beam, 'suspension' reinforcement designed to resist the total reaction from supported beam, shall be provided in addition to shear reinforcement.
- (2) The suspension reinforcement should consist preferably of links surrounding the principal reinforcement of the supporting member. Some of these links may be distributed outside the volume of concrete which is common to the two beams, as indicated in Fig.16.11.



**Fig. 16.11 Extent of the Inter-Section Zone (in Plan) for the Connection of Secondary Beams**

### 16.14 Anchorage Zones for Post tensioning Forces

Anchorage zone is defined as the zone within which the concentrated forces of post-tensioned anchorages disperse and spread over the full section of the prestressed structural element.

For the design and amount of reinforcement for the full section and for the local effects, refer Section 13. This reinforcement should be detailed to meet requirements of Clause 13.5 as well as to satisfy the following rules. Extra reinforcement over and above the calculated amount as per Clause 13.5 shall be provided, if needed, to satisfy these rules.

- (1) Anchorage zones should always be provided with distributed reinforcement near all surfaces in the form of an orthogonal mesh.
- (2) Where groups of post-tensioned cables are located at a certain distance from each other, suitable links should be arranged at the

ends of the members, as a protection against splitting away of groups.

- (3) All reinforcement should be fully anchored.
  - (4) Where a strut and tie model has been used to determine the transverse tensile force, the following detailing rules shall be followed:
    - (a) The steel area actually required to provide the tie force, acting at its design strength, shall be distributed in accordance with the actual tensile stress distribution, i.e. over a length of the block approximately equal to its greatest lateral dimension.
    - (b) Closed stirrups should be used for anchorage of ties.
-

## SECTION 17 DUCTILE DETAILING FOR SEISMIC RESISTANCE

### 17.1 General

- (1) Ductile detailing shall be carried out for bridges located in zones III, IV and V of seismic zone map of IRC:6.
- (2) The rules of this Section apply to bridges designed for ductile behaviour for improving their seismic resistance and aim to ensure a minimum level of curvature/rotation ductility at the plastic hinges. These are supplementary to the rules given in Sections 15 & 16 which remain applicable, unless specifically modified in this Section.
- (3) In general, plastic hinge formation is not allowed in the superstructure. Therefore there is no need for application of detailing rules of this Section for the superstructure.
- (4) Bridge foundation system shall be designed, as far as practicable, to remain elastic under design seismic action and foundations shall not be intentionally used as a means of energy dissipation through phenomenon of hysteresis.
- (5) The bridge shall be proportioned and detailed in such a manner that plastic hinges can occur only at pre-determined locations and not at any other locations.
- (6) Where longitudinal reinforcement is curtailed (e.g. in tall piers) potential of formation of hinge shall be avoided just beyond the point of curtailment.

### 17.2 Concrete Piers/Columns

#### 17.2.1 Confinement

##### 17.2.1.1 General requirements

- (1) Within the potential plastic hinge regions, ductile behaviour of the compression zone of concrete shall be ensured by providing confinement of concrete.
- (2) Confinement is implemented through rectangular hoops and/or cross-ties or through circular hoops or spirals.
- (3) In potential hinge regions where the normalised axial force  $\eta_k$  exceeds the limit:

$$\eta_k = N_{ED} / A_C f_{ck} > 0.08$$

**Eq. 17.1**



confinement of the compression zone in accordance with Clause 17.2.1.4 shall be provided.

- (4) The required quantity of confining reinforcement expressed as ratio  $\omega_{wd}$  is calculated as per Eq. 17.2 and shall satisfy the requirements of Clause 17.2.1.2:

$$\omega_{wd} = \rho_w f_{yd} / f_{cd} \quad \text{Eq. 17.2}$$

where

- (a) In rectangular sections:

$\rho_w$  is the volumetric ratio of transverse reinforcement defined as:

$$\rho_w = \frac{A_{sw}}{S_L \cdot b} \quad \text{Eq. 17.3}$$

where

$A_{sw}$  = is the area of the stirrups and ties in one direction of confinement.

$S_L$  = is the spacing of hoops or ties in the longitudinal direction

$b$  = is the dimension of the concrete core perpendicular to the direction of the confinement under consideration, measured to the outside of the perimeter hoop.

- (b) In circular sections:

Volumetric ratio  $\rho_w$  of the hoops/spiral reinforcement relative to the concrete core is given by Eq. 17.4:

$$\rho_w = \frac{4A_{sp}}{D_{sp} \cdot S_L} \quad \text{Eq. 17.4}$$

where

$A_{sp}$  is the area of the spiral or hoop bar

$D_{sp}$  is the diameter of the spiral or hoop bar

$S_L$  is the spacing of these bars

**Note:** Bars inclined at an angle  $\alpha$  to the transverse direction shall be assumed to contribute to the total area  $A_{sw}$  or  $A_{sp}$  in Eq. 17.3 by their area multiplied by  $\cos \alpha$ .

#### 17.2.1.2 Minimum confining reinforcement

- (1) Confinement is provided by use of rectangular loops and/or cross ties for rectangular sections or through circular hoops or spirals for circular sections.

- (2) For rectangular stirrups and cross-ties, the minimum design confining reinforcement is the greater of two values given in Eq.17.5. The minimum reinforcement condition shall be satisfied in both directions.

$$\omega_{wd} = \max[\omega_{w.req}; 0.12] \quad \text{Eq. 17.5}$$

$$\omega_{w.req} = 0.37 \frac{A_c}{A_{CC}} \eta_k + 0.13 \frac{f_{yd}}{f_{cd}} (\rho_L - 0.01) \quad \text{Eq. 17.6}$$

where

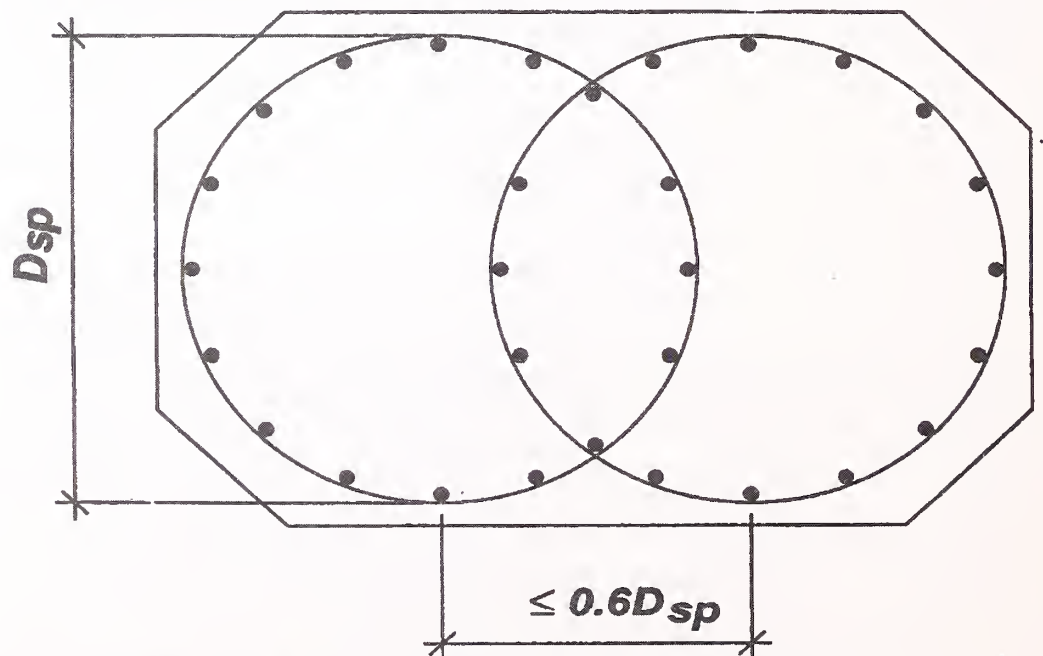
$A_c$  is the area of the gross concrete section;

$A_{CC}$  is the confined (core) concrete area of the section within the outside dia of hoop .

$\eta_k$  Normalised axial force (Clause 17.2.1.1);

$\rho_L$  is the reinforcement ratio of the longitudinal reinforcement.

- (3) Interlocking spirals/hoops are quite efficient for confining approximately rectangular sections. The distance between the centres of interlocking spirals/hoops shall not exceed  $0.6D_{sp}$  where  $D_{sp}$  is the diameter of the spiral/hoop (Refer Fig. 17.1).



**Fig. 17.1 Typical Confinement Detail in Concrete Piers Using Interlocking Spirals/Hoops**

- (4) For circular sections, the minimum confining reinforcement provided by hoops/spiral is determined as the higher of two values given in Eq. 17.7

$$\omega_{wd.c} \geq \max(1.4\omega_{w.req}; 0.18) \quad \text{Eq. 17.7}$$

When rectangular hoops and cross-ties are used, the minimum reinforcement condition shall be satisfied in both transverse directions

#### 17.2.1.3 Spacing of ties/hoops/spirals

- (1) The spacing of hoops or ties in the longitudinal direction,  $S_L$  shall satisfy both of the following conditions:
- $S_L \leq 5$  times the diameter of smallest longitudinal bar
  - $S_L \leq 1/5$  of the smallest dimension of confined concrete core for rectangular section or  $1/5^{\text{th}}$  of the diameter of confined core of concrete for circular section, both measured upto hoop centre line.
- (2) For rectangular section, the transverse distance  $s_T$  between hoop legs or supplementary cross-ties, shall not exceed  $1/3$  of the smallest dimension of the concrete core or 200 mm whichever is less (Refer Fig. 17.2).

#### 17.2.1.4 Extent of Confinement - Length of Potential Plastic Hinges

- (1) When  $\eta_k = N_{ED} / A_c f_{ck} \leq 0.3$  the design length  $L_h$  of potential plastic hinges shall be estimated as the larger of the following two values:
- the depth of the pier section within the plane of bending (perpendicular to the axis of rotation of the hinge);
  - the distance from the point of maximum design moment to the point where the design moment is 80 percent of the value of the maximum moment.
- (2) When  $0.6 \geq \eta_k > 0.3$  the design length of the potential plastic hinges as determined in (1) shall be increased by 50 percent.
- (3) The design length of plastic hinges ( $L_h$ ) estimated above should be used exclusively for detailing the reinforcement of the plastic hinge. It should not be used for estimating the plastic hinge rotation.



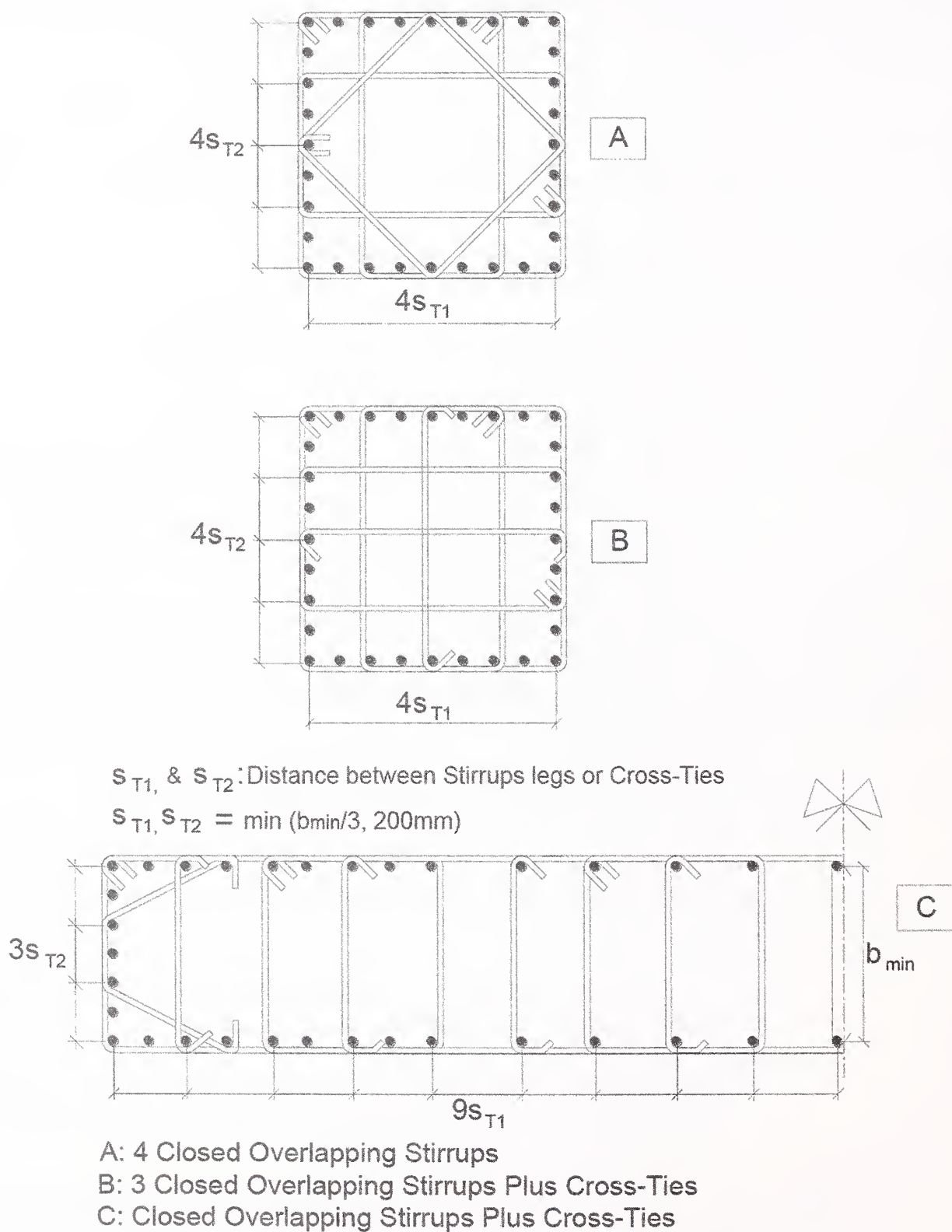


Fig. 17.2 Typical Confinement Detail in Concrete Piers with Rectangular Section using Overlapping Rectangular Stirrups and Cross-Ties

- (4) When confinement is required, the reinforcement specified in Clause 17.2.1.2 shall be provided over the entire length of the plastic hinge. Outside the length of the hinge, the transverse reinforcement may be gradually reduced to that required by other criteria. The amount of transverse reinforcement provided over an additional length  $L_h$  adjacent to the theoretical end of the plastic hinge, shall not be less than 50 percent of the confining reinforcement required in the region of plastic hinge.
- (5) The confinement shall extend at least upto the length where the value of the compressive strain exceeds  $0.5\epsilon_{cu2}$ .

### 17.2.2

#### **Buckling of longitudinal compression reinforcement**

- (1) Buckling of longitudinal reinforcement shall be avoided along the length of the potential hinge areas, even after several hysteresis cycles in post-yield region of stress-strain diagram of steel.

To meet this requirement, all main longitudinal bars should be restrained against outward buckling by transverse reinforcement (hoops or cross-ties) perpendicular to the longitudinal bars at a (longitudinal) spacing  $S_L$  not exceeding five times  $d_{bl}$ , the diameter of the smallest longitudinal bars.

- (2) Along straight section boundaries, restraining of longitudinal bars should be achieved in either one of the following ways:
  - (a) Through a perimeter tie engaged by intermediate cross-ties at alternate locations of longitudinal bars, at transverse (horizontal) spacing  $S_t$  not exceeding 200 mm. The cross-ties shall have  $135^\circ$  hooks at one end, and  $135^\circ$  or  $90^\circ$  bend at the other end. Bends of  $90^\circ$  are not permitted if  $\eta_k$  is greater than 0.3. Cross ties having  $135^\circ$  on both ends may consist of two lapped spliced pieces. In sections of large dimensions the perimeter tie may be spliced using appropriate lapping length combined with hooks; or
  - (b) Through overlapping closed ties arranged so that every corner bar and at least every alternate internal longitudinal bar is engaged by a tie leg. The transverse (horizontal) spacing of the tie legs should not exceed 200 mm.

- (3) The minimum amount of transverse ties shall be determined as follows:

$$\left( \frac{A_t}{s_T} \right) = \frac{\Sigma A_s f_{ys}}{1,6 f_{yt}} \text{ (mm}^2 / \text{m)} \quad \text{Eq. 17.8}$$

where

- $A_t$  is the area of one tie leg, in mm<sup>2</sup>;  
 $s_T$  is the transverse distance between tie legs) in m;  
 $\Sigma A_s$  is the sum of the areas of the longitudinal bars restrained by the tie, in mm<sup>2</sup>;  
 $f_{yt}$  is the yield strength of the tie; and  
 $f_{ys}$  is the yield strength of the longitudinal reinforcement.

### 17.2.3 Other rules

- (1) Due to the possibility of loss of concrete cover in the plastic hinge region, the confining reinforcement shall be anchored by 135° hooks around a longitudinal bar. Where 90° bend is used as per Clause 17.2.2(2), the bar shall extend by minimum 10 diameters into the core concrete.
- (2) Similar anchoring or a full strength weld is required for the lapping of spirals or hoops within potential plastic hinge regions. In this case laps of successive spirals or hoops, when located along the perimeter of the member, should be staggered.
- (3) Splicing by lapping or welding of longitudinal reinforcement is not allowed within the plastic hinge region.

### 17.2.4 Hollow piers

- (1) The ratio of the clear width  $b$  to the thickness  $h$  of the walls, in the plastic hinge region (length  $L_h$  in accordance with Clause 17.2.1.4) of hollow piers with a single or multiple box cross-section, should not exceed 8.
- (2) For hollow cylindrical piers the ratio of clear inside diameter, to thickness of wall shall not exceed 8.
- (3) In piers with simple or multiple box section and when the value of the ratio  $\eta_k$  does not exceed 0.2, there is no need for verification of the confining reinforcement in accordance with Clause 17.2.1, provided that the requirements of controlling buckling of longitudinal bars given in Clause 17.2.2 are met.



## **17.3 Foundations**

### **17.3.1 General**

Spread foundations (such as footings, rafts), wells, box-type caissons, etc. shall not enter the plastic range under the design seismic action and hence do not require any special ductile detailing of reinforcement.

### **17.3.2 Pile foundations**

- (1) When it is not feasible to avoid localised hinge formation in the piles by designing pier to form hinges earlier (capacity protection method), integrity and ductile behaviour of piles shall be ensured as given below.
  - (2) The following locations along the pile should be treated as potential plastic hinges.
    - (a) At the pile heads adjacent to the pile cap, when the rotation of the pile cap about a horizontal axis transverse to the seismic action is restrained by the large stiffness of the pile group.
    - (b) At location of maximum bending moment in piles taking into account soil-pile interaction, using appropriate stiffnesses of both pile, pile cap and soil.
    - (c) At the interfaces of soil layers with markedly different shear deformability (e.g. change of strata).
  - (3) At location of type 2(a), confining reinforcement of the amount specified in Clause 17.2.1.1 along a vertical length equal to 3 times the pile diameter, shall be provided.
  - (4) Unless a more accurate analysis is made, longitudinal as well as confining reinforcement of the same amount as that required at the pile head, shall be provided over a length of two pile diameters on each side of the point of maximum moment at location of type 2(b) and of each side of the interface at locations of type 2(c).
-

## SECTION 18 MATERIALS, QUALITY CONTROL AND WORKMANSHIP

### 18.1 General

This Section gives specifications of materials to be used in construction of new concrete bridges and standards to which they should conform. For new construction, the Indian Standards, referred below or any specific international standards governing these materials, shall be the latest revisions thereof. The tables and notes below table given in this Section are reproduced for ready reference from the relevant IS Codes listed in Annexure A-3.

For assessment of properties of materials in existing bridges, the standards in force at the time of their construction or the actual standards used for procurement, shall be referred to. The time dependency of properties shall also be taken into account in such cases.

### 18.2 Untensioned Steel

#### 18.2.1 Specification and grades

Reinforcement shall consist of hot rolled, thermo-mechanical or heat-treated rods, de-coiled rods, or cold worked steel conforming to relevant Indian Standards. The main definitive properties and grades are given in Table 18.1. Steel conforming to any other international standard may be used provided its strength, elongation, chemical composition and bond in concrete, are not inferior to those of Indian Standards. The grade designations are as adopted by the relevant standards.

The minimum strength, as specified in relevant BIS Standards, which is either the yield strength in case of mild steel or 0.2 percent proof strength in case of high yield steel is notionally taken as the characteristic strength  $f_{yk}$ .

#### 18.2.2 Other characteristics

Other important characteristics such as bendability (established by bend and re-bend test), weldability (established by equivalent carbon content) and bond characteristics in concrete should be as specified in IS 432 and IS 1786.

The dimensional tolerances and characteristics of ribs for HYSD steel should be as per IS 432 and IS 1786.

#### 18.2.3 Products with improved corrosion resistance

Reinforcing steel bars with corrosion resistance improved by any of the following methods, can be used as untensioned reinforcement, provided they meet the minimum strength, proof stress and elongation characteristics as specified for untensioned reinforcement.

**Table 18.1 Reinforcing Steel**

Type of Steel	Grade / Designation	Relevant BIS Standard	Minimum Yield Stress/ 0.2% proof-stress $f_{yk}$	Minimum Tensile Strength, as % of the actual 0.2% proof stress/yield stress but not less than	Min. % elongation
Mild Steel	Grade-I	IS:432 (Part-1)-1982	Bars upto & including 20 mm dia. = 250 MPa	410 MPa	23
			20mm $\leq$ dia 50mm = 240 MPa	410 MPa	23
High Yield Strength Deformed Steel (HYSD Steel)	Fe 415	IS:1786	415 MPa	110% (not less than 485 MPa)	14.5
	Fe 415D			112% (not less than 500 MPa)	18.0
	Fe 500	IS:1786	500 MPa	108% (not less than 545 MPa)	12.0
	Fe 500D			110% (not less than 565 MPa)	16.0
	Fe 550	IS:1786-2000	550 MPa	106% (not less than 585 MPa)	10.0
	Fe 550D			108% (not less than 600 MPa)	14.5
	Fe 600	IS:1786-2000	600 MPa	106% (not less than 600 MPa)	10.0

Notes: (1) Elongation on a gauge length of  $5.65 \sqrt{A}$ , where A is the cross-sectional area of the test piece, when tested in accordance with IS 1608 -1995.

(2) For seismic zones III, IV & V; HYSD steel bars having minimum elongation of 14.5 percent and conforming to other requirements of IS 1786 shall be used.

### 18.2.3.1 Galvanised reinforcement

Galvanising of reinforcing steel is achieved by hot dipping process in which steel reinforcement is dipped in a bath of molten zinc at about 450°C and cooled in a controlled manner. The coating is chromate treated to avoid reaction between zinc and fresh cement paste. The requirements of coating are as per IS 12594-1988. In this process, zinc is chemically bonded with steel surface in layers with varying percentage of zinc contents, from maximum of 100 percent (i.e. free) zinc as the outermost layer, to a minimum 72-79 percent of zinc as the innermost layer above the base steel. These layers increase the corrosion resistance of steel.



The strength as well as elongation and bond properties are not adversely affected by galvanising.

#### **18.2.3.2      *Epoxy-coated reinforcement***

Reinforcing bars conforming to IS 1786 can be coated by fusion bonded epoxy conforming to IS 13620-1993.

The fusion-bonded epoxy coating forms a continuous layer (free of holidays) which has high electrical resistance and prevents setting up of corrosion cells between steel and the surrounding electrolytic micro-environment of moist concrete. It also provides physical barrier between steel and the harmful elements from environmental sources, controlling their rate of penetration. On the other hand, the discontinuities in the barrier (holidays) have the tendency to concentrate the corrosion currents in these areas, leading to faster localised corrosion. The overall effect of coating is, however, beneficial in increasing the corrosion resistance of the structure, provided the occurrence of holidays is controlled.

The bond between reinforcement and concrete is lowered by upto 20 percent of the bond without such coating. In detailing of steel the lap lengths and anchorage lengths shall be increased by 25 percent.

#### **18.2.3.3      *Stainless steel reinforcement***

Properties of stainless steel reinforcement shall not be inferior to those of carbon steel reinforcement of corresponding strength class. For bond properties, the relevant code may be referred or they may be established on the basis of tests.

**Note:** Till such time as the Indian Standard for stainless steel reinforcement is available, the British Standard BS:6744:2001, may be referred.

### **18.3            **Prestressing Steel****

#### **18.3.1            **Specification and grades****

Prestressing steel in the form of plain or indented wires, stress-relieved multi-ply strands, or high tensile steel bars, shall conform to standards given in Table 18.2 subject to the stipulations given in Clause 18.3.2.

**Table 18.2 Types of Prestressing Steel**

Type	BIS Standard
Plain Cold Drawn Stress-relieved Wire	IS:1785 (Part-I)
Indented hard-drawn stress-relieved wires	IS: 6003
Stress relieved multiply strands of normal relaxation	IS: 6006
Stress-relieved multiply strands of low relaxation	IS:14268
High Tensile Steel Bars	IS: 2090

### 18.3.2 Nomenclature, grade designation, strength, elongation and relaxation

The following grades of steel having characteristics as mentioned in Table 18.3 to 18.5, are permitted for use in bridges designed for normal life.

For other bridges mentioned in Clause 5.8.1 wires/strands having smaller diameters than those given in the Tables, but otherwise meeting the requirements of Indian Standards mentioned therein, can be used.

**Table 18.3 Hard Drawn Stress Relieved Wires**

	Diameter, mm	Minimum Tensile strength, MPa	Minimum Elongation at fracture, %
Plain Wires	4	1715	3.0
	5	1570	4.0
	7	1470	4.0
	8	1375	4.0
Indented Wires	4	1715	3.0
	5	1570	4.0

- Notes:**
- (1) Percent elongation is measured on 200 mm gauge length.
  - (2) The 1000 hour relaxation tested at initial load of 0.7 UTS at 20°C shall not be more than 5 percent of 0.7 UTS.
  - (3) For plain wires of 5 mm, 7 mm and 8 mm, higher minimum strengths of 1715 MPa, 1570 MPa & 1470 MPa respectively, may also be manufactured as per IS 1765 (Part-1).
  - (4) For acceptance of test results from a lot, a value calculated as (arithmetic mean minus 0.6 of the range of test results) shall be more than the minimum strength and elongation specified as per IS 1785.

- (5) 0.2 percent proof stress shall not be less than 85 percent of minimum tensile strength.

**Table 18.4 Stress Relieved Strands**

Class	Designation	Nominal area mm <sup>2</sup>	Normal relaxation		Low relaxation	
			Breaking Load, kN	0.2% Proof Load, kN	Breaking Load, kN	0.2% Proof Load, kN
I	11.1 mm 7 ply	70.0	124.54	105.86	120.1	108.00
	12.7 mm 7 ply	92.9	166.18	139.9	160.1	144.1
	15.2 mm 7 ply	139.0	226.86	192.83	240.2	216.2
II	11.1 mm 7 ply	74.2	137.89	117.21	137.9	124.1
	12.7 mm 7 ply	98.8	183.71	156.11	183.7	165.3
	15.2 mm 7 ply	140.0	261.44	222.23	260.7	234.6

**Notes:**

- (1) Elongation measured immediately before fracture of any of the constituent wires on gauge length of 600 mm, shall not be less than 3.5 percent.
- (2) The 1000 hour relaxation value shall not be more than 5 percent and 2.5 percent of 0.7 UTS for normal and low relaxation steel respectively, tested at 0.7 UTS and 20°C.
- (3) For acceptance, all samples tested from a batch shall meet requirement of minimum breaking load and proof load as per IS 6006 and IS 14268.

**Table 18.5 High Tensile Bars**

Sizes in mm	Minimum Specified Tensile Strength	Minimum 0.2% proof strength
10, 12, 16, 20, 22, 25, 28, 32.	980 MPa	80% of specified tensile strength

**Notes:**

- (1) Elongation at failure shall not be less than 10 percent measured on gauge length of  $5.65\sqrt{A}$  where A is the area of cross-section of steel bar.
- (2) The 1000 hour relaxation when tested at 70 percent of UTS shall not be more than 49 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- (3) For acceptance of test results from a lot, a value calculated as arithmetic mean minus 0.6 of the range of test results shall be more than the minimum strength and elongation specified as per IS 1785.



- (4) 0.2 percent proof stress shall not be less than 85 percent of minimum tensile strength.

### **18.3.3 Other properties**

#### **18.3.3.1 Ductility**

The requirements of ductility at fracture are deemed to be satisfied by use of steel having the minimum elongations specified in Clause 18.3.2.

The wires/strands shall pass the bendability test (reverse bending test) as specified in relevant Indian Standards.

#### **18.3.3.2 Tolerance on size/diameter**

The relevant Indian Standards specify the manufacturing tolerances on diameters/size of various products, which remain valid for general acceptance of the material and for qualifying the source of supply.

### **18.3.4 Coated wires/strands**

The wires/strands conforming to Indian Standards can be provided with protective coatings, like galvanising or epoxy coating, carried out in specialised manufacturing units. However, if the technological processes affect any of the mechanical and physical properties, such modified properties should be taken into account in design.

## **18.4 Material Ingredients of Concrete**

The concrete shall be prepared by using ingredients given in this Clause.

### **18.4.1 Cement**

The cement shall be any of the following. The selected type should be appropriate for the intended use.

#### **Type**

(a) Ordinary Portland Cement 33 Grade conforming to	IS 269
(b) Ordinary Portland Cement 43 Grade conforming to	IS 8112
(c) Ordinary Portland Cement 53 Grade conforming to	IS 12269
(d) Rapid Hardening Portland Cement conforming to	IS 8041
(e) Sulphate Resistant Portland Cement conforming to	IS 12330
(f) Portland Pozzolana Cement conforming to	IS 1489
	(Part-I)

- (g) Portland Blast Furnace Slag Cement conforming to IS 455
- (h) Low Heat Portland Cement conforming to IS 12600

If any other cement conforming to other International Standards is used, it shall be corresponding to one of the types listed above and shall meet the minimum specifications of the Indian Standards.

#### **18.4.2 Chemical admixtures**

To improve properties of fresh concrete such as workability, admixtures conforming to IS 9103 may be used.

#### **18.4.3 Mineral admixtures**

The following mineral admixtures may be used in concrete to improve its performance:

- (a) Fly ash conforming to Grade-I of IS 3812-2003. The proportion should not be less than 20 percent nor should exceed 35 percent of the total mass of Ordinary Portland Cement and fly-ash.
- (b) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag (GGBS) conforming to IS 12089. The proportion should not be less than 50 percent nor should exceed 70 percent of total mass of Ordinary Portland Cement and GGBS.
- (c) Silica fume conforming to IS 15388. Silica fume should be very fine, non-crystalline  $\text{SiO}_2$ , obtained as a by-product of Silicon or Ferro-Silicon alloy industries.

#### **18.4.4 Aggregates**

##### **18.4.4.1 General**

All coarse and fine aggregates shall conform to IS 383 and shall be tested to conform to IS 2386 Parts I to VIII.

##### **18.4.4.2 Coarse and fine aggregates**

- (1) Coarse aggregates shall consist of clean, hard, strong, dense, non-porous and durable pieces of crushed stone, crushed gravel, natural gravel or a suitable combination thereof or other approved inert material.
- (2) The maximum size of the coarse aggregate may be as large as possible within the limits specified, but in no case greater than (a) one

quarter of the minimum thickness of member, (b) 10 mm less than the minimum lateral clear distance between individual reinforcements or (c) 10 mm less than the minimum clear cover to any reinforcement.

- (3) The preferred nominal size of aggregate is 20 mm for reinforced concrete and prestressed concrete. However, larger sizes upto 40 mm may be permitted in special cases, when there is no restriction to flow of concrete in a section.

For plain concrete, preferred nominal sizes may be between 20 mm and 40 mm. However, larger sizes may be permitted only in special cases, subject to supplemental specifications and precautions.

- (4) Fine aggregates shall consist of hard, strong, durable clean particles of natural sand, crushed stone or gravel or suitable combination of natural sand and crushed stone or gravel.
- (5) The coarse and fine aggregates shall not contain dust, lumps, soft or flaky particles, mica and other deleterious materials in such quantities as would reduce the strength or durability of concrete or attack the reinforcement.
- (6) Grading of aggregates shall be such as to produce a dense concrete of the specified strength, which can be worked readily into position without segregation and without the use of excessive water content.

#### **18.4.5 Water**

Water used for mixing and curing shall be clean and free from injurious amounts of oils, acids, alkalis, salts, sugar, organic materials or other substances that may be deleterious to concrete or steel.

- (1) In case of doubt regarding development of strength, the suitability of water for producing concrete shall be ascertained by the compressive strength and initial setting time tests specified in (3) & (4).
- (2) The sample of water taken for testing shall represent the water proposed to be used for concreting, due account being paid to seasonal variation. The sample shall not receive any treatment before testing other than that envisaged in the regular supply of water proposed for use in concrete. The sample shall be stored in a clean container previously rinsed out with similar water.



- (3) Average 28 days compressive strength of at least three 150 mm concrete cubes prepared with water proposed to be used, shall not be less than 90 percent of the average strength of three similar concrete cubes prepared with distilled water. The cubes shall be prepared, cured and tested in accordance with the requirements of IS 516.
- (4) The initial setting time of test block made with the appropriate cement and the water proposed to be used, shall not be less than 30 minutes and shall not be more than 30 minutes from the initial setting time of control test block prepared with the same cement and distilled water. The test blocks shall be prepared and tested in accordance with the requirements of IS 4031 (Part 5).
- (5) The pH value of water shall not be less than 6. Potable water is generally considered satisfactory for mixing concrete. As a guide the following concentrations represent the maximum permissible values:
  - (a) To neutralise 100 ml sample of water, using phenolphthalein as an indicator, it should not require more than 5 ml of 0.02 normal NaOH. The details of test are given in Clause 8.1 of IS 3025 (Part 22).
  - (b) To neutralise 100 ml sample of water, using mixed indicator, it should not require more than 25 ml of 0.02 normal H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The details of test shall be as given in Clause 8 of IS 3025 (Part 23).
  - (c) Permissible limits for solids shall be as given in Table 18.6.

**Table 18.6 Permissible Limit for Solids**

	Tested as per	Maximum Permissible Limit
Organic	IS 3025 (Pt. 18)	200 mg/liter
Inorganic	IS 3025 (Pt. 18)	3000 mg/liter
Sulphates (as SO <sub>3</sub> )	IS 3025 (Pt. 28)	400 mg/liter
Chlorides (as ) Cl <sup>-</sup> )	IS 3025 (Pt. 32)	- 2000 mg/liter for concrete work not containing embedded steel, and - 500 mg/liter for prestressed/ reinforced concrete work
Suspended matter	IS 3025 (Pt. 17)	2000 mg/lit.

- (6) Mixing or curing of concrete with sea water is not permitted due to presence of harmful salts in sea water.
- (7) Water found satisfactory for mixing is also suitable for curing concrete. However, water used for curing should not produce any objectionable stain or unsightly deposit on the concrete surface. The presence of tannic acid or iron compounds in the water, is objectionable.

## **18.5 Mix Proportions of Concrete**

### **18.5.1 Grade designation**

The concrete shall be designated by one of its types as described in Clause 6.4.2 – Ordinary Concrete, Standard Concrete, or High Performance Concrete - and its grade-designation based on characteristic strength as described in Table 6.8.

Except ordinary concrete with strength designations of M-15 & M-20, the design mix of standard concrete and high performance concrete shall be established by laboratory / field testing and controlled at site by conducting tests to confirm suitability of constituent materials, as per the relevant codes mentioned in Clause 18.4. The concrete shall meet the acceptance criteria as per Clause 18.6. Mix design shall be modified if it does not meet the acceptance criteria.

### **18.5.2 Proportion of ordinary concrete**

- (1) The proportions of ordinary concrete shall be as per Table 18.7.
- (2) Chemical and Mineral admixtures shall not be used for Ordinary Concrete.

**Table 18.7 Proportion of Ordinary Concrete**

Concrete Grade	Total Quantity of dry aggregate by mass per 50 kg of cement to be taken as the sum of individual masses of fine and coarse aggregate (Kg)	Proportion of fine aggregate to coarse aggregate (by mass)	Maximum quantity of water per 50kg of cement (litres)	
			P.C.C.	R.C.C.
M15	350	Generally 1:2, subject to upper limit 1:1.5 and lower limit 1:2.5	25	-
M20	250		25	22

### **18.5.3 Requirement of design mixes**

#### **(1) Trial Mixes**

Trial mixes shall be prepared using sample of approved materials for the initial design.

Additional trial mixes and tests shall be carried out during production in case any changes in the properties of fresh concrete and/or strength of hardened concrete on the basis of early age tests, are observed, so as to control and bring the quality of concrete within acceptable limits. In case of any change in the source of materials, or properties of materials, the design of mix shall be newly established.

**(2) Procedure for Design of Mix**

Procedures as per any national code or any procedure established by practice for arriving at the suitable mix design, can be followed. Where earlier experience of concrete made from the selected materials is available, the same can provide the basis for the start of the mix design.

The target mean strength of concrete shall exceed the specified characteristic strength by at least the margin (called current margin) taken as 1.645 times the standard deviation of sample test results taken from at least 30 separate batches of concrete of nominally similar proportions produced at site by the same plant under similar supervision, over a period exceeding 5 days, but not exceeding one month.

Where sufficient data as above to establish the standard deviation is not available, the current margin for the initial mix design shall be taken as 10 MPa, (i.e. standard deviation as 6 MPa) for normal and uniform conditions of quality controls. This initial current margin shall be used only until sufficient data are available to determine the current margin as described above.

**18.5.4 Sampling and testing**

**(1) General**

- (a) Samples from fresh concrete shall be taken as per IS 1199 and samples shall be made, cured and tested at specified number of days in accordance with IS 516. The strength parameters are based to 28 days strength. Tests at other age shall be performed, if specified.
- (b) Where automated batching plant is located away from the place of use or concrete is supplied from Ready Mixed Concrete (RMC) Plant, and the time gap between production and placement is more than the initial setting time or where any ingredients are



added subsequent to mixing, separate sets of samples shall be collected and tested at batching plant and at location of placement. The results shall be compared and used to make suitable adjustments at batching plants so that properties of concrete at placement are as per the requirements.

- (c) In order to get a relatively quicker idea of the quality of concrete, optional tests on beams for modulus of rupture at  $72 \pm 2$  h or at 7 days, or compressive strength tests at 7 days may be carried out in addition to 28 days compressive strength test. For this purpose, the acceptable values should be arrived at based on actual testing. In all the cases, the equivalent 28 days compressive strength shall be the criterion for the acceptance/rejection of the concrete.
- (d) Additional samples may be required for various purposes such as to determine the strength of concrete at 7 days or at the time of transfer of prestress or striking the formwork, or to determine the duration of curing, or to check the testing error. Additional samples may also be required for testing samples cured by accelerated methods as described in IS 9013. The specimen shall be tested as described in IS 516.

## (2) Test Specimen and Sample Strength

Three test specimens constitute one sample for any type of test at specified age of testing. The average of these results of three samples constitute the test result of sample provided that the individual variation is within  $\pm 15$  percent of average. If variation is larger, the sample shall be discarded.

## (3) Frequency of Sampling

The minimum frequency of sampling of concrete of each grade shall be in accordance with Table 18.8.

**Table 18.8 Minimum Frequency of Sampling of Concrete**

Quantity of Concrete in Work (m <sup>3</sup> )	Number of Samples
1-5	1
6-15	2
16-30	3
31-50	4
51 and above	4 plus one additional sample for each additional 50 m <sup>3</sup> or part thereof.

At least one sample shall be taken from each batch of work. For the purpose of acceptance as per Table 18.8, quantity of concrete represented by a group of four consecutive samples shall include all batches and single sample shall represent the batch from which it is taken.

Where concrete is provided continuously at site from a batching plant or RMC plant, groups of four consecutive samples, shall not have overlapping common samples. Irrespective of other methods of controlling production used at the batching/RMC plant the requirements of this Clause shall be met.

## **18.6 Acceptance Criteria**

### **18.6.1 General**

Acceptance or rejection of concrete is mostly based on compressive strength. However, other properties of the concrete in fresh and hardened states including durability are also important.

Apart from meeting the acceptance criteria given below, concrete is liable to be rejected if it is porous or honey-combed, its placing has been interrupted without providing a proper construction joint, the reinforcement has been displaced beyond the tolerances specified, or construction tolerances have not been met. However, the hardened concrete may be accepted after carrying out suitable remedial measures.

### **18.6.2 Compressive strength**

When both the following conditions are met, the concrete shall be deemed to comply with the specified compressive strength:

- (a) The mean strength determined from any group of four consecutive non-overlapping samples shall exceed the specified characteristic compressive strength by 3 MPa.
- (b) Strength of any sample is not less than the specified characteristic compressive strength minus 3 MPa.

Concrete of each grade shall be assessed separately.

If the concrete is deemed not to comply as per the above criteria, the structural adequacy of the bridge elements affected shall be investigated and any consequential action as needed, shall be taken.

### **18.6.3 Flexural strength**

When both the following conditions are met, the concrete complies with the specified flexural strength:

- (a) The mean strength determined from any group of four consecutive non-overlapping samples exceeds the specified characteristic flexural strength by at least 0.3 MPa.
- (b) The strength determined from any sample is not less than the specified characteristic flexural strength minus 0.3 MPa.

### **18.6.4 Density of fresh concrete**

Where minimum density of fresh concrete is specified, the mean of any four consecutive non-overlapping samples shall not be less than the specified value and any individual sample result shall not be less than 97.5 percent of the specified value.

### **18.6.5 Density of hardened concrete**

Where minimum density of hardened concrete is specified, the mean of any four consecutive non-overlapping samples shall not be less than the specified value and any individual sample result shall not be less than 97.5 percent of the specified value.

### **18.6.6 Chloride content**

The chloride content in the concrete can be measured as described in IS 14959 – Part I (for fresh concrete) or Part II (for hardened concrete). Alternatively it can be calculated, in which case, the method of calculation shall be based upon the measured chloride-ion contents of all constituents and the mix proportion of concrete. The chloride-ion content so measured or calculated and expressed as the percentage of chloride-ion by mass of cement, shall not exceed the value specified in Clause 14.3.2.3.

### **18.6.7 Durability of concrete**

Unlike the tests on concrete described above, there is no specified test method for durability, which can be completed within a reasonably short time. The requirement of long term durability of concrete is 'deemed to be satisfied' by following the recommended provisions in this Code for maximum water-cement ratio, minimum cement content, cover thickness, type of cement and amounts of chlorides and sulphates in concrete etc. All these recommendations taken together tend resulting concrete being dense, workable, and placeable and having as low permeability as possible under the given situation.

When durability of concrete is the main reason for adopting high performance concrete, or



in other specific situations, Rapid Chloride Ion Permeability Test (RCPT) as per ASTM C1202 shall be carried out. Suggested upper limits of values of RCPT for 56 days for various exposure conditions (refer Table 14.1) are:

- |     |            |      |          |
|-----|------------|------|----------|
| (1) | Extreme    | 800  | Coulombs |
| (2) | Very Sever | 1200 | Coulombs |
| (3) | Severe     | 1500 | Coulombs |

Additional durability tests, such as Water Permeability test as per DIN 1048 Part 5 or Initial Surface Absorption test as per BS 1881 part 5 can also be specified. The permissible values in such tests have to be specified taking into account the severity of the exposure condition. The acceptance criteria shall be arrived at prior to testing.

## **18.7 Grouting**

### **18.7.1 General**

Grout is a homogenous mixture of cement and water. It may contain chemical admixtures which modify the properties of grout in its fluid state. These recommendations cover the cement grouting of post tensioned tendons of prestressed concrete members of bridges.

The purpose of grouting is to provide permanent protection to the post tensioned steel against corrosion and to develop bond between the prestressing steel and the surrounding structural concrete. The grout ensures encasement of steel in an alkaline environment for corrosion protection and by filling the duct space it prevents water collection and freezing.

A critical feature of grout is that it should remain pumpable for the time required to fully inject the tendon.

### **18.7.2 Materials**

#### **(1) Water**

Only clean potable water free from impurities conforming to Clause 18.4.5 shall be used. No sea or creek water is to be used at all.

#### **(2) Cement**

The same type of cement as used in construction of prestressed elements, should be used for preparation of the grout. It should be as fresh as possible and free from any lumps.

#### **(3) Sand**

It is not recommended to use sand for grouting of prestressing tendons.

**(4) Admixtures**

Acceptable admixtures conforming to IS 9103 may be used if tests have shown that their use improves the properties of grout, i.e. increasing fluidity, reducing bleeding, entraining air or expanding the grout. Admixtures must not contain chlorides, nitrates, sulphides, sulphites or any other products which are likely to damage the steel or grout. When an expanding agent is used, the total unrestrained expansion should not exceed 10 percent. Aluminium powder as an expanding agent is not recommended as doubts exist about its long term effects.

**18.7.3 Use of grout colloidal mixer**

It is essential that the grout is maintained in a homogenous state and of uniform consistency so that there is no separation of cement during the entire grouting process. It is, therefore, necessary that the grout be continuously mixed in a colloidal mixer with a minimum speed of 1000 RPM and travel of discharge not exceeding 15 m per second.

**18.7.4 Properties of the grout**

Before grouting, the properties of the grout mix should be tested. Tests should be conducted for each job periodically.

**(1) Water/cement Ratio**

Water/cement ratio should be as low as possible, consistent with workability. This ratio should not exceed 0.45.

**(2) Deleterious Materials**

No chloride, sulphates shall be separately added to the grout. The constituent may contain chlorides/sulphates. However, its net effect should not exceed the following limits in the grout:

- Chlorides ( $\text{Cl}^-$ ) not more than 0.1 percent by weight of cement.
- Sulphate ( $\text{SO}_3$ ) not more than 4 percent by weight of cement.
- Sulphide-ions ( $\text{S}_2^-$ ) not more than 0.01 percent by weight of cement.

**(3) Temperature**

The temperature of the grout after accounting for the ambient temperature of the structure, shall not exceed 25°C.

**(4) Compressive Strength**

The compressive strength of 100 mm cube of the grout shall not be less than 17 MPa at 7 days. Cubes shall be cured in a moist atmosphere for the first 24 hours and subsequently in water. These tests shall be conducted in advance to ascertain the suitability of the grout mix.

**(5) Setting Time**

Initial setting time of grout shall be more than three hours and less than 12 hours. The final setting time shall not be less than 24 hours.

**(6) Bleeding**

Bleeding is the separation of free water from the grout mix. It includes the filtering effect of strands where the cavities between the wires constituting the strand, block cement particles and permit water under pressure to move ahead of the grout in the direction of general flow of grout. The bleeding shall be sufficiently low to prevent excessive segregation and sediment of the grout material. The bleeding shall not exceed 0.3 percent of volume of the initial volume of grout after three hours kept at rest.

**(7) Volume Change**

The volume change of grout kept at rest for 24 hours and tested as per ASTM C1090 shall be within the range of -0.5 percent and 5.0 percent of the original volume.

**(8) Fluidity**

Fluidity is tested as per ASTM C939 standard using standard flow cone.

**Note:** The fluidity of grout changes from time of mixing to time of setting in the ducts. The requirement given above are for general guidance and may be modified as per the specific application, depending upon the total temperature, length of tendons, head of pumping, requirement of simultaneous grouting of closely spaced tendons etc. provided that other specifications and functions are satisfied.

**18.8 Quality Control and Workmanship**

**18.8.1 General**

This Clause covers the requirements of proper workmanship in all operations of construction of concrete structures and related quality assurance and quality control measures, so that the structure is built as designed and the intended performance over the design service



life is achieved. Concrete is made with ingredients with inherent variability. The operations of production, placement, compaction and curing of concrete under site conditions can also exhibit variability. In order that concrete is obtained with reasonable amount of consistency in its characteristics, the properties of ingredients and the resultant concrete should be monitored diligently as per an appropriate plan of testing and all site operations should be carried out with adequate proficiency, as detailed in this Section. A Quality Assurance (QA) Plan should be in position to ensure that the construction results in satisfactory strength, serviceability and long term durability which will lower the overall life-cycle cost of the structure.

### **18.8.2 Quality assurance measures**

Quality assurance in construction activity relates to proper design, use of appropriate materials and components to be supplied by the producers, proper workmanship in the execution of works and proper care during the use of structure, including periodic inspection and timely maintenance and repair by the owner.

Quality assurance measures are both technical and organizational. The Quality Assurance Plan shall identify the key elements necessary to provide fitness of the structure and the means by which they are to be provided and measured with the overall purpose to provide confidence that the realized project will work satisfactorily in service, fulfilling intended needs. Quality control and quality assurance would also involve ensuring quality of both the inputs as well as the outputs. Inputs are in the form of materials of construction; workmanship; and the related plant, machinery and equipment; resulting in the output in the form of final structure.

Each party involved in the realization of a project should establish and implement a Quality Assurance Plan for its role in the project. Suppliers and sub-contractors' activities shall be covered in the plan. The individual Quality Assurance Plans shall fit into the overall Quality Assurance Plan of the project and shall define the tasks and responsibilities of all persons involved, adequate control and checking procedures, and the organization and maintaining of adequate documentation of the construction process and its results. Such documentation shall be in accordance with IRC Publication IRC:SP:47-1988 "Guidelines on Quality Systems for Road Bridges' Plain, Reinforced Prestressed and Composite Concrete".

### **18.8.3 Production of concrete**

#### **(1) Storage of Materials**

All efforts shall be made to store the materials in proper places to prevent their deterioration and any intrusion of foreign matters, so as to ensure their satisfactory quality and fitness for the work. The

space shall permit easy storage, inspection, removal and re-storage of materials. All such materials, even though stored in approved manner, shall be subjected to inspection and acceptance test prior to use, whenever considered necessary.

**(2) Batching**

In batching concrete:

- The quantity of cement, aggregate and mineral admixtures, if used, shall be determined by mass.
- Chemical admixture, if solid, shall be determined by mass.
- Liquid admixture may be measured in volume or mass, and
- Water shall be weighed or measured by volume in a calibrated tank.

The concrete shall be sourced from on-site or off-site batching and mixing plants, or from approved ready-mixed concrete plants, preferably having quality certification.

Except where supply of properly graded aggregate of uniform quality can be maintained over a period of work, the grading of aggregate should be controlled by obtaining the coarse aggregate in different sizes and blending them in the right proportions when required, the different sizes being stocked in separate stock piles. The material should be stock piled several hours, preferably a day before use. The grading of coarse and fine aggregate should be checked as frequently as possible to ensure that the specified grading is maintained.

The accuracy of the measuring equipment shall be within  $\pm 3$  percent of the quantity of cement, aggregate, admixtures and water being measured. All measuring equipment shall be maintained in a clean and serviceable condition. Their accuracy shall be checked over the range in use, when set up at site and maintained thereafter.

It is important to maintain the water-cement ratio constant at its correct value. To this end, determination of moisture contents in both fine and coarse aggregates shall be made as frequently as possible, being determined according to weather conditions. The amount of the added water shall be adjusted to compensate for any observed variations in the moisture contents. To allow for the variation in mass of aggregate due to variation in their moisture



content, suitable adjustments in the masses of aggregates shall also be made. Accurate control shall be kept on the quantity of mixing water, which when specified, shall not be changed without approval.

**(3) Mixing**

All concrete shall be machine-mixed. In order to ensure uniformity and good quality of concrete, the ingredients shall be mixed in a power driven batch mixer with hopper and suitable weigh batching arrangement or in a central mix plant. The concrete shall be mixed until it is of even colour, cohesive and of uniform consistency throughout. When mineral admixtures are added at the mixing stage, their thorough and uniform blending with the cement shall be ensured, if necessary, by longer mixing time. In general, the mixing time shall be at least 2 minutes after all the ingredients are in the mixer. For other types of more efficient mixers, manufacturer's recommendations should be followed. The addition of water after the completion of the initial mixing operation, shall not be permitted.

**18.8.4**

**Transportation, placing, compaction and curing**

**(1) Transporting Concrete**

Mixed concrete shall be transported from the place of mixing to the place of final placement as early as practicable, by methods which will prevent the segregation or loss of the ingredients.

Concrete may be transported by transit mixers or properly designed buckets or by pumping. Transit mixer or other hauling equipment when used, should be equipped with means of discharging the concrete without segregation. During hot or cold weather, concrete shall be transported in deep containers. Other suitable methods to reduce the loss of water by evaporation in hot weather, and heat loss in cold weather, may also be adopted.

When concrete is conveyed by chute, the plant shall be of such size and design as to ensure practically continuous flow in the chute. The slope of the chute shall be such as to allow the concrete to flow freely and without segregation of the ingredients. The delivery end of the chute shall be as close as possible to the point of deposit. The chute shall be thoroughly flushed with water before and after each working period and the water used for this purpose shall be discharged outside the formwork.



In case of concrete is to be transported by pumping, the fresh concrete should have adequate fluidity and cohesiveness to be pumpable. Proper concrete mix proportioning and initial trials should be carried out to ensure this. The conduit shall be primed by pumping a batch of mortar through the line to lubricate it. Once the pumping is started, it shall not be interrupted, as concrete standing idle in the line is liable to cause a plug. The operator shall ensure that some concrete is always there in the pump's receiving hopper during operation. The lines shall always be maintained clean and free of dents.

## **(2) Placing and Compacting Concrete**

Concrete shall be placed as nearly as practicable in its final position to avoid rehandling. Methods of placing should be such as to preclude segregation. Care should be taken to avoid displacement of reinforcement or movement of formwork. To achieve this, concrete should be lowered vertically into the forms and horizontal movement of concrete inside the forms should, as far as practicable, be minimised.

Concrete shall be placed and compacted before its initial setting so that it is amenable to compaction by vibration. The workability of concrete at the time of placement shall be adequate for the compaction equipment to be used. If there is considerable time gap between mixing and placing of concrete, as in the case of ready mixed concrete plants or off-site batching and mixing plants, concrete mix shall be designed to have appropriately higher workability at the time of discharge from the mixer, in order to compensate the loss of workability during transit. This is generally achieved by use of suitable chemical admixtures. Keeping these considerations in view, the general requirement for ready mixed concrete plants or off-site batching and mixing plants, is that concrete shall be discharged from the truck mixer within two hours of the time of loading. A longer period may be permitted if suitable retarding admixtures are used. In case of on-site mixing, fresh concrete shall preferably be placed and compacted within 30 minutes of mixing.

In wall forms, drop chutes attached to hoppers at the top should preferably be used to lower concrete to the bottom of the form. As a general guidance, the permissible free fall of concrete may not exceed 1.5 m and under no circumstances; shall it be more than 2 m.

When free fall of larger height is involved, self compacting concrete having adequate fluidity, cohesiveness and viscosity shall be used. Self compacting concrete completely fills every corner of the formwork by its own weight without segregation, whilst maintaining uniformity. No compaction by vibration is required.

When concrete is to be deposited by means of tremie, the lower end of the vertical pipe shall always be inserted sufficiently deep into the concrete which has been placed previously but has not set. The top section of the tremie shall be a hopper large enough to hold one entire batch of the mix or the entire contents of the transporting bucket, if any. The tremie pipe shall be large enough to allow a free flow of concrete and strong enough to withstand the external pressure of the water in which it is suspended, when concrete is deposited under water. It will be necessary to raise the tremie slowly in order to cause a uniform flow of the concrete, but the tremie shall not be emptied allowing water to enter the pipe. At all times after the placing of concrete is started and until all the concrete is placed, the lower end of the tremie pipe shall be below the top surface of the plastic concrete.

Concrete shall be thoroughly compacted during the operation of placing and carefully worked around the reinforcement, around embedded fixtures and into the corners of the form work. To achieve proper compaction vibrators may be used. The vibrator can be internal or external type and depending upon the shape and size of the member, both types may be used individually or together.

When internal vibrators are used, they shall be inserted vertically to the full depth of the layer being placed and ordinarily shall penetrate the layer below for a few centimetres. The vibrator should be kept in place until air bubbles cease escaping from the surface and then withdrawn slowly to ensure that no hole is left in the concrete, care being taken to see that it remains in continuous operation while being withdrawn. Internal vibrators shall be inserted in an orderly manner and the distance between insertions should be about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  times the radius of the area visibly affected by vibration. Internal vibrators should not be used for spreading the concrete.

### **(3) Construction Joints**

Concreting shall be carried out continuously up to construction joints, the position and arrangement of which shall be pre-determined by the designer. Joints should be positioned where they are readily accessible for preparation and concreting. Construction joints should



be positioned to minimise the effects of the discontinuity on the durability, structural integrity and appearance of the structure. As far as possible, joints should be provided in non-aggressive zones, but if joints in aggressive zones can not be avoided, they should be sealed. Joints should be located away from regions of maximum stress caused by loading; particularly where shear and bond stresses are high.

Joints should be either vertical or horizontal. For a vertical construction joint, the lifts of concrete shall finish level or at right angles to the axis of the member. Concreting shall be continued right up to the joint.

Before resuming work at a construction joint when concrete has not yet fully hardened, all laitance shall be removed thoroughly. The surface should be roughened, care being taken to avoid dislodgement of coarse aggregates. Concrete may be brushed with a stiff brush soon after casting, while the concrete has only slightly stiffened. If the concrete has partially hardened, it may be treated by wire brushing or with a high pressure water jet, followed by drying with an air jet, immediately before the new concrete is placed. Fully hardened concrete shall be treated with mechanical hand tools or grit blasting, taking care not to split or crack the aggregates. The practice of first placing a layer of mortar or grout when concreting joints is not recommended. The old surface should be soaked with water, without leaving puddles, just before starting concreting. The new concrete shall be thoroughly compacted against it.

Where there is likely to be a delay before placing the next concrete lift, protruding reinforcement shall be protected. In all cases, where construction joints are made, the joint surface shall not be contaminated with release agents, dust, or sprayed curing membrane and reinforcement shall be firmly fixed in position at the correct cover.

The sequence of concreting, striking of forms and positioning of construction joints for every individual structure shall be decided, well in advance of the commencement of work.

#### **(4) Curing and Protection of Concrete**

The concrete shall be kept constantly wet for a minimum period of 14 (fourteen) days by ponding or covering with a layer of wet (but not dripping) sacking, canvas, hessian or similar absorbent material. Water should be applied on unformed surfaces



as soon as it can be done without marring the surface and on formed surfaces immediately after the forms are stripped.

Liquid membrane-forming curing compounds conforming to ASTM C 309, may be used in lieu of moist curing after approval. The curing efficiency shall be tested as per ASTM C 156. Such compounds shall be applied to all exposed surfaces of the concrete as soon as possible after the concrete has set, but not dried out. The membrane formed shall be stripped off afterwards. Impermeable membranes, such as sheet materials for curing concrete conforming to ASTM C 171, or polyethylene sheeting covering closely the concrete surface, may also be used to provide effective barrier against evaporation.

Steam curing under atmospheric pressure is adopted to develop high early strength of concrete, so that concrete members can be removed from the formwork and handled as early as possible. This is particularly suitable for precast concrete members. Steam curing is applied in enclosures or tunnels through which concrete members are transported on a conveyor system; alternatively, portable enclosures or plastic covers are placed over precast members. Steam is supplied to the enclosures. Various elements of the steam curing cycle, e.g. the delay in commencement of heating (i.e. extending pre-steaming period), the rate of increase of temperature, the level and time of constant temperature, and the rate of decrease of temperature, shall receive careful consideration. As a general guidance, the pre-steaming period should be about one to three hours, the rate of increase or decrease of temperature should not exceed 10 to 20°C per hour and the maximum temperature of curing can be about 70°C. The ideal steam curing cycle in a particular situation, is governed by the concrete mix proportions and type of cementitious materials and the strength required at the end of steam curing period, and shall be decided by prior trials. Steam curing of concrete shall be followed by water curing for at least seven days.

After placing and during the first stages of hardening, concrete shall be protected from harmful effects of sunrays, drying winds, cold, running water, shocks, vibrations, traffic including construction traffic etc.

### **18.8.5 Concreting in extreme weather**

#### **(1) Concreting in Hot Weather**

Special problems are encountered in the production, placement and

curing of concrete in hot weather. The climatic factors affecting concrete in hot weather are high ambient temperature, reduced relative humidity, high wind velocity and combination thereof. High temperatures result in rapid hydration of cement, increased evaporation of mixing water, greater mixing water demand, rapid loss of workability and large volume changes resulting in cracks.

The temperature of concrete at the time of placement should be as low as possible, but in no case more than 30°C. For high performance concrete, the temperature at the time of placement shall not exceed 25°C. If concreting has to be done in hot weather at ambient temperatures exceeding these limits of concrete temperature, steps shall be taken to sufficiently lower the temperature of ingredients of the concrete below the ambient. The contribution of each ingredient to the temperature of concrete is a function of the temperature, specific heat and quantity of that ingredient. Aggregates and mixing water exert the most pronounced effects on the temperature of concrete. Thus, in hot weather, all available means shall be used for maintaining these materials at as low temperature as practicable, such as;

- Use of chilled mixing water
- Use of crushed ice or flaked as a part of mixing water.
- Shading stockpiles of aggregates from direct rays of Sun.
- Sprinkling stockpiles of coarse aggregate with water and keeping them moist.
- Limiting temperature of cement to be preferably not in excess of 30°C at the time of use.

Period between mixing of concrete and placing shall be as short as possible. Immediately after compaction and surface finish, concrete shall be protected from evaporation of moisture, without letting ingress of external water, by means of wet (not dripping) gunny bags, hessian etc. Once the concrete has attained some degree of hardening (approximately 12 hours after mixing), moist curing shall be commenced and satisfactorily continued throughout the requisite period.

## **(2) Concreting in Cold Weather**

Effects of cold weather on concrete, in absence of special precautions, include;

- Delayed setting and hardening, slower rate of gain of strength,



- Irreparable loss of strength and durability, if freezing of concrete takes place at early ages, when it is still in plastic state. Even one cycle of freezing of concrete during the prehardening period may lower the compressive strength by 30 to 50 percent,
- Disruptive effects of freezing of pore water make hardened concrete vulnerable to repeated cycles of freezing and thawing, resulting in loss of compressive strength and modulus of elasticity.
- Stresses due to temperature differential within the concrete member at the time of removal of form insulations, may promote cracking.

When depositing concrete at or near freezing temperature, precautions shall be taken to ensure that the concrete shall have a temperature of at least 5°C at the time of placing. When necessary, concrete ingredients shall be heated before mixing, but cement shall not be heated artificially other than by the heat transmitted to it from other ingredients of the concrete. In general, heating of only the mixing water to about 65°C may suffice for this purpose.

The temperature of the concrete shall be maintained above freezing temperature (preferably above 2°C) until it has thoroughly hardened. This may be achieved with the help of proper insulating methods before the protection is removed.

Use of air-entraining admixtures conforming to IS 9103 increases the resistance of hardened concrete to freezing and thawing. To counter slower setting of concrete, non chloride-bearing accelerators can be used after approval. However, accelerators containing chloride shall not be used.

No frozen material or materials containing ice shall be used. All concrete damaged by frost shall be removed.

## **18.8.6 Steel reinforcement**

### **(1) Bending**

Reinforcement shall not be bent or straightened in a manner that will injure the material. All reinforcement shall be bent cold: Mechanised bending or prefabricated reinforcement shall be preferred. Bar bending schedules shall be prepared for all reinforcement work.



**(2) Placing**

All reinforcement shall be placed and maintained in positions shown on the drawings by providing proper cover blocks, spacers, supporting bars etc. High strength mortar or concrete of the same grade with smaller size aggregate shall be used for cover blocks. To ensure adequate cover, use of manufactured chairs is recommended.

**(3) Splicing and Lapping**

Splicing and lapping shall be in positions conforming to the drawings and for this purpose, all reinforcing bars shall be to the full lengths indicated thereon. However, suitable adjustment in the locations of the splices to accommodate the available lengths of bars, can be made with prior approval. In all cases of such adjustment, the requirements of lap length and other stipulations, as per Sections 15 and 16 shall be complied with.

**(4) Substitution of Bar Sizes**

In order to accommodate the available size of bars, use of bar sizes other than those shown on the drawings may be permitted with prior approval. In case of such substitution, the reinforcement actually used shall have an area equivalent to the original or slightly in excess thereof, provided further that the various stipulations of this Code are not violated by such substitution. The requirements with regard to bond stress, limitations of bar sizes, spacing of bars, cover, etc., shall be specially looked into.

**18.8.7 Falsework**

For design, fabrication, and erection of falsework, IRC:87 "Guidelines for the Design and Erection of Falsework for Road Bridges" shall be followed.

The formwork should be robust and strong and the joints should be leak proof. Form release agents of approved quality shall be used. The staging, scaffolding and shuttering are required to be properly designed so that their erection as well as striking can be conveniently done. The design should also ensure that at the time of striking, the concrete does not get disturbed and the forms are conveniently removed. Staging shall be of steel pipes or steel sections.

Where centering trusses or launching trusses are adopted for casting of superstructure, the joints of the centering or launching arrangement, whether welded, riveted or bolted, shall be thoroughly checked and various members of the centering trusses shall be examined for proper alignment and unintended deformation before proceeding with the concreting. Launching trusses and travelling forms shall be load tested.

The locations where fixing of reinforcement and placing of concrete are being done, shall be accessible to the inspecting officers at all stages of construction.

Forms shall not be released until the concrete has achieved strength of at least twice the stress to which the concrete may be subjected at the time of removal of formwork. In absence of tests, generally, the striking period may be as specified in IRC:87.

### **18.8.8 Inspection and testing of structures**

#### **(1) Inspection**

To ensure proper performance, it is necessary that each step in concreting which will be covered by the next step is inspected as the work proceeds. Immediately after stripping the formwork, all concrete shall be carefully inspected and any defective work or small defects shall be either removed or made good before concrete has thoroughly hardened. Concrete members shall be inspected within 15 days for occurrence of cracks due to shrinkage, temperature, local restraint, undue deflection and deformation.

#### **(2) Testing of Concrete in Structures**

In case of doubt regarding the grade of concrete in the structure, either due to poor workmanship or based on results of cube strength tests, compressive strength tests of concrete shall be carried out by core tests and/or non-destructive tests.

#### **(3) Core Test**

The points from which core samples are to be taken and the number of core samples required shall be decided so as to be representative of the whole of concrete concerned. In no case, however, shall fewer than three cores be tested. Cores shall be prepared and tested as described in IS 516.

Concrete in the member represented by a core test shall be considered acceptable, if the average equivalent cube strength of the cores is equal to at least 85 percent of the characteristic strength of the grade of concrete specified for the corresponding age and no individual core has strength less than 75 percent.

Core tests may also be required for other purposes like repair, retrofitting and strengthening of structure where requirement of strength could differ.

#### **(4) Non-Destructive Tests**

Nondestructive tests are used to obtain estimation of the properties of concrete in the structure.



The methods adopted include ultrasonic pulse velocity [IS:13311(Part 1)] and rebound hammer [IS 13311 (Part 2)], probe penetration (ASTM C 803), pullout (ASTM C 900) and maturity (ASTM C 1074). Non-destructive tests provide alternatives to core tests for estimating the strength of concrete in a structure, or can supplement the data obtained from a limited number of core specimens tested. These methods are based on measuring a concrete property that bears some relationship to strength. The accuracy of these methods is determined by the degree of correlation between strength and quality of the concrete and the parameter measured by the non-destructive tests.

Any of these methods may be adopted, in which case the acceptance criteria shall be agreed upon prior to testing.

#### **18.8.9 Load tests of structures**

##### **(1) Load Test for Flexural Member**

In case the core test results do not satisfy the requirement in Clause 18.8.8 (4) or where such tests have not been done, load test may be carried out if specifically desired. Load test should be carried out as soon as possible after expiry of 28 days from time of placing of concrete. Procedure as per IRC publication SP:51 'Guidelines for Load Testing of Bridges' may be adopted.

##### **(2) Members Other than Flexural Members**

Members other than flexural members should be preferably investigated by analysis.



## ANNEXURE A-1

ACTIONS, DESIGN SITUATIONS AND  
COMBINATION OF ACTIONS

## A1-1 General

Section 5.0 "Basis of Design" describes the approach adopted for taking into consideration various limit states, which shall not be exceeded by the bridge structure and its elements, when subjected to combined effect of actions in various design situations. The values of actions and partial factors to be used in different combinations for verification of design by Limit State Method are given in IRC:6. Annexure-B, Table-1 of IRC:6 gives loads and load combinations for verification of design by working load/allowable stress (WL/AS) method.

The description of actions, their classification, nomenclature of design situations and combination for verifying different limit states as applicable to concrete bridges, are explained in this Annexure. The terms loads and force (arising out of friction, buoyancy etc) are also used to represent 'Actions' in IRC:6, and in the description below.

## A1-2 Classification of Action

The description of actions and their notations given as per IRC:6, unless otherwise stated.

## (1) Permanent Actions - G

## (a) Permanent Action

## (i) Self Weight/Dead Load

Self-weight of structure due to gravity.

## (ii) Backfill Weight

To be treated as D.L. when present. (Not separately defined in IRC:6 for WL/AS method).

(iii) Earth Pressure: ( $F_{ep}$ )

In IRC:6, the increased earth pressure due to live load surcharge considered is included by convention in  $F_{ep}$ . For Limit State Method the surcharge due to live load needs to be taken as a variable load together with other live loads. (For WL/AS method of design, its effect is evaluated in combination with earth pressure  $F_{ep}$ .)

**(iv) Prestressing Force: ( $P$ )**

In analysis of structure  $P$  is considered as a force acting on concrete elements which has time dependant variation, and also superior (i.e. higher estimate) and inferior (i.e. lower estimate) values.

**(v) Secondary Effects ( $F_s$ )**

Such as creep, shrinkage and settlement.

**Note:** Second order effects arising from the deformed geometry are not considered as secondary effects. These are considered for verification of Ultimate Limit State of Deformation only.

**(b) Variable Gravity Loads Treated as Permanent Loads**

**(i) Super Imposed Dead Load**

Loads from hand rail, crash barrier, road furniture, footpath and actual or provisional loads from services, etc.

**(ii) Surfacing and Wearing Coat**

In Limit State Method superior and inferior values may be used, which should account for re-surfacing, with or without removing existing coat, and possibility of change in type of surfacing.

**(iii) Snow Load**

Snow loads, if present, are treated in the same way as Dead Load depending on the depth of snow on superstructure. The design value of live load is modified depending on the restrictions on operation of vehicular loads which give rise to different design situations.

**(c) Quasi-Permanent Loads**

There are variable loads which act for a major part of the structures design life. By convention, loads acting for more than 50% of the design life are called quasi-permanent. In load combinations, they are treated as variable loads with different values depending on the action effects under evaluation. Temperature load is an example, where it has a permanent component (casting temperature), semi-permanent component (seasonal variation from casting temperature) and varying component (daily variation from seasonal temperature).

**(2) Variable Actions – Q****(a) Vehicular****(i) Vehicular live load (Q)**

Load due to gravity

**(ii) Impact factor due to vehicular gravity load ( $Q_{im}$ )**

A factor for converting dynamic increment of gravity load, due to vehicle travelling at high speed on uneven surface of wearing coat, to equivalent static load.

**(iii) Longitudinal forces**

- Caused by tractive effort of vehicles ( $F_a$ ) or by braking ( $F_b$ ) and / or
- Longitudinal force from bearings due to their type and configuration ( $F_p$ ).

**(iv) Centrifugal force of vehicles travelling at high speed along a curved track  $F_{cf}$ .****(v) Pedestrian Load/Foot Path Load****(vi) Earth Pressure Surcharge Effect due to Live Load ( $F_{cp}$ )****(b) Loads of Environmental Origin****(i) Temperature effects due to restraints to free structural deformation ( $F_{de}$ ) (excluding restraints due to frictional resistance at bearings).****(ii) Effect of thermal gradient in the structure.****(iii) Wind Load (W)**

Normally used as static load acting on bridge elements. For wind sensitive structure or elements of structure dynamic analysis and dynamic wind force is stipulated.

**(c) Hydraulic Actions**

These are variable loads, grouped together as sub-set of variable loads and their significant effect in bridge design.

**(i) Buoyancy effect ( $G_b$ )****(ii) Water current forces ( $F_{wc}$ )**

Including both drag and lift effects.

**(iii) Wave Pressures ( $F_{wp}$ )**



### (3) **Accidental Actions**

Accidental loads are those loads whose occurrence or frequency cannot be predicted, and originate from unintended or undesirable situations.

#### (a) **Impact of external bodies**

- (i) Vehicle collision on elements of bridge structure ( $V_c$ ).
- (ii) Barge impact or impact due to floating bodies in water current.
- (iii) Vehicular Impact on Crash Barriers.

#### (b) **Seismic Hazards**

Seismic situations considered in the design are rare events [even more rare than type 3(a)] having return period of the order of few hundred years. They produce following types of loads.

- (i) Inertial loads due to self-mass generated in bridge structure by ground acceleration.
- (ii) Inertial loads due to mass of vehicular live load.
- (iii) Hydrodynamic forces generated on parts of bridge submerged under water.
- (iv) Increased earth pressures.
- (v) Effects of liquefaction of soils.

### **A1-3 . Design Situation and Load Combination**

Various actions defined in Clause A1-2, act on the bridge structure at different time and in different combinations. The magnitudes of the loads also differ from time to time. Thus the loading conditions to which bridge structure is exposed are extremely large. In practice the verification that the limit states are not exceeded is carried out for a limited number of combinations, each of which represents likely condition of bridge loading during its design service life. The load combinations and the partial factors of loads to be considered in that combination are defined in IRC:6-2010. Basically, the following four design situations are considered, depending on the duration of the load and the frequency of occurrence of load combinations.

#### **Persistent Design Situation (Basic Load Combinations)**

It is the design situation that is relevant during a period of the same order as the design working life of the structure. Generally it refers to conditions of normal use.

This includes permanent and quasi-permanent loads as well as variable loads like live load, wind, hydraulic loads like water current buoyancy etc.

## **Transient Design Situation**

It is the design situation that is relevant during a period much shorter than the design working life of the structure but which has a high probability of occurrence

A transient design situation refers to temporary conditions of the structure, of use, or exposure, such as those arising during construction or when restrictions are put on its use.

## **Accidental Design Situation**

It is the design situation involving exceptional conditions of the structure or its exposure, including fire, explosion, impact or local failure.

For concrete bridge structures, vehicle impact load is usually considered. The fire hazard or explosion pressures, if specified, (e.g. as in case of material storage or human occupancy below city flyovers) shall be based on the Indian Standards specifying fire resistance (as per IS 456, IS 1641 and IS 1642) and blast resistance (as per IS 4991).

## **Seismic Design Situation**

It is the design situation involving exceptional conditions of the structure when subjected to a seismic event.

Generally, it is not economical to design bridge structure to remain within elastic limits when subjected to 'Design Basis Earthquake' which is defined in IRC:6-2010. Parts of the bridge structure are permitted to suffer damage during the design event. At higher level of seismic event, the bridge elements are expected to suffer large but repairable damage without failure or collapse. Presently, IRC-6 is specifying force-based design methods, which are deemed to achieve the aim of satisfactory performance.

Since the structural behaviour of the bridge under seismic conditions is completely different (i.e. non-elastic response is considered) from the response to other loads (which are essentially in elastic range), the seismic situations are separately treated.

## **A1-4 Limit States to be Considered**

### **(1) Limit States of Strength (ULS)**

Three limit states are checked:

- (i) Stability of overall structure or its elements,
- (ii) Failure of members or the whole structure by buckling of its elements,

- (iii) Failure of member at its critically loaded section under action of axial force, bending moment, shear, and torsion.

**(2) Limit States of Serviceability (SLS)**

Following limit states of serviceability are covered in this Code:

- (i) Limit state of stresses
- (ii) Limit state of deformation (deflection)
- (iii) Limit state of crack width

Other limit states such as limit state of vibration and limit state of fatigue may be important for some bridge structures. Specialist literature or international standards may be referred for the same.

Different serviceability limit states are governed by different sets of load combinations. The following sets of load combinations are defined in Section 12.

**(a) Rare combinations (also called Characteristic Combination or Infrequent Combination)**

In these situations bridge element, are subjected to maximum design loads leading to maximum stress levels. These basic combinations are used for checking 'limit state of maximum stress levels' in bridge elements.

**(b) Frequent Combinations**

These represents design situation that occurs repeatedly in service.

The maximum allowable deflections, crack width in prestressed elements with bonded tendons (and vibration where specified) are checked for the frequently occurring situation.

**(c) Quasi-Permanent Combinations**

These combinations are used to consider long term action effects. Crack widths in reinforced concrete elements and prestressed elements with unbonded tendons where durability is affected and effects of settlement, creep etc., caused by permanent or more or less permanent actions listed in A-1.2(1), are evaluated with quasi-permanent combinations.



## ANNEXURE A-2

## ADDITIONAL INFORMATION AND DATA ABOUT PROPERTIES OF CONCRETE AND STEEL

### A2.1 General

Section 6 gives values of various design properties. The co-relations on which these are based are given in the following Sub-sections. Also, the expressions for creep and shrinkage for different types of cements and in different conditions of relative humidity, are given. Effect of high temperature curing, and multi-axial stresses is indicated. High temperature curing also increases the rate of relaxation loss of steel in pre-tensioned pre-cast members. Method of calculating the same is given.

An informative Sub-section is added about partial material factor for concrete, and use of cores taken for measuring in-situ strength of concrete structures. The test results of cores taken from existing structure are also used for retrofitting of old bridges by using probable equivalent design cube strength  $f_{ck}$ , few observations on the co-relation between the two are given for guidance of designers.

For more detailed information on these and various other properties of concrete which may be needed for special applications, while still using the general principles of this Code specialist literature may be referred.

### A2.2 Co-relation between Compressive Cube Strength and Other Concrete Properties

**Table 6.5** gives directly the design properties of concrete in terms of its 28 days compressive (cube) strength. The values are based on the following co-relationships, which are experimentally established. However, the scatter in values is larger than the scatter in cube strengths, since co-relationship is not exact, but is a best fit to actual data.

$$(1) \quad f_{cm} = f_{ck} + 10, \quad f_{cm} \text{ and } f_{ck} \text{ in MPa} \quad \text{Eq. A2-1}$$

$$(2) \quad (i) \quad f_{ctm} = 0.259 (f_{ck})^{2/3} \quad \text{For } f_{ck} \leq 60 \text{ MPa} \quad \text{Eq. A2-2}$$

$$(ii) \quad f_{ctm} = 2.27 \ln[1 + (f_{cm}/12.5)] \quad \text{For } f_{ck} > 60 \text{ MPa}$$

$$(3) \quad f_{ctk;0.05} = 0.7 f_{ctm} \quad f_{ctk;0.05} \text{ is 5\% fractile} \quad \text{Eq. A2-3}$$

$$(4) \quad f_{ck;0.95} = 1.3 \times f_{cm} \quad f_{ck;0.95} \text{ is 0.95\% fractile} \quad \text{Eq. A2-4}$$

$$(5) \quad E_{cm} = 22 \left( \frac{f_{cm}}{12.5} \right)^{0.3}, \quad E_{cm} \text{ in GPa} \quad \text{Eq. A2-5}$$

$$(6) \quad \varepsilon_{cl} (‰) = 0.653 \times (f_{cm})^{0.31} < 2.8 \quad \text{Eq. A2-6}$$

$$(7) \quad \varepsilon_{cu1} (‰) = 2.8 + 27 \left[ \frac{98 - 0.8 f_{cm}}{100} \right]^4 \quad \text{Eq. A2-7}$$

for  $f_{ck} > 60$  MPa

$$(8) \quad \varepsilon_{c2} (‰) = 2.0 + 0.085 (0.8 f_{ck} - 50)^{0.53} \quad \text{Eq. A2-8}$$

for  $f_{ck} > 60$  MPa

$$(9) \quad \varepsilon_{cu2} (‰) = 2.6 + 35 \left[ \frac{90 - 0.8 f_{ck}}{100} \right]^4 \quad \text{Eq. A2-9}$$

for  $f_{ck} > 60$  MPa

$$(10) \quad n = 1.4 + 23.4 \left[ \frac{90 - 0.8 f_{ck}}{100} \right]^4 \quad \text{Eq. A2-10}$$

for  $f_{ck} > 60$  MPa

$$(11) \quad \varepsilon_{c3} (‰) = 1.75 + 0.55 \left[ \frac{0.8 f_{ck} - 50}{40} \right] \quad \text{Eq. A2-11}$$

for  $f_{ck} > 60$  MPa

$$(12) \quad \varepsilon_{cu3} (‰) = 2.6 + 35 \left[ \frac{90 - 0.8 f_{ck}}{100} \right]^4 \quad \text{Eq. A2-12}$$

for  $f_{ck} > 60$  MPa

### A2.3 Development of Strength with Time

#### (1) Gain of strength with time

Equations given in Clause 6.4.2.2 are valid for concretes made from ordinary Portland Cements. For other types of cements mentioned in Section 18, the value of 'S' in equations may be modified as follows :

S = 0.2 for rapid hardening high strength cements.  
= 0.38 for slow hardening cement.

### A2.4 Effect of High Temperature on Strength (Clause 6.4.2.2)

In case of heat curing the compressive strength of concrete at age 't' before 28 days,  $f_{cm}(t)$  may be estimated from expression 6.2 & 6.3 in which the concrete age 't' is substituted by temperature adjusted concrete age (maturity) obtained from Eq. A2-13.

The effect of elevated or reduced temperatures within the range 0 - 80°C on the maturity of concrete may be taken into account by adjusting the concrete age according to the following expression:

$$t_T = \sum_{i=1}^n \Delta t_i \exp \left[ 13.65 - \frac{4000}{273 + T_{(\Delta t_i)} / t_o} \right] \quad \text{Eq. A2-13}$$

where

$t_T$  = is the temperature adjusted concrete age which replaces time  $t$  in the corresponding equations.

$T(\Delta t)$  = is the temperature in °C during the time period  $\Delta t$ ,

$\Delta t_i$  = is the number of days where a temperature T prevails.

$t_o$  = 1°C

### A2.5 Basic Equations for Creep Co-Efficient

(1) The creep coefficient  $\phi(t, t_o)$  may be calculated from:

$$\phi(t, t_o) = \phi_o \beta_c(t, t_o) \quad \text{Eq. A2-14}$$

where

$$\phi_o = \phi_{RH} \cdot \beta(f_{cm}) \cdot \beta(t_o) \quad \text{Eq. A2-15}$$

$\phi_{RH}$  is a factor to allow for the effect of relative humidity on the notional creep coefficient.



$$\phi_{RH} = 1 + \frac{1 - RH/100}{0.1 \sqrt[3]{h_o}} \text{ for } f_{cm} \leq 45 \text{ MPa} \quad \text{Eq. A2-16}$$

$$\phi_{RH} = \left[ 1 + \frac{1 - RH/100}{0.1 \sqrt[3]{h_o}} \cdot \alpha_1 \right] \cdot \alpha_2 \text{ for } f_{cm} > 45 \text{ MPa} \quad \text{Eq. A2-17}$$

$RH$  is the relative humidity of the ambient environment in percent.

$\beta(f_{cm})$  is a factor to allow for the effect of concrete strength on the notional creep coefficient.

$$\beta(f_{cm}) = \frac{18.78}{\sqrt{f_{cm}}} \quad \text{Eq. A2-18}$$

$f_{cm}$  is the mean compressive strength of concrete in MPa at the age of 28 days

$\beta(t_o)$  is a factor to allow for the effect of concrete age at loading on the notional creep coefficient.

$$\beta(t_o) = \frac{1}{0.1 + t_o^{0.20}} \quad \text{Eq. A2-19}$$

$h_o$  is the notional size of the member in mm where:

$$h_o = \frac{2A_c}{u} \quad \text{Eq. A2-20}$$

$A_c$  is the cross-sectional area

$u$  is the perimeter of the member in contact with the atmosphere.

$\beta_c(t, t_o)$  is a coefficient to describe the development of creep with time after loading, and may be estimated using the following equation:

$$\beta_c(t, t_o) = \left[ \frac{(t - t_o)}{\beta_H + t - t_o} \right]^{0.3} \quad \text{Eq. A2-21}$$

$t$  is the age of concrete in days at the moment considered.

$t_o$  is the age of concrete at loading in days.

$t - t_o$  is the non-adjusted duration of loading in days.

$\beta_H$  is a coefficient depending on the relative humidity (RH in percent) and the notional member size ( $h_o$  in mm), it may be estimated from:

$$\beta_H = 1.5[1 + (0.012RH)^{10}] h_o + 250 \leq 1500 \text{ for } f_{cm} \leq 45 \text{ MPa} \quad \text{Eq. A2-22}$$

$$\beta_H = 1.5[1+(0.012RH)^{18}] h_o + 250 \quad \alpha_3 \leq 1500 \quad \alpha_3 \text{ for } f_{cm} > 45 \text{ Mpa} \quad \text{Eq. A2-23}$$

$\alpha_{1/2/3}$  are coefficients to consider the influence of the concrete strength:

$$\alpha_1 = \left[ \frac{43.75}{f_{cm}} \right]^{0.7} \quad \alpha_2 = \left[ \frac{43.75}{f_{cm}} \right]^{0.2} \quad \alpha_3 = \left[ \frac{43.75}{f_{cm}} \right]^{0.5} \quad \text{Eq. A2-24}$$

The effect of type of cement on the creep coefficient of concrete may be taken into account by modifying the age of loading  $t_o$  in Eq. (A2-19) according to Eq. A2-25.

$$t_o = t_{o,T} \left( \frac{9}{2 + t_{o,T}^{1.2}} + 1 \right)^\alpha \geq 0.5 \quad \text{Eq. A2-25}$$

where

$t_{o,T}$  is the temperature adjusted age of concrete at loading in days adjusted according to Eq.A2-13.

$\alpha$  is a power which depends on type of cement.

= -1 for slow setting cement.

= 0 for Normal cement.

= 1 for Rapid hardening cement.]

- (2) The values given in Table 6.9 may be adopted for creep of concrete at 70 years, in normal atmospheric conditions of temperature and humidity.
- (3) The mean coefficient of variation of the above predicted creep data deduced from a computerised data bank of laboratory test results, is of the order of 20 percent.

## A2.6

### Basic Equations for Determining the Drying Shrinkage Strain

The basic drying shrinkage strain  $\varepsilon_{cd,0}$  is calculated from:

$$\varepsilon_{cd,0} = 0.85 \left[ (220 + 110 \cdot \alpha_{ds1}) \exp \left( -\alpha_{ds2} \cdot \frac{f_{cm}}{f_{cmo}} \right) \right] \cdot 10^{-6} \cdot \beta_{RH} \quad \text{Eq. A2-26}$$

$$\beta_{RH} = 1.55 \left[ 1 - \frac{RH}{RH_O} \right]^3 \quad \text{Eq. A2-27}$$

where

$f_{cm}$  is the mean compressive strength (MPa)

$f_{cm0}$  = 12.5 MPa

$\alpha_{ds1}$  is a coefficient which depends on the type of cement.

= 3 for slow setting cement.

= 4 for Normal cement.

= 6 for rapid hardening.

$\alpha_{ds2}$  is a coefficient which depends on the type of cement.

= 0.13 for slow setting cement.

= 0.12 for Normal cement.

= 0.11 for rapid hardening cement.

$RH$  is the ambient relative humidity ( percent)

$RH_0$  = 100 percent.

## A2.7 Stress-strain Relation for Non-Linear Structural Analysis

The relation between  $\sigma_c$  and  $\varepsilon_c$  shown in Fig. A2-1 (compressive stress and shortening strain shown as positive values) for short term uni-axial loading is described by the Equation below:

$$\frac{\sigma_c}{f_{cm}} = \frac{k\eta - \eta^2}{1 + (k-2)\eta} \quad \text{Eq. A2-28}$$

where

$$\eta = \frac{\varepsilon_c}{\varepsilon_{c1}}$$

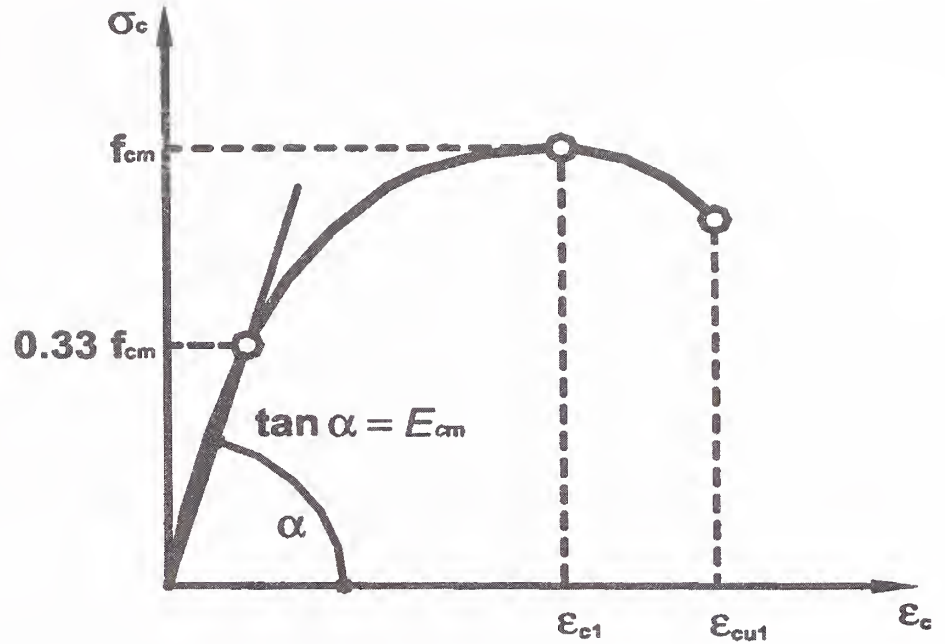
$\varepsilon_{c1}$  is the strain at peak stress according to Table 6.5

$$k = 1.05 E_{cm} \times \varepsilon_{c1} / f_{cm}$$

The above equation A2-28 is valid for  $0 < \varepsilon_c < \varepsilon_{cu1}$  Where  $\varepsilon_{c1}$  is the nominal ultimate strain.

Other idealised stress-strain relations may be used, if they adequately represent the behaviour of the concrete considered.





**Note:** The use  $0.33 f_{cm}$  for the definition of  $E_{cm}$  is approximate

**Fig. A2-1 Schematic Representation of the Stress-Strain Relation for Structural Analysis**

## A2.8 Multi-Axial Stresses

Confinement of concrete results in higher strength and higher critical strains. As a result stress-strain relationship is modified. The other basic material characteristics may be considered as unaffected for design.

In the absence of more precise data, the stress-strain relationship shown in Fig. A2.2 may be used, with increased characteristic strength and strains as given below:

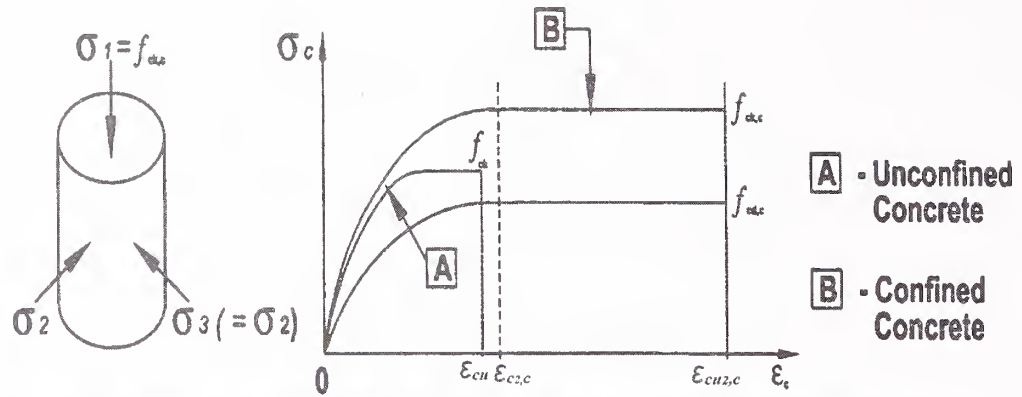
$$f_{ck,c} = f_{ck} (1 + 5\sigma_2 / f_{ck}) \text{ for } \sigma_2 \leq 0.05 f_{ck} \quad \text{Eq. A2-29}$$

$$f_{ck,c} = f_{ck} (1.125 + 2.5\sigma_2 / f_{ck}) \text{ for } \sigma_2 > 0.05 f_{ck} \quad \text{Eq. A2-30}$$

$$\epsilon_{c2,c} = \epsilon_{c2} (f_{ck,c} / f_{ck})^2 \quad \text{Eq. A2-31}$$

$$\epsilon_{cu2,c} = \epsilon_{cu2} + 0.2\sigma_2 / f_{ck} \quad \text{Eq. A2-32}$$

Where  $\sigma_2 (= \sigma_3)$  is the effective lateral compressive stress at the ULS due to confinement and  $\epsilon_{c2}$  and  $\epsilon_{cu2}$  follow from Table 6.5. Confinement can be achieved by adequately closed links or cross-ties, which reach the plastic condition due to lateral extension of the concrete.

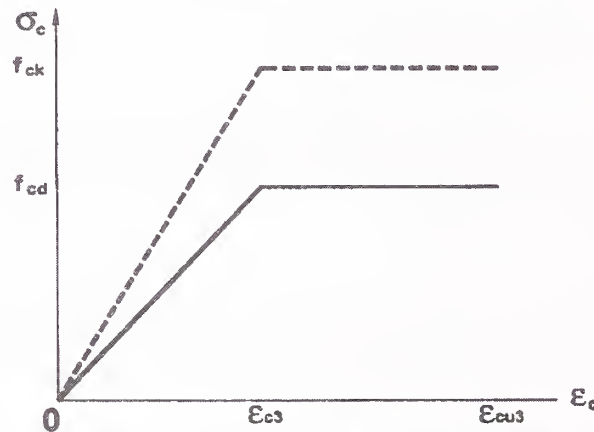


**Fig. A2-2 Stress-Strain Relationship for Confined Concrete**

## A2.9

### Other Simplified Stress-Strain Relationship for Design of Cross-Section (Section 6.4.3.8)

- (1) Other simplified stress-strain relationships may be used if they are equivalent to or more conservative than the one defined in Section 6.4.3.8., such as Bi-linear stress-strain diagram as per Fig.A2.3 (compressive stress and strain shown as positive values) is with values of  $\varepsilon_{c3}$  and  $\varepsilon_{cu3}$  according to Table 6.5.



**Fig. A2.3 Bi-Linear Stress-Strain Relation**

- (2) A rectangular stress distribution (as given in Fig.A2.4) may be assumed. The factor  $\lambda$ , defining the effective height of the compression zone and the factor  $\eta$ , defining the effective strength, follow from:

$$\lambda = 0.8 \quad \text{for } f_{ck} \leq 60 \text{ MPa} \quad \text{Eq. A2-33}$$

$$\lambda = 0.8 - (f_{ck} - 60)/500 \quad \text{for } 60 < f_{ck} \leq 110 \text{ MPa} \quad \text{Eq. A2-34}$$

and

$$\eta = 1.0 \quad \text{for } f_{ck} \leq 60 \text{ MPa} \quad \text{Eq. A2-35}$$

$$\eta = 1.0 - (f_{ck} - 60)/250 \quad \text{for } 60 < f_{ck} \leq 110 \text{ MPa} \quad \text{Eq. A2-36}$$

**Note:** If the width of the compression zone decreases in the direction of the extreme compression fibre, the value  $\eta_{fcd}$  should be reduced by 10 percent.

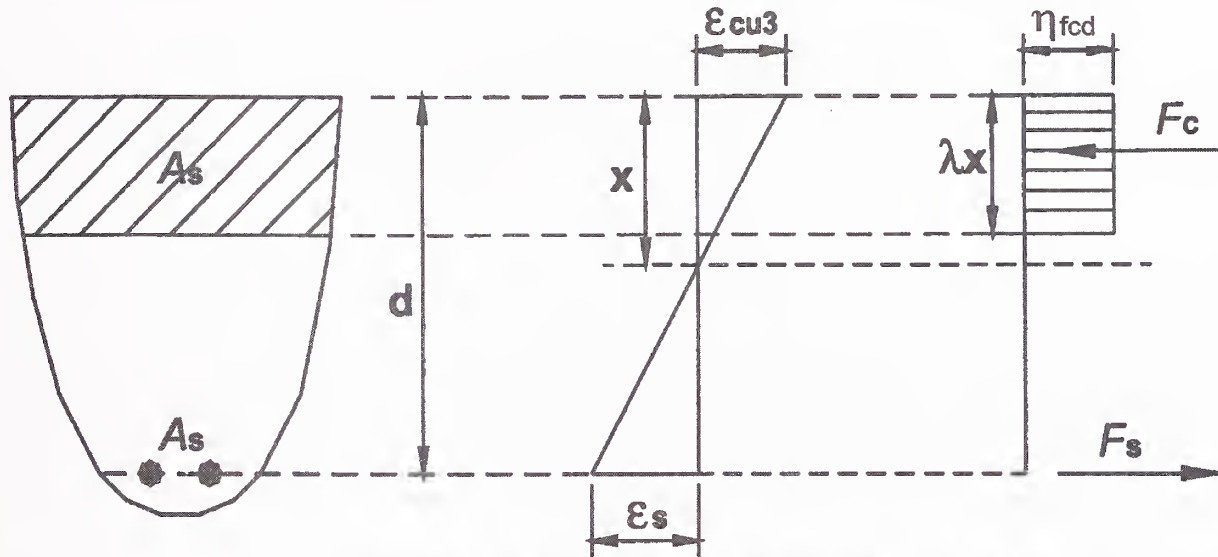


Fig. A2-4 Rectangular Stress Distribution

#### A2.10 Partial Safety Factor $\gamma_c$ for Concrete

The material partial factor  $\gamma_c$  of concrete includes consideration of various factors as described below.

Partial material safety factor  $\gamma_c$  which is considered to have a value of 1.5, consists of two parts.

The first part is the factor  $\gamma_M = \gamma_{M1} \cdot \gamma_{M2} = 1.3$ , which considers unfavourable deviation of concrete strength from its characteristic value  $f_{ck}$ , model uncertainties, variation of geometrical properties and overall safety level. It is based on log-normal distribution:

$$\gamma_M = \exp[\alpha_R \cdot \beta \cdot V_R - 1.645 V_R] \quad \text{Eq. A2-37}$$

with

$\alpha_R = 0.8$  Sensitivity factor for resistance.

$\beta = 3.8$  Reliability index (used for targeting desired level of non-occurrence of failure at ULS in this Code.

$$V_R = \sqrt{(V_m^2 + V_G^2 + V_f^2)}$$

$V_f = 0.15$  coefficient of variation of material properties.

$V_m = 0.05$  coefficient of variation of model uncertainties.



$V_G = 0.05$  coefficient of variation of geometrical properties.

Consequently the part of  $\gamma_M$  which represents the variability of material properties is:

$$\gamma_{M1} = \exp[\alpha_R \cdot \beta \cdot V_f] = 1.23$$

The part  $\gamma_{M2}$  represents the variation of geometrical properties and model uncertainties:

$$\gamma_{M2} = \frac{\gamma_M}{\gamma_{M1}} = \frac{1.30}{1.23} = 1.05$$

The second part of  $\gamma_c$  is a conversion factor  $\gamma_{conv} = 1.15$ , used with cylindrical strength which takes into account the decrease of in-place strength versus the characteristic strength  $f_{ck}$ . In the literature the inverse value of 0.85 often is used. (This factor for use with cube strength becomes 0.67). The mean values of concrete compressive strength controlled at plant and the mean value of in-situ concrete compressive strength are approximately of the same magnitude for the concrete age at 28 days. But due to other effects, such as transportation temperature changes, placing, compaction and curing, the variation of in-situ concrete strength is essentially larger (coefficient of variation is about 0.23) than the variation of strength of concrete at plant (coefficient of variation is about 0.13). Therefore, the safety factor  $\gamma_M = 1.3$  is not adequate to cover this increase of variation and additional factor should be used  $\gamma_{conv}$ . To find this additional factor the in-situ strength, or a ratio

$\frac{f_s}{f_{ck}}$  was evaluated. The ratio  $\frac{f_s}{f_{ck}}$  ( $f_s$  in place strength of concrete was considered as a random variable (log-normally distributed). Based on the German and Canadian data the 5 percent fractile of this ratio was found as a value of 0.90 for columns and walls and as a value of 0.83 for slabs and beams. These results corroborate the use of  $\gamma_{conv} = 1.15$ , increasing  $\gamma_m$  from 1.3 to 1.5 which correspond to the factor 0.85 used with the cylinder strength (or 0.67 used with cube strength).

## A2.11 Relaxation of Steel

The relaxation loss shall be obtained from the manufacturers test certificates, and verified by independent tests, if required. Relaxation characteristics are dependent on the manufacturing process. In the absence of specific data, for steels conforming to BIS codes, the following relationships may be used for calculation of relaxation loss up to 30 years. The long term loss after 50 years may be taken as three times the 1000 hour loss.

Eq. A2-38 is a general equation describing relationship between relaxation loss at time  $t$  in hours ( $\rho_t$ ) and that at 1000 hours ( $\rho_{1000}$ ). The exponent  $k$  in the equation is approximately given by  $\log(\rho_{1000} / \rho_{100})$ .

$$\rho_t = \rho_{1000} \left[ \frac{t}{1000} \right]^k \quad \text{Eq. A2 -38}$$

Wires/strands of normal relaxation for which IS 1785 - Part 1, IS 6003, and IS 6006 specify 1000 hour relaxation loss value at not more than 5 percent and 100 hour relaxation loss as not more than 3.5 percent,  $k$  is 0.155.

Wires/strands of low relaxation for which IS 14268 specifies 1000 hour relaxation value at not less than 2.5 percent and 100 hour value at not less than 1.8 percent,  $k$  is 0.143.

For bars/rods IS 2090 does not specify 100 hour relaxation loss value. Also 1000 hour relaxation loss value is not expressed as % value. For this reason the applicable strength,  $\rho_{1000}$ ,  $\rho_{100}$  loss values will have to be obtained from the manufacturer's data.

For steels conforming to other national standards reference shall be made to the respective standards.

## A2.12 Effect of High Temperature Curing on Relaxation of Steel

For pre-tensioned members, the effect on the relaxation losses of increasing the temperature while curing the concrete, shall be considered.

The relaxation is accelerated during the application of thermal curing when thermal strain is introduced at the same time. Finally, the relaxation rate is reduced at the end of the treatment.

An equivalent time  $t_{eq}$  should be added to the time after tensioning  $t$  in the relaxation time functions to cater for the effects of the heat treatment on the prestress loss due to the relaxation of the prestressing steel. This equivalent time can be estimated from the expression:

$$t_{eq} = \frac{1.14(T_{max} - 20)}{T_{max} - 20} \sum_{i=1}^n (T(\Delta t_i) - 20) \Delta t_i \quad \text{Eq. A2-39}$$

where

$t_{eq}$  is the equivalent time (in hours)

$T(\Delta t_i)$  is the temperature (in °C) during the time interval  $\Delta t_i$

$T_{max}$  is the maximum temperature (in °C) during the heat treatment.



**ANNEXURE A-3****LIST OF STANDARDS AND OTHER NORMATIVE REFERENCES****(1) List of Bureau of Indian Standards Codes**

<b>Sr. Standard No. No</b>	<b>Title</b>
(1) IS 269 : 1989	Specification for 33 grade ordinary portland cement (Fourth Revision)
(2) IS 383 : 1970	Specification for coarse and fine aggregates from natural sources for concrete (Second Revision)
(3) IS 432 : Part 1 : 1982	Specification for mild steel and medium tensile steel bars and hard-drawn steel wire for concrete reinforcement: Part 1 mild steel and medium tensile steel bars (Third Revision)
(4) IS 432 Part 2 : 1982	Specification for mild steel and medium tensile steel bars and hard-drawn steel wire for concrete reinforcement: Part-2 hard-drawn steel wire (Third Revision)
(5) IS 455 : 1989	Specification for Portland slag cement (Fourth Revision)
(6) IS 456 : 2000	Code of practice for plain and reinforced concrete
(7) IS 516 : 1959	Method of test for strength of concrete
(8) IS 822 : 1970	Code of procedure for inspection of welds
(9) IS 1199 : 1959	Methods of sampling and analysis of concrete
(10) IS 1343 : 2010	Code of practice for prestressed concrete
(11) IS 1489 : Part 1 : 1991	Specification for portland pozzolana cement Part-1 Fly Ash based (Third Revision)
(12) IS 1608 : 1995	Mechanical testing of metals - Tensile Testing (Third Revision)
(13) IS 1641 : 1988	Code of practice for fire safety of building (General : General principles of fire grading and classification)
(14) IS 1642 : 1989	Fire safety of building (general : details of construction - code of practice)
(15) IS 1765 : 1980	Direct current potentiometers (Second Revision)



- (16) IS 1785 : Part 1 : 1983 Specification for Plain Hard-drawn Steel Wire for Prestressed Concrete - Part 1 : Cold Drawn Stress-relieved Wire (Second Revision)
- (17) IS 1786 : 2008 Specification for high strength deformed steel bars and wires for concrete reinforcement (Third Revision)
- (18) IS 2090 : 1983 Specification for high tensile steel bars used in prestressed concrete (First Revision)
- (19) IS 2386 : Part 1 : 1963 Methods of test for Aggregates for Concrete - Part 1 : Particle Size and Shape
- (20) IS 2386 : Part 2 : 1963 Methods of test for Aggregates for Concrete - Part 2 : Estimation of deleterious materials and organic impurities
- (21) IS 2386 : Part 3 : 1963 Methods of test for Aggregates for Concrete - Part 3 : Specific gravity, density, voids, absorption and bulking
- (22) IS 2386 : Part 4 : 1963 Methods of test for Aggregates for Concrete - Part 4 : Mechanical properties
- (23) IS 2386 : Part 5 : 1963 Methods of test for Aggregates for Concrete - Part 5 : Soundness
- (24) IS 2386 : Part 6 : 1963 Methods of test for Aggregates for Concrete - Part 6 : Measuring mortar making properties of fine aggregates
- (25) IS 2386 : Part 7 : 1963 Methods of test for Aggregates for Concrete - Part 7 : Alkali Aggregate Reactivity
- (26) IS 2386 : Part 8 : 1963 Methods of test for Aggregates for Concrete - Part 8 : Petrographic Examination
- (27) IS 2751 : 1979 Code of practice for Welding of Mild Steel Plain and Deformed Bars For Reinforced Concrete Construction (First Revision)
- (28) IS 3025 : Part 17:1984 Methods of sampling and test (Physical and chemical) for water and wastewater : Part 17 : Non-filterable residue (Total suspended solids) (First Revision)
- (29) IS 3025 : Part 18:1984 Methods of sampling and test (Physical and Chemical) for water and wastewater : Part 18 : Volatile and fixed residue (Total filterable and non-filterable) (First Revision)
- (30) IS 3025 : Part 22:1986 Methods of sampling and test (Physical and Chemical) for water and wastewater : Part 22 : Acidity (First Revision)

- (31) IS 3025 : Part 23:1986 Methods of sampling and test (Physical and Chemical) for water and wastewater : Part 23 : Alkalinity (First Revision)
- (32) IS 3025 : Part 28:1986 Methods of sampling and test (Physical and Chemical) for water and wastewater : Part 28 : Sulphite (First Revision)
- (33) IS 3025 : Part 32:1986 Methods of sampling and test (Physical and Chemical) for water and wastewater : Part 32 : Chloride (First Revision)
- (34) IS 3812 : Part 1 : 2003 Pulverized Fuel Ash - Specification - Part 1 : For use as Pozzolana in Cement, Cement Mortar and Concrete (Second Revision)
- (35) IS 3812 : Part 2 : 2003 Pulverized Fuel Ash - Specification - Part 2 : For use as Admixture in Cement mortar and Concrete (Second Revision)
- (36) IS 4031 : Part 5 : 1988 Methods of physical tests for hydraulic cement : Part 5 : Determination of initial and final setting times (First Revision)
- (37) IS 6003 : 1983 Specification for indented wire for prestressed concrete (First Revision)
- (38) IS 6006 : 1983 Specification for uncoated stress relieved strand for prestressed concrete (First Revision)
- (39) IS 8041 : 1990 Specification for rapid hardening portland cement (Second Revision)
- (40) IS 8112 : 1989 Specification for 43 grade ordinary portland cement (First Revision)
- (41) IS 9013 : 1978 Method of making, curing and determining compressive strength of accelerated cured concrete test specimens
- (42) IS 9103 : 1999 Concrete Admixtures - Specification (First Revision)
- (43) IS 9417 : 1989 Recommendations for welding cold worked bars for reinforced concrete construction (First Revision)
- (44) IS 12089 : 1987 Specification for granulated slag for manufacture of Portland slag cement
- (45) IS 12269 : 1987 Specification for 53 grade ordinary Portland cement
- (46) IS 12330 : 1988 Specification for sulphate resisting Portland cement
- (47) IS 12594 : 1988 Hot-dip Zinc Coating on Structural Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement - Specification

- (48) IS 13311 : Part 1:1992 Non-destructive testing of concrete : Part 1 : Ultrasonic pulse velocity
- (49) IS 13311 : Part 2:1992 Non-destructive testing of concrete : Part 2 : Rebound hammer
- (50) IS 13600 : 1989 Specification for low heat portland cement
- (51) IS 13620 : 1993 Specification for fusion bonded epoxy coated reinforcing bars
- (52) IS 14268 : 1995 Specification for uncoated stress relieved low relaxation seven ply strand for prestressed concrete
- (53) IS 14959 : Part 1:2001 Determination of water soluble and acid soluble chlorides in mortar and concrete - method of test : Part 1 : Fresh Mortar and Concrete
- (54) IS 14959 : Part 2:2001 Determination of water soluble and acid soluble chlorides in mortar and concrete - method of test : Part 2 : Hardened Mortar and Concrete
- (55) IS 15388 : 2003 Silica Fume - Specification

## **(2) List of ASTM Standards**

<b>Sr. No.</b>	<b>Standard No</b>	<b>Title</b>
(1)	C156-09a	Standard Test Method for Water Loss [from a Mortar Specimen] Through Liquid Membrane-Forming Curing Compounds for Concrete
(2)	C171-07	Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete
(3)	C309-07	Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
(4)	C803/C803M-03(2010)	Standard Test Method for Penetration Resistance of Hardened Concrete
(5)	C900-06	Standard Test Method for Pullout Strength of Hardened Concrete
(6)	C939-10	Standard Test Method for Flow of Grout for Preplaced-Aggregate Concrete (Flow Cone Method)
(7)	C1074-10	Standard Practice for Estimating Concrete Strength by the Maturity Method



- |     |          |   |
|-----|----------|---|
| (8) | C1090-10 | Standard Test Method for Measuring Changes in Height of Cylindrical Specimens of Hydraulic-Cement Grout |
| (9) | C1202-10 | Standard Test Method for Electrical Indication of Concrete's Ability to Resist Chloride Ion Penetration |

**(3) List of British Standards**

- | <b>Sr. No.</b> | <b>Standard No</b> | <b>Title</b>   |
|----------------|--------------------|--|
| (1)            | BS: 1881 : Part 5  | Testing Concrete – Methods of Testing Hardened Concrete other than Strength          |
| (2)            | BS:6744            | Specifications for Austenitic Stainless Steel Bars for the Reinforcement of Concrete |

**(4) List of DIN Standards**

- | <b>Sr. No.</b> | <b>Standard No</b> | <b>Title</b>   |
|----------------|--------------------|--|
| (1)            | DIN: 1048 : Part 5 | Testing Concrete – Testing of Hardened Concrete (Specimen Prepared in Mould) |
-

## ANNEXURE A-4

### STRUCTURAL DESIGN

### BY “WORKING LOADS/ALLOWABLE STRESSES METHOD”

#### A4.1 Applicability of Annexure A-4

On publication of this Code based on “Limit State Methods”, the following IRC Codes based on ‘Working Loads/Allowable Stresses’ method (WL/AS) stand withdrawn:

IRC:18	Design Criteria for Prestressed Concrete Road Bridges (Post Tensioned Concrete) (Third Revision).
IRC:21	Standard Specification and Code of Practice for Road Bridge – Section III Cement Concrete (Plain and Reinforced) (Third Revision).

The designs based on WL/AS method described in this Annexure can be followed as an alternative to following verification of limit state of ultimate strength for reinforced concrete members. For prestressed concrete members, in addition to WL/AS checks, ultimate strength check is also required.

The design of plain and reinforced concrete and prestressed concrete covered in the Annexure are limited to those grades of concrete and steel given in Section A4.3. For use of higher grades of these materials, the use of WL/AS method is not permitted. The option of using Annexure A-4 to be exercised by the owner, will be available only for such period till it is withdrawn by IRC.

Various aspects of WL/AS method covered in Annexure A-4 are:

- A4.2 : Load and Load Combinations.
- A4.3 : Materials.
- A4.4 : General Design Requirements
- A4.5 Basic Permissible Stresses
- A4.6 Shear and Torsion
- A4.7 Columns and Compression Members
- A4.8 Additional Requirements for Prestressed Concrete Members.

For other aspects of design not specifically covered in Clauses of this Annexure (e.g. constituent materials of concrete, durability, detailing etc.) the provisions of this Code shall be applicable.

## **A4.2 Loads and Load Combinations**

The design shall be based on loads and load combinations as per Table-1 of IRC:6, Section 202.3.

## **A4.3 Materials**

The materials covered by this Annexure are listed in Table A4.1

**Table A4.1 Grades of Concrete and Steel**

<b>Concrete Grades</b>	M15, M20, M25, M30, M35, M40, M45, M50, M55, M60	Conforming to Section 6.0 of Code
<b>Steel Grades</b>	i) Mild Steel ii) HYSD Steels - Fe 415, Fe500, Fe500D,	Grade-I – IS 432 (Part 1)1982 Conforming to IS 1786-2000
<b>Prestressing Steel Grades</b>	Wires, Strands and Bars	As per Clause 18.3 of this Code

**Note:** Structural designs making use of concrete and reinforcing steel of higher grades shall be based on ultimate strength.

## **A4.4 General Design Requirements**

### **A4.4.1 General**

Stresses that are likely to occur in plain and reinforced concrete structure, under the worst combination of loads and forces, specified in IRC:6 shall be provided for in accordance with accepted procedures of design and construction and in conformity with the fundamental principles of mechanics without exceeding the limits of stresses specified in Clause A4.5.

### **A4.4.2 Basis of design**

The strength of a reinforced concrete structural member may be assessed by commonly employed elastic theory and it may be assumed that :

- (1) the modulus of elasticity of steel is 200 GPa unless otherwise determined by tests.
- (2) the modular ratio has the values given in Table A4.2 (note-1)
- (3) unless otherwise permitted, the tensile strength of concrete is ignored.

In plain concrete structures, tension upto limits specified in Table A4.3 may be permitted.



## A4.5 Basic Permissible Stresses

### A4.5.1 Basic permissible compressive stresses for concrete

The basic permissible stresses arising from axial force (except prestressing effects) and bending effects for concrete of different grades shall be as indicated in Table A4.2.

**Table A4.2 Properties and Basic permissible Stresses for Concrete**

	Properties/ Permissible stresses	M 15	M 20	M 25	M 30	M 35	M 40	M 45	M 50	M 55	M 60
1	Modulus of Elasticity Ec-Design Value (GPa)	27	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37
2	Permissible Direct Compressive Stresses (MPa) $\sigma_{co}$	3.75	5	6.25	7.5	8.75	10	11.25	12.5	13.75	15
3	Permissible Flexural Compressive Stresses (MPa) $\sigma_c$	5	6.67	8.33	10	11.67	13.33	15	16.67	18.3	20

**Note:** For calculating stresses in section, a modular ratio  $\frac{E_s}{E_c}$  of 10 may be adopted.

### A4.5.2 Basic permissible tensile stresses for concrete

The basic permissible tensile stresses in plain concrete elements shall not exceed those given in Table A4.3.

**Table A4.3 Basic Permissible Tensile Stresses for Plain Concrete**

Concrete Grade	M15	M20	M25	M30 and above
Permissible Tensile Stresses MPa	0.40	0.53	0.61	0.67

In case of concrete members cast in one lift with no construction joints or when special precautions are taken for surface preparation of joints like use of wet sand blasting or surface retarders, the basic values given in Table A4.3 can be permitted to be increased but in no case shall these exceed 1.25 times the basic value given in the table.

**A4.5.3 Basic permissible compressive stresses for steel reinforcement**

Permissible tensile and compressive stresses in steel reinforcement shall not exceed those given in Table A4.4.

**Table A4.4 Permissible Stresses for Steel**

Bar Grades	Types of stress in steel reinforcement	Permissible Stress in MPa
Fe 240 Fe 415 and Fe 415 D	Tension in flexure, shear or combined bending	125 200
Fe500 and Fe 500 D	Tension in flexure or combined bending Tension in Shear	240 200
Fe 240 Fe 415 and Fe 415 D Fe 500 and Fe 500 D	Direct Compression	115 170 205
Fe 240 Fe 415 and Fe 415 D Fe 500 and Fe 500 D	Tension in helical reinforcement	95 95 95

**A4.5.4 Permissible stresses under various combinations of loads and forces**

The permissible stresses given in Table A4.1, A4.2 and A4.3 shall not be exceeded for combination-I in Table-1 of Clause 202.3 of IRC:6. The permissible increase for other combinations shall conform to increases given in Table-1 of Clause 202.3 of IRC:6.

**A4.6 Shear and Torsion for R.C. Members****A4.6.1 Shear****(1) Shear Stress**

(a) The design shear stress  $\tau$  at any cross section of beams or slabs of uniform depth shall be calculated by the equation:

$$\tau = \frac{V}{b.d} \quad \text{Eq. A4.1}$$

where

$V$  = the design shear across the section

$b$  = breadth of the member, which for flanged sections shall be taken as the breadth of the web, and

$d$  = effective depth of the section

**Note:** For obtaining the maximum shear stress, the section at a distance equal to effective depth from the face of the support shall be checked and the shear reinforcement calculated at the section shall be continued up to the support.

(b) In case of a beams or slabs of varying depth, the equation shall be modified as:

$$\tau = \frac{V \pm \frac{M \tan \beta}{d}}{b.d} \quad \text{Eq. A4.2}$$

where  $\tau$ ,  $V$ ,  $b$  and  $d$  are the same as Eq. A4.1, and

$M$  = bending moment at the section, due to load position corresponding to shear  $V$

$\beta$  = Angle between the top and the bottom edges of the beam at that section.

The negative sign in the formula applies when the bending moment  $M$  increases numerically in the same direction as the effective depth  $d$  increases, and the positive sign when the moment decreases numerically in this direction

## (2) Maximum Permissible Shear Stress $\tau_{\max}$

When shear reinforcement is provided the shear stress in beams shall not exceed stress  $\tau_{\max}$ , given in Table A4.5. For slabs,  $\tau$  shall not exceed half the value of , given in Table A4.5.

**Table A4.5 Maximum Shear Stress  $\tau_{\max}$  MPa**

Concrete Grade	M20	M25	M30	M35	M40 and above
$\tau_{\max}$ , MPa	1.8	1.9	2.2	2.3	2.5

## (3) Design Shear Strength of Concrete

(a) The permissible shear stress  $\tau_c$  in concrete in beams without shear reinforcement is given in Table A4.6.



**Table A4.6 Permissible Shear Stress in Concrete**

$\frac{100A_s}{bd}$	Permissible Shear Stress in Concrete, $\tau_c$ , N/mm <sup>2</sup>				
	Grade of Concrete				
	M20	M25	M30	M35	M40
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
0.15	0.18	0.19	0.20	0.20	0.20
0.25	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23
0.50	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.32
0.75	0.35	0.36	0.37	0.37	0.38
1.00	0.39	0.40	0.41	0.42	0.42
1.25	0.42	0.44	0.45	0.45	0.46
1.50	0.45	0.46	0.48	0.49	0.49
1.75	0.47	0.49	0.50	0.52	0.52
2.00	0.49	0.51	0.53	0.54	0.55
2.25	0.51	0.53	0.55	0.56	0.57
2.50	0.51	0.55	0.57	0.58	0.60
2.75	0.51	0.56	0.58	0.60	0.62
3.00	0.51	0.57	0.60	0.62	0.63
and above					

**Note:** (1)  $A_s$  is that area of longitudinal tension reinforcement which continues at least one effective depth beyond the section being considered except at supports where the full area of tension reinforcement may be used provided the detailing conforms to Section 15.

(b) For solid slabs the permissible shear in concrete shall be  $K\tau_c$  where  $K$  has the values given in Table A4.7.

**Table A4.7 Values of  $K$  for Solid Slabs**

Overall depth of slab, mm	300 or more	275	250	225	200	175	150 or less
$K$	1.00	1.05	1.10	1.15	1.20	1.25	1.30

(c) For members subjected to axial compression  $P$ , the permissible shear stress in concrete  $\tau_c$  given in Table A4.6 shall be multiplied by the following factor:

$$d = 1 + \frac{5P}{A_g f_{ck}} \text{ but not exceeding } 1.5 \quad \text{Eq. A4.3}$$

where

$P$  = Axial compressive force in Newtons

$A_g$  = gross area of the concrete section in mm<sup>2</sup>, and

$f_{ck}$  = characteristic compressive strength of concrete

(4) Members with Shear Reinforcement

When  $\tau$  exceeds given in Table A4.6, shear reinforcement shall be provided in any of the following forms:

- (a) Vertical stirrups
- (b) Bent-up bars along with stirrups, and
- (c) inclined stirrups

Where bent up bars are provided, their contribution towards shear resistance shall not be more than half that of the total shear reinforcement.

Shear reinforcement shall be provided to carry a shear  $V_s = V - \tau_c \cdot bd$ . **Eq.A4.4**

The reinforcement shall be calculated as below:

$$A_{sw} = \frac{V_s \cdot S}{\sigma_s \cdot d \cdot (\sin \alpha + \cos \alpha)} \quad \text{Eq. A4.5}$$

where

- $A_{sw}$  = total cross-sectional area of stirrup legs or bent-up bars within  $\alpha$  distance  $S$ ,
- $S$  = spacing of the stirrups or bent-up bars along the length of the member,
- $b$  = breadth of the member which for flanged beams, shall be taken as the breadth of the web,
- $\sigma_s$  = permissible tensile stress in shear reinforcement
- $\alpha$  = angle between the inclined stirrup or bent up bar and the axis of the member, not less than  $45^\circ$ ,
- $d$  = the effective depth.

**Note:** Where more than one type of shear reinforcement is used to reinforce the same portion of the beam, the total shear resistance shall be computed as the sum of the resistances for the various types separately. The areas of the stirrups shall not be less than the minimum specified in A4.6.1.5.

(5) Minimum Shear Reinforcement for Beams

When  $\tau$  is less than  $\tau_c$  given in Table A4.6, minimum shear

reinforcement for beams shall be provided in accordance with the following:

$$P_{w.min.} = \frac{A_{sw}}{b.s} = \frac{0.4}{0.87 f_y}, f_y \leq 415 \text{ MPa} \quad \text{Eq. A4.6}$$

- (6) Maximum spacing of stirrups shall be limited to one-half times the depth of the beam subject to a maximum of 300 mm. Stirrups shall pass round, or otherwise be secured to be appropriate longitudinal tensile reinforcement. The ends of stirrups shall be adequately anchored in the compression zone. Where for practical purposes it is found necessary to anchor the ends of the stirrups in the tensile zone, full anchorage length shall be provided.
- (7) Bent-up bars shall be carried through a depth at least equal to the lever arm of the resisting moment and adequately anchored in accordance with Section 6 and Clause 16.5. The spacing of the bent-up bar measured at the level of neutral axis and in the direction of longitudinal axis of the beam, shall not exceed three-quarter the effective depth of the beam.

#### **A4.6.2 Torsion**

##### **(1) General**

In structures where torsion is required to maintain equilibrium, members shall be designed for torsion. However, for such indeterminate structures where torsion can be eliminated by releasing redundant restraints, no specific design for torsion is necessary provided torsional stiffness is neglected in the calculation of internal forces. Adequate control of any torsional cracking is provided by the shear reinforcement as per Clause A4.6.1.

Torsional reinforcement is not calculated separately for torsion alone. Instead the total longitudinal reinforcement is determined for a fictitious bending moment which is a function of actual bending moment and torsion; similarly web reinforcement is determined for a fictitious shear which is a function of actual shear and torsion.

The design rules shall apply to beams of solid rectangular cross-section. However, these clauses may also be applied to flanged beams by substituting  $bw$  for  $b$ , in which case they are generally conservative.

##### **(2) Critical Section**

Sections located less than a distance  $d$ , from the face of the support may be designed for the same torsion as computed at a distance  $d$ , where  $d$  is the effective depth.



**(3) Equivalent Shear**

(a) Equivalent shear,  $V_e$ , shall be calculated from the formula:

$$V_e = V + V_t \quad \text{Eq. A4.7}$$

where

$V_e$  = Equivalent shear

$V$  = Transverse shear

$V_t$  = Shear due to torsional moment.

(i) For rectangular and flanged beams:

$$V_t = 1.6 \frac{T}{b} \quad \text{Eq. A4.8}$$

where

$T$  is the torsional moment

$b$  is the breadth of the beam or in case of flanged beams.

(ii) For box sections:

$$V_t = \frac{T * D}{2A_o} \quad \text{Eq. A4.9}$$

where

$T$  is the torsional moment.

$A_o$  is the area enclosed by the centre line of members forming the box.

$D$  is the depth of the section in the direction of transverse shear under consideration.

(b) If the equivalent shear stress  $\tau_c$  does not exceed  $\tau_c$  given in Table A4.6, minimum shear reinforcement shall be provided as specified in A4.6.1.5.

(c) If  $\tau_c$  exceeds those given in Table A4.6 longitudinal and transverse reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with A4.6.2.(d)

(d) Reinforcement in Members Subjected to Torsion

Reinforcement for torsion, when required shall consist of longitudinal and transverse reinforcement.

## (i) Longitudinal Reinforcement

The longitudinal reinforcement shall be designed to resist an equivalent bending moment,  $M_e l$ , given by

$$M_e l = M + M_t \quad \text{Eq. A4.10}$$

where

$M$  = Bending moment at the cross section, and

$$M_t = \frac{T \left( \frac{1+D}{b} \right)}{1.7}, \text{ where } T \text{ is the torsional moment} \quad \text{Eq. A4.11}$$

$D$  = the overall depth of the beam.

$b$  = breadth of the beam.

- (ii) If the numerical value of  $M_t$  as defined in (i) above exceeds the numerical value of the moment  $M$ , longitudinal reinforcement shall be provided on the flexural compression face, such that the beam can also withstand an equivalent moment  $Me_2$ .

The moment  $Me_2$  being taken as acting in the opposite sense to the moment  $M$  and given by:

$$Me_2 = M_t - M \quad \text{Eq. A4.12}$$

## (iii) Transverse Reinforcement

Two legged closed hoops enclosing the corner longitudinal bars shall have an area of cross section  $A_{swt}$  given by :

$$A_{swt} = \frac{T.S}{b_1 d_1 \sigma_s} + \frac{V.S}{2.5 d_1 \sigma_s} \quad \text{Eq. A4.13}$$

but the total transverse reinforcement shall not be less than

$$\frac{(\tau_e - \tau_c) b.S}{\sigma_s} \quad \text{Eq. A4.14}$$

**Note:** If the shear reinforcement provided has more than two legs, the second term in Eq.A4-13 shall include in area of only outermost two legs.

where

$T$  = torsional moment

$V$  = shear force

$A_{swt}$  = cross sectional area of two legs forming the closed hoop

$S$  = spacing of the stirrup reinforcement.

- $b_1$  = centre to centre distance between corner bars in the direction of the width.  
 $d_1$  = centre-to-centre distance between corner bars in the direction of the depth.  
 $b$  = breadth of the member.  
 $\sigma_s$  = permissible tensile stress in shear reinforcement  
 $\tau_e$  = equivalent shear stress as computed from Clause A4.6.2(3)  
 $\tau_c$  = shear strength of the concrete as specified in Table A4.6.

(iv) Distribution of Torsion Reinforcement

When a member is designed for torsion, torsion reinforcement shall be provided as below:

- The transverse reinforcement shall be rectangular closed stirrups placed perpendicular to the axis of the member. The spacing of the stirrups shall not exceed the smaller of  $\frac{X_1 + Y_1}{4}$  or 300 mm. Where  $X_1$  and  $Y_1$  are respectively the short and long dimensions of the member.
- In all cases there shall be at least one longitudinal bar in each corner of the stirrups. The diameter of these longitudinal bars shall not be less than the diameter of the stirrups or 12 mm whichever is greater.

## **A4.7 Columns and Compression Members**

### **A4.7.1 Classification**

- (1) Columns can be classified under the following three categories:

(a) **Pedestal Columns**

Ratio of effective length to least radius of gyration less than 12.

(b) **Short Columns**

Ratio of effective length to least radius of gyration more than 12 but less than 50.

(c) **Long Columns**

Ratio of effective length to least radius of gyration more than 50 but less than 150.



- (2) For the purpose of calculating the radius of gyration for this Clause, the cross-section of the column for columns with binders and the section of the core within the outer surface of the helical reinforcement for columns with helical reinforcement, shall be considered.
- (3) For purpose of this clause the effective column length given in Clause 11.2.2 should be used, where  $l$  is the length of the column, between adequately restrained supports. The effective column length values given in Table 11.1 in Clause 11.2.2 are in respect of typical cases only and embody the general principles which are covered in Clause 11.2.2(1). These may be employed in assessing the appropriate value for any particular column.

#### **A4.7.2 Permissible load on axially loaded columns**

##### **(1) Permissible Load**

On a short column, reinforced with longitudinal bars and lateral ties, the permissible axial load  $N$  on the column shall not exceed the value obtained from the equation.

$$N = \sigma_{co} \cdot A_c + \sigma_{sc} A_s \quad \text{Eq. A4.15}$$

where

$\sigma_{co}$  = the permissible stress in direct compression for concrete as given in Clause A4.5.

$\sigma_{sc}$  = the permissible stress in direct compression for the longitudinal steel as given in Clause A4.5.3.

$A_c$  = the cross-sectional area of concrete exclusive of any finishing material applied after the casting of the column and exclusive of the areas of longitudinal steel, and

$A_s$  = the cross-sectional area of the longitudinal steel.

- (2) On a short column reinforced with longitudinal bars and helicals complying with Clause 16.2.3, Section 16, axial load  $N$  on the column shall not exceed that given by the equation Eq.A4.14 or by the equation given below whichever is greater:

$$N = \sigma_{co} \cdot A_{co} + \sigma_{sc} A_s + 2\sigma_{sp} A_{sp} \quad \text{Eq. A4.16}$$

where

$A_{co}$  = the cross-sectional area of concrete in the column core, excluding the area of longitudinal steel,

$A_{sp}$  = the equivalent area of helical reinforcement (i.e. the volume of helical reinforcement per unit length of the column), and

$\sigma_{sp}$  = Tension in helical reinforcement.

The sum of the terms  $\sigma_{co} \cdot A_{co}$  or  $2\sigma_{sp} \cdot A_{sp}$ , shall not exceed  $0.5f_{ck}A_c$ , where  $f_{ck}$  is the characteristic strength of concrete.

- (3) In case of a long column  $50 < l/r < 150$  reinforced with longitudinal bars and ties or helical reinforcement, the permissible axial load on the column shall be obtained from the equations Eq. A4.15 and Eq. A4.15 respectively provided reduced values of permissible stress for steel and for concrete are taken. Such reduced values of the maximum permissible stresses shall be obtained by multiplying the appropriate maximum permissible stresses given in (1) and (2) by the co-efficient  $\beta$  given by the equation:

$$\beta = 1.5 - \frac{l}{100r} \quad \text{Eq. A4.17}$$

where

$\beta$  = the reduction co-efficient

$l$  = the effective length of the column, and

$r$  = the least radius of gyration

**Note:** When in a column having helical reinforcement, the permissible load is based on the core area, the radius of gyration shall also be based on the diameter of the core.

### A4.7.3 Design of sections for combined axial load and bending

When reinforced concrete section under axial compression is subjected to bending in one or more directions, the section shall be designed by any recognised rational method or by the method given below:

- (1) The maximum direct stress and bending stress in the section shall be calculated by the following methods:

#### (a) Direct Stress

- (i) For columns with helical reinforcement,

$$\text{Direct stress} = \frac{N}{A_{co} + \alpha \cdot A_s + 2\alpha \cdot A_{sp}} \quad \text{Eq. A4.18}$$

- (ii) For columns with transverse reinforcement other than that in (i) above

$$\text{Direct stress} = \frac{N}{A_c + \alpha \cdot A_{sp}} \quad \text{Eq. A4.19}$$

$$(b) \text{ Bending Stress} = \pm \frac{M}{W} \quad \text{Eq. A4.20}$$

where

- $N$  = the load on the column in the direction of its axis,  
 $A_c$  = the area of concrete section perpendicular to the axis of the column  
 $\alpha$  = the modular ratio,  
 $W$  = the section modulus (in case of bending in two directions,  $W$  is the section modulus with reference to the appropriate principal axis for two-way bending), and  
 $M$  = moment about a principal axis.

In case of rectangular section subjected to bending in two directions, the expression  $\frac{M}{W}$  in the Eq.A4.19 can be substituted by

$$\frac{M_x}{W_y} \pm \frac{M_y}{W_x} \quad \text{Eq. A4.21}$$

where

$M_x$  and  $M_y$  are the bending moments about two principal axis of the section and  $W_y$  and  $W_x$  are the corresponding section moduli.

- (2) If the direct and the bending stresses, calculated as per (1) above satisfy all the following conditions, the section may be considered safe:

$$(a) \frac{\sigma_{c,cal}}{\sigma_{co}} + \frac{\sigma_{c,cal}}{\sigma_c} > 1 \quad \text{Eq. A4.22}$$

where

$\sigma_{co,cal}$  = the calculated direct compressive stress,

$\sigma_{co}$  = the permissible direct compressive stress according to Clause A4.5; multiplied by the reduction factor given by Eq. A4.16.

$\sigma_{c,cal}$  = the calculated flexural compressive stress, and

$\sigma_c$  = the permissible flexural compressive stress, according to Clause A4.5, multiplied by the reduction co-efficient given by Eq. A4.17.



- (b) The resultant tension due to direct compression and flexure is not greater than the value specified in Table A4.2 for the appropriate grade of concrete.
- (3) If the condition given in 2(ii) above is not satisfied, the section shall be deemed to have cracked in the region of tension and the tensile resistance of concrete is ignored altogether. The maximum stresses in concrete and steel shall then be found according to the recognised theory of cracked section. The fibre compressive stress in concrete shall not exceed the values given for flexural compressive stress as given in Table and those for tension in steel shall not exceed the permissible stress in reinforcement given in Table A4.3.

## **A4.8 Requirement for Prestressed Concrete Members**

### **A4.8.1 General**

This covers prestressed concrete members (post-tensioned determinate structures), wherein adequate magnitude of prestressing force is applied to member in order to improve the effective resistance of concrete to tensile forces arising from the loading effects at working load levels. The working loads shall be as per IRC:6 (Table 1). For the purpose of analysis, effective prestressing force is considered as load. For calculation of effective prestressing force, the losses in prestressing force at various stages shall be calculated as per Section 7 of this Code. While calculating the ultimate resistance of member, the remaining capacity of bonded prestressing steel is considered to contribute to the ultimate resistance. For unbonded tendons, the additional increase in forces if any shall be neglected.

### **A4.8.2 Loads and forces**

- (1) The loads and forces and load combinations as per IRC:6 and as applicable for the given structure shall be duly accounted for.
- (2) All critical loading stages shall be investigated. The stages stated below may normally be investigated:

#### **(a) Stage Prestressing**

Stage prestressing is permissible. The number of stages of prestressing and grouting shall be reduced to the minimum, preferably not more than two. However, concrete shall have attained strength of not less than 20 MPa before any prestressing is applied.

- (b) Construction stages including temporary loading, transport, handling and erection or any occasional loads that may occur during launching of girders, etc., including impact, if any;
- (c) The design loads are as per load combination given in (1) above including the following discrete stages:
  - (i) Service Dead Load + Prestress with full losses.
  - (ii) Service Dead Load + Live Load + Prestress with full losses.
- (d) For the combination of loads with differential temperature gradient effects, maximum 50 percent live load shall be considered and any tensile stresses shall be taken care of by providing adequately designed untensioned steel subject to the crack width limitations stipulated in Clause 12.3.2 of the Code. This shall apply notwithstanding the provision contained in Clause A4.8.3(2). However, in the case of precast segmental construction no tension shall be permitted under this load combination.
- (e) Ultimate load, as per Section 8 of this Code.

#### **A4.8.3 Permissible stresses in concrete**

- (1) Permissible temporary stresses in concrete
  - (a) These stresses are calculated after accounting for all appropriate losses, pertaining to the stage of construction.
  - (b) The compressive stress produced due to loading mentioned in Clause A 4.8.2 (b) shall not exceed  $0.5 f_{cj}$  where  $f_{cj}$  is the concrete strength at that time subject to a maximum of 30 MPa.
  - (c) At full transfer the cube strength of concrete shall not be less than  $0.8 f_{ck}$ . Temporary compressive stress in the extreme fibre of concrete (including stage prestressing), shall not exceed  $0.5 f_{cj}$  subject to maximum of 30 MPa.
  - (d) The temporary tensile stress in the extreme fibres of concrete shall not exceed  $1/10^{\text{th}}$  of the permissible temporary compressive stress in the concrete.
- (2) Permissible stress in concrete during service
  - (a) The compressive stress in concrete under service loads shall not exceed  $0.33 f_{ck}$ .
  - (b) No tensile stress shall be permitted in the concrete during service.

- (c) If precast segmental elements are joined by prestressing, the stresses in the extreme fibres of concrete during service shall always be compressive and the minimum compressive stress in an extreme fibre shall not be less than five per cent of maximum permanent compressive stress that may be developed in the same section. This provision shall not, however, apply to cross prestressed deck slabs.

(3) **Permissible stresses in prestressing steel**

Maximum jack pressure shall not exceed 90 percent of 0.1 percent proof stress. For the purpose of this Clause, 0.1 percent proof stress shall be taken as equal to 85 percent of minimum Ultimate Tensile Strength (UTS).

**A4.8.4 Section properties**

- (1) For members consisting of precast as well as cast-in-situ units, due consideration shall be given to the different moduli of elasticity of concrete in the precast and cast-in-situ portions.
- (2) For the purpose of determining the flexural stresses both prior to and after grouting of the cables or tendons, the properties of the section such as area, position of centroid and moment of inertia may be based upon the full section of the concrete without deducting the area of longitudinal openings left in the concrete for prestressing tendons, cable ducts or sheaths. No allowance for the transformed area of the prestressing tendons shall, however, be made.

Deduction shall be made for the holes of transverse prestressing tendons at sections where they occur, for determining the stresses before grouting of these holes.

**A4.8.5 Ultimate strength**

Prestressed Concrete Structural members shall be checked for failure conditions at an ultimate load combination as specified by IRC:6, Annexure-B, using methods given in Section 8 to Section 11 of this Code.

**A4.9 Requirements of Minimum Dimensions of Members and Minimum Reinforcement**

The limits prescribed elsewhere in this code (detailing Sections) shall be observed for design based on WL/AS method also.



## INFORMATIVE ANNEXURE: B-1

## CONCRETE SHELL ELEMENTS

**B1.1** This section applies to shell elements, in which there are generally eight components of internal forces. The eight components of internal forces are listed below and shown in Fig. B1-1.1 for an element of unit dimensions:

- 3 plate components  $\eta_{Edx}, \eta_{Edy}, \eta_{Edxy} = \eta_{Edyx}$ ,
- 3 slab components  $m_{Edx}, m_{Edy}, m_{Edxy} = m_{Edyx}$ ,
- 2 transverse shear forces  $v_{Edx}, v_{Edy}$ ,

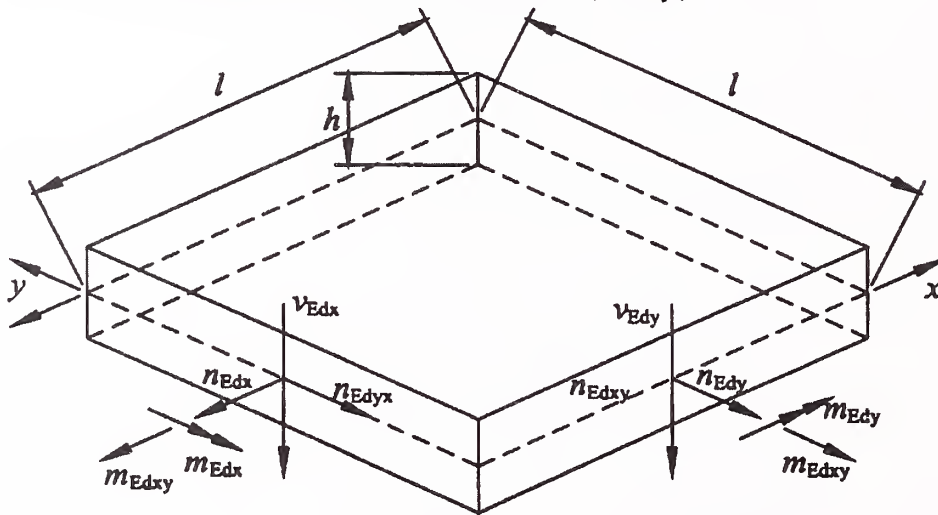


Fig. B1-1 Shell Element

**B1.2** The first stage in the verification procedure is to establish if the shell element is uncracked or cracked.

**B1.3** In uncracked elements the only verification required is to check that the minimum principal stress is smaller than the design compressive strength  $f_{cd}$ . It may be appropriate to take into account the multiaxial compression state in the definition of  $f_{cd}$ .

**B1.4** In cracked elements a sandwich model should be used for design or verification of the shell element.

**B1.5** In the sandwich model three layers are identified (Fig.B1.2): The two outer layers resist the membrane actions arising from  $\eta_{Edx}, \eta_{Edy}, \eta_{Edxy}, m_{Edx}, m_{Edy}, m_{Edxy}$ , and the inner layer carries the shear forces  $v_{Edx}, v_{Edy}$ . The thickness of the different layers should be established by means of an iterative procedure (B1.13 and B1.15) (Fig. B1-2.15).

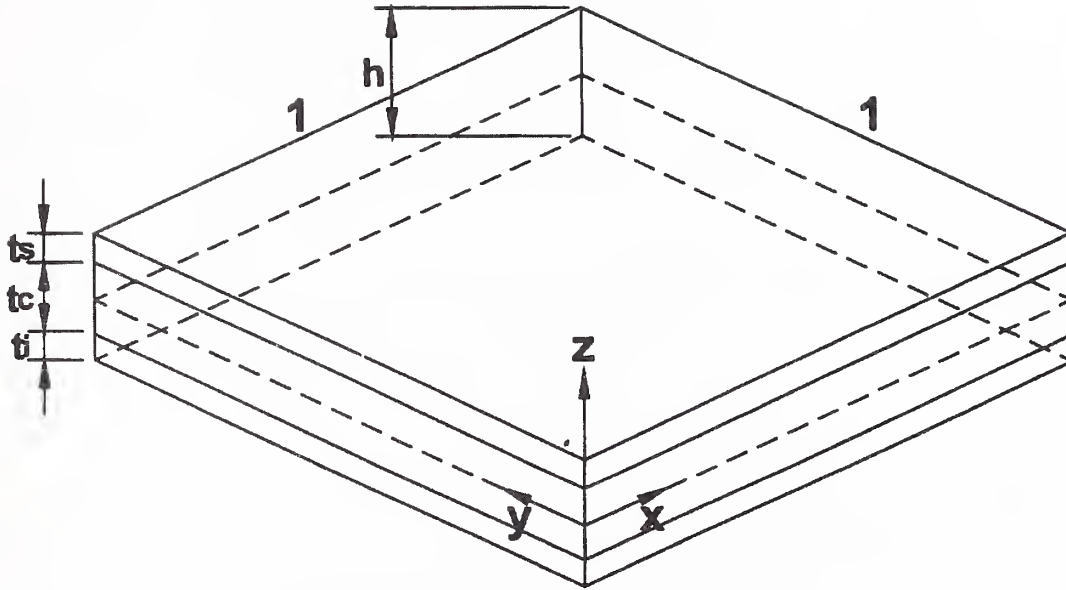


Fig. B1-2 The Sandwich Model

**B1.6** The inner layer should be designed according to 6.2 taking into account the principal shear, its principal direction and the longitudinal reinforcement components in that direction (see rules (13 to 15)).

**B1.7** In order to establish whether shell elements are cracked, the principal stresses at different levels within the thickness of the element should be checked. In practice the following inequality should be verified.

$$\phi = \alpha \frac{J_2}{f_{cm}^2} + \lambda \frac{\sqrt{J_2}}{f_{cm}} + \beta \frac{I_1}{f_{cm}} - 1 \leq 0 \quad \text{Eq. B1-1}$$

where

$$J_2 = \frac{1}{6} [(\sigma_1 - \sigma_2)^2 + (\sigma_2 - \sigma_3)^2 + (\sigma_3 - \sigma_1)^2] \quad \text{Eq. B1-2}$$

$$J_3 = (\sigma_1 - \sigma_m)(\sigma_2 - \sigma_m)(\sigma_3 - \sigma_m) \quad \text{Eq. B1-3}$$

$$I_1 = \sigma_1 + \sigma_2 + \sigma_3 \quad \text{Eq. B1-4}$$

$$\sigma_m = (\sigma_1 + \sigma_2 + \sigma_3) / 3 \quad \text{Eq. B1-5}$$

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{9k^{1.4}} \quad \text{Eq. B1-6}$$

$$\lambda = c_1 \cos \left[ \frac{1}{3} \arccos(C_2 \cos 3\theta) \right] \text{ for } \cos 3\theta \geq 0 \quad \text{Eq. B1-7}$$

$$\lambda = c_1 \cos \left[ \frac{\pi}{3} - \frac{1}{3} \arccos(-C_2 \cos 3\theta) \right] \text{ for } \cos 3\theta < 0$$

$$\beta = \frac{1}{3,7k^{1,1}} \quad \text{Eq. B1-8}$$

$$\cos 3\theta = 3 \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \frac{J_3}{J_2^{3/2}} \quad \text{Eq. B1-9}$$

$$C_1 = \frac{1}{0,7k^{0,9}} \quad \text{Eq. B1-10}$$

$$C_2 = 1 - 6,8(k - 0,07)^2 \quad \text{Eq. B1-11}$$

$$K = \frac{f_{ctm}}{f_{cm}} \quad \text{Eq. B1-12}$$

If inequality in Eq. B1.1 is satisfied, then the element is considered to be uncracked; otherwise it should be considered as cracked.

**B1.8** If the shell element is considered to be cracked, the forces within the outer layers of the sandwich model should be determined according to the following equations (Fig. B1-3 and B1-4)

$$n_{Edxs} = n_{Edx} \frac{z_x - y_{xs}}{z_x} + \frac{m_{Edx}}{z_x} \quad \text{Eq. B1-13}$$

$$n_{Edxi} = n_{Edx} \frac{z_x - y_{xi}}{z_x} - \frac{m_{Edx}}{z_x} \quad \text{Eq. B1-14}$$

$$n_{Edys} = n_{Edy} \frac{z_y - y_{ys}}{z_y} + \frac{m_{Edy}}{z_y} \quad \text{Eq. B1-15}$$

$$n_{Edyi} = n_{Edy} \frac{z_y - y_{yi}}{z_y} - \frac{m_{Edy}}{z_y} \quad \text{Eq. B1-16}$$

$$n_{Edyxs} = n_{Edyx} \frac{z_{yx} - y_{yxs}}{z_{yx}} - \frac{m_{Edyx}}{z_{yx}} \quad \text{Eq. B1-17}$$

$$n_{Edyxi} = n_{Edyx} \frac{z_{yx} - y_{yxi}}{z_{yx}} + \frac{m_{Edyx}}{z_{yx}} \quad \text{Eq. B1-18}$$

$$n_{Edxys} = n_{Edxy} \frac{z_{xy} - y_{xys}}{z_{xy}} + \frac{m_{Edxy}}{z_{xy}} \quad \text{Eq. B1-19}$$





Out of plane shear forces  $v_{Edx}$  and  $v_{Edy}$  are applied to the inner layer with the layer arm  $z_c$ , determined with reference to the centroid of the appropriate layers of reinforcement.

**B1.9** For the design of the inner layer the principal shear  $v_{Edo}$  and its direction  $\phi_o$  should be evaluated as follows:

$$v_{Edo} = \sqrt{v_{Edx}^2 + v_{Edy}^2} \quad \text{Eq. B1-21}$$

$$\tan \phi_o = \frac{v_{Edx}}{v_{Edy}} \quad \text{Eq. B1-22}$$

**B1.10** In the direction of principal shear the shell element behaves like a beam and the appropriate design rules should therefore be applied. In particular Clause 10.3.2 should be applied for members not requiring shear reinforcement and Clause 10.3.3 should be applied for members requiring shear reinforcement. In expression 6.2a)  $\rho_l$  should be taken as:

$$\rho_l = \rho_x \cos^2 \phi_o + \rho_y \sin^2 \phi_o \quad \text{Eq. B1-23}$$

**B1.11** When shear reinforcement is necessary, the longitudinal force resulting from the truss model  $V_{Edo} \cot \theta$  gives rise to the following membrane forces in  $x$  and  $y$  directions:

$$n_{Edyc} = \frac{v_{Edy}^2}{v_{Edo}} \cot \theta \quad \text{Eq. B1-24}$$

$$n_{Edxyc} = \frac{v_{Edx} v_{Edy}}{v_{Edo}} \cot \theta \quad \text{Eq. B1-25}$$

$$n_{Edxc} = \frac{v_{Edx}^2}{v_{Edo}} \cot \theta \quad \text{Eq. B1-26}$$

$$n_{Edyxc} = n_{Edxyc} = \frac{v_{Edx} v_{Edy}}{v_{Edo}} \cot \theta \quad \text{Eq. B1-27}$$

**B1.12** The outer layers should be designed as membrane elements, using the design rules of Section 9.

**B1.13** The following simplified approach may generally be adopted with respect to Fig. B1.3 and B1.4.

$$y_{ns} = y_{xs} = y_{ys} \quad \text{Eq. B1-28}$$

$$y_{ni} = y_{xi} = y_{yi} \quad \text{Eq. B1-29}$$

$$y_{ts} = y_{xys} = y_{yxs} \quad \text{Eq. B1-30}$$

$$y_{ti} = y_{xyi} = y_{yxi} \quad \text{Eq. B1-31}$$

$$z_x = z_y = z_n = y_{ns} + y_{ni} \quad \text{Eq. B1-32}$$

$$z_{xy} = z_{yx} = z_t = y_{ts} + y_{ti} \quad \text{Eq. B1-33}$$

The difference between  $z_n$  and  $z_t$  may generally be ignored, assuming the thickness of the outer layers to be twice the concrete cover, therefore:

$$y_{ns} = y_{ts} = y_s \quad \text{Eq. B1-34}$$

$$y_{ni} = y_{ti} = y_i \quad \text{Eq. B1-35}$$

$$z_n = z_t = z \quad \text{Eq. B1-36}$$

**B1.14** Based on the above assumptions the forces in the outer layers can be evaluated as follows:

- (a) In the case for which no shear reinforcement is required to resist  $v_{Edx}$  and  $v_{Edy}$

$$n_{Edxs} = n_{Edx} \frac{z - y_s}{z} + \frac{m_{Edx}}{z} \quad \text{Eq. B1-37}$$

$$n_{Edxi} = n_{Edx} \frac{z - y_i}{z} - \frac{m_{Edx}}{z} \quad \text{Eq. B1-38}$$

$$n_{Edys} = n_{Edy} \frac{z - y_s}{z} + \frac{m_{Edy}}{z} \quad \text{Eq. B1-39}$$

$$n_{Edyi} = n_{Edy} \frac{z - y_i}{z} - \frac{m_{Edy}}{z} \quad \text{Eq. B1-40}$$

$$n_{Edxys} = n_{Edxy} \frac{z - y_s}{z} - \frac{m_{Edxy}}{z} \quad \text{Eq. B1-41}$$

$$n_{Edxyi} = n_{Edxy} \frac{z - y_i}{z} + \frac{m_{Edxy}}{z} \quad \text{Eq. B1-42}$$

- b) In the case for which shear reinforcement is required to resist  $v_{Edx}$  and  $v_{Edy}$ .

$$n_{Edxs} = n_{Edx} \frac{z - y_s}{z} + \frac{m_{Edx}}{z} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{v_{Edx}^2}{v_{Edo}} \cot \theta \quad \text{Eq. B1-43}$$

$$n_{Edxi} = n_{Edx} \frac{z - y_i}{z} - \frac{m_{Edx}}{z} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{v_{Edx}^2}{v_{Edo}} \cot \theta \quad \text{Eq. B1-44}$$

$$n_{Edys} = n_{Edy} \frac{z - y_s}{z} + \frac{m_{Edy}}{z} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{v_{Edy}^2}{v_{Edo}} \cot \theta \quad \text{Eq. B1-45}$$



$$n_{Edyi} = n_{Edy} \frac{z - y_i}{z} + \frac{m_{Edy}}{z} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{v_{Edy}^2}{v_{Edo}} \cot \theta \quad \text{Eq. B1-46}$$

$$n_{Edxys} = n_{Edxy} \frac{z - y_s}{z} + \frac{m_{Edxy}}{z} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{v_{Edx} v_{Edy}}{v_{Edo}} \cot \theta \quad \text{Eq. B1-47}$$

$$n_{Edxyi} = n_{Edxy} \frac{z - y_i}{z} + \frac{m_{Edxy}}{z} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{v_{Edx} v_{Edy}}{v_{Edo}} \cot \theta \quad \text{Eq. B1-48}$$

**B1.15** If the verification in (B1.12) above is not satisfied, one of the following procedures should be followed.

- (a) increase the concrete cover and consequently reduce the internal lever arm;
- (b) use different values for  $z_n$  and  $z_i$  with  $z_n > z_i$  internal concrete stresses should then be added vectorially;
- (c) Increase the layer thickness to satisfy the concrete verification and leave the reinforcement position unchanged. This will cause the reinforcement to become eccentric in the layer; as a consequence two internal bending moments arise, and these should be in equilibrium within the shell element. In these circumstances, the internal reinforcement become:

$$n_{Eds}^* = \left[ n_{Eds} \left( h - \frac{t_s}{2} - b_i' \right) + n_{Edi} \left( \frac{t_i}{2} - b_i' \right) \right] / (h - b_i' - b_s')$$

**Eq. B1-49**

$$n_{Edi}^* = n_{Eds} + n_{Edi} - n_{Eds}^*$$

**Eq. B1-50**

where

$t_s$  and  $t_i$  are the thickness of top and bottom layers, respectively;

$b_i'$  is the distance from the external surface of the layer to the axis of the reinforcement within the layer.

The internal layer should be checked for an additional out of the plane shear corresponding to the force transfer between the layers of reinforcement.

## **INFORMATIVE ANNEXURE B-2**

### **MECHANISMS OF DETERIORATION OF CONCRETE STRUCTURES**

This Annexure gives description of the main deterioration mechanisms which may need to be considered in design.

#### **B2.1 Corrosion of Reinforcement/Prestressing Tendons**

In normal circumstances, the highly alkaline nature of concrete protects steel embedded within it. The pH value of the pore solution in concrete is generally in the region of 12 to 14. The protection is afforded by the formation of a very thin, coherent layer of iron oxide over the surface of the steel bar under such alkaline conditions. Steel protected in this way is described as being in a passive state. Steel will not generally corrode in uncontaminated concrete until the pH drops below 10. Two mechanisms, which can lead to the destruction of this passive state, are:-

##### **(1) Carbonation of Concrete**

This is a reaction between carbon dioxide in the atmosphere and the calcium hydroxide in the hydrated cement matrix. This process starts at the surface and with time, penetrates slowly into the concrete. The rate of penetration of carbonation into the concrete, is the highest, where the relative humidity is in the range 50 to 70 percent. It is lower at higher humidities, being effectively zero at 100 percent. The rate is also lower at lower humidities, being effectively zero at 0 percent humidity, because carbonation can not take place without presence of water. The rate of carbonation will be lower in good quality concrete as compared to that in poor quality concrete. The rate of carbonation depends on the rate at which carbon dioxide can diffuse into the concrete. This will decrease with a decrease in the water/cement ratio. The effect of carbonation is to reduce the alkalinity of the concrete surrounding the reinforcement to a level where the natural protection is lost.

##### **(2) The presence of Chlorides in Concrete**

Chlorides have the capacity to destroy the passivity of steel locally, even where the alkalinity remains high, giving rise to 'pitting corrosion'. Chlorides may get into the concrete from various sources, but the commonest are seawater in marine environments;

chloride ions, if any, contained in the ingredients of concrete, particularly the mix water; and de-icing chemicals on bridge decks as used in colder climates. The rate of ingress of chloride into the concrete depends upon the amount of chloride in the service environment in contact with the concrete surface and on the quality of the concrete.

Once the passivity of the steel has been destroyed, occurrence of corrosion of steel requires only two things; sufficient moisture and sufficient oxygen. It is found that these two requirements can act against each other since, if the concrete is wet, oxygen cannot penetrate and if it is dry, there is insufficient moisture for the reaction to progress. As a result, the greatest risk of corrosion is in members subjected to alternate wetting and drying.

## **B2.2 Frost Attack**

If saturated concrete is subjected to frequent freezing and thawing, the expansive effects of ice formation will disrupt the concrete. The usual manifestations of frost damage are surface spalling or the formation of closely spaced surface cracks. Concrete, which is not close to being saturated, is not at risk from frost as the expansion that occurs on freezing can be accommodated in the pores not filled with water. Except in a few areas in colder regions of the country, frost attack may not pose a significant problem.

## **B2.3 Alkali-aggregate Reactions**

There are two basic forms of reaction which occasionally occur and can damage concrete: viz. - the alkali-silica reaction and the alkali-carbonate reaction. The alkali-silica reaction is the more common in India. It is a reaction between the alkalis (sodium and potassium salts) in the cement and certain forms of glassy or crypto-crystalline silica in the aggregate, which results in the formation of a hygroscopic 'silica gel'. This gel expands when in contact with water, resulting in the formation of cracks, which may be large (several millimeters wide are not uncommon). In relatively unstressed and unreinforced concrete, these cracks can form a random 'map' pattern. In other cases, the cracks will tend to form parallel to the direction of compressive stress or reinforcement. The cracks are usually not deep, only extending 50-70 mm into the section. Their effect on structural performance is not as great as might be imagined from looking at the cracks. A reduction in the compressive and tensile strengths and modulus of elasticity of the concrete occurs, but this is commonly not more than about 20-30 percent.

In India, siliceous rocks like granite, granite gneiss and schist, quartzite and sandstone, containing 'strained quartz' have been found to be reactive. The methods of evaluation are



given in IS 2386. More refined methods of detection of reactivity of aggregates are being evolved, for which, specialist literature may be consulted.

#### **B2.4            Attack from Sulphates**

In the presence of water, sulphate ions can react with the tricalcium aluminate component of the cement. This reaction causes expansion, leading to cracking and eventual disintegration of the concrete. The commonest source of sulphates is in the earth surrounding foundations but other sources are sometimes significant. Seawater contains significant amounts of sulphates in addition to chlorides. The severity of attack depends on the concentration of sulphate ions in the soil and subsoil water and in the environment.

#### **B2.5            Attack by Aggressive Chemicals**

Effluents, vapours, fumes etc. from chemical and fertilizer industries can attack concrete, leading to its disintegration. In case of a bridge structure being exposed to such harmful chemicals due to proximity to such industries, the structure should be designed for 'extreme' exposure condition (Table 14.1). Protective coatings may be required. For further guidance, specialist literature may be referred.

#### **B2.6            Acid Attack**

No concrete is acid resistant. Even mild acids (pH 4 to 5) can attack the calcium compounds in concrete, converting them to soluble salts, which can then leach away. The effect of acids is therefore to eat away, or render the surface of the concrete weak and permeable. Acid rain, for example, will do no more than etch the surface of the concrete over any reasonable design life. If the concrete is likely to be exposed to major amounts of acid, for example from some industrial process, the only way to avoid damage is to provide an impermeable coating to the concrete.

#### **B2.7            Abrasion**

Abrasion of concrete surfaces may occur due to movement of boulders, sand or gravel suspended in turbulent water, or air borne sand particles. Resistance to abrasion can be obtained by using higher strength concrete and abrasion resistant aggregates. Resistance is also markedly improved by good curing of surfaces likely to be exposed to abrasive action.

---

## INFORMATIVE ANNEXURE B-3

### EFFECT OF LIVE LOADS ON DECK SLABS

#### B3.1 Scope

The effect of concentrated loads on slabs spanning in one or two directions or on cantilever slabs may be calculated from the influence fields of such loads or by any other rational method. A value of 0.2 may be assumed for Poisson's ratio. A simplified method for estimating the action of concentrated loads on slab, based on effective width method for cantilever and simply supported slab, is described below, which may be used where more detailed calculations are not performed.

#### B3.2 Effective Width

The bending moment per unit width of slab caused by concentrated loads on solid slabs spanning in one direction or on cantilever slabs, may also be calculated by assessing the width of slab that may be taken as effective in resisting the bending moment due to the concentrated loads. For precast slabs, the term 'actual width of slab' used in this Clause shall indicate the actual width of each individual precast unit.

Slabs designed on the above basis need not be checked for shear.

(1) Solid slab spanning in one direction

- (i) For a single concentrated load, the effective width may be calculated in accordance with the following equation:

$$b_{ef} = \alpha \cdot a \cdot \left( 1 - \frac{a}{l_o} \right) + b_1 \quad \text{Eq. B3.1}$$

where

- $b_{ef}$  = the effective width of slab on which the load acts,
- $l_o$  = the effective span as indicated in Section B3-4,
- $a$  = the distance of the centre of gravity of the concentrated load from the nearer support,
- $b_1$  = the breadth of concentration area of the load, i.e., the dimension of the tyre or track contact area over the road surface of the slab in a direction at right angles to the span plus twice the thickness of the wearing coat or surface finish above the structural slab, and
- $\alpha$  = a constant having the following values depending upon the ratio  $\frac{b}{l_o}$  where  $b$  is the width of the slab.

Provided that the effective width shall not exceed the actual width of the slab; and provided further that in case of a load near the unsupported edge of a slab, the effective width shall not exceed the above value nor half the above value plus the distance of the load from the unsupported edge.

$\frac{b}{l_o}$	$\alpha$ for simply supported Slab	$\alpha$ for continuous slab		$\alpha$ for simply supported slab	$\alpha$ for continuous slab
0.1	0.40	0.40	1.1	2.60	2.28
0.2	0.80	0.80	1.2	2.64	2.36
0.3	1.16	1.16	1.3	2.72	2.40
0.4	1.48	1.44	1.4	2.80	2.48
0.5	1.72	1.68	1.5	2.84	2.48
0.6	1.96	1.84	1.6	2.88	2.52
0.7	2.12	1.96	1.7	2.92	2.56
0.8	2.24	2.08	1.8	2.96	2.60
0.9	2.36	2.16	1.9	3.00	2.60
1.0	2.48	2.24	2.0	3.00	2.60
			above		

(ii) For two or more concentrated loads in a line in the direction of the span, the bending moment per unit width of slab shall be calculated separately for each load according to its appropriate effective width of slab calculated as in (i) above.

(iii) For two or more loads not in a line in the direction of the span: If the effective width of slab for one load overlaps the effective width of slab for an adjacent load, the resultant effective width for the two loads equals the sum of the respective effective widths for each load minus the width of overlap, provided that the slab so designed is tested for the two loads acting separately.

(2) Solid slab cantilever

(i) For a single concentrated load, the effective width may be calculated in accordance with the following equation:

$$b_{ef} = 1.2a + b_1 \quad \text{Eq. B3.2}$$

where

$b_{ef}$  = the effective width,



- $a$  = the distance of the centre of gravity of the concentrated load from the face of the cantilever support, and
- $b_1$  = the breadth of concentration area of load, i.e., the dimension of the tyre or track contact area over the road surface of the slab in a direction parallel to the supporting edge of the cantilever plus twice the thickness of wearing coat or surface finish above the structural slab.

Provided that the effective width of the cantilever slab shall not exceed one-third the length of the cantilever slab measured parallel to the support. And provided further that when the concentrated load is placed near one of the two extreme ends of the length of cantilever slab in the direction parallel to the support, the effective width shall not exceed the above value, nor shall it exceed half the above value plus the distance of the concentrated load from the nearer extreme end measured in the direction parallel to the fixed edge.

(ii) For two or more concentrated loads

If the effective width of slab for one load overlaps the effective width of slab for an adjacent load, resultant effective width for the two loads shall be taken as equal to the sum of the respective effective width for each load minus the width of overlap, provided that the slab so designed is tested for the two loads acting separately.

### **B3.3 Dispersion of Loads Along the Span**

The effect of contact of wheel or track load in the direction of span length shall be taken as equal to the dimension of the tyre contact area over the wearing surface of the slab in the direction of the span plus twice the overall depth of the slab inclusive of the thickness of the wearing surface.

### **B3.4 Dispersion of Loads Through Fills and Wearing Coat**

The dispersion of loads through fills and wearing coat shall be assumed at 45° both along and perpendicular to the span.









**(The Official amendments to this document which may be considered necessary from time to time would be published by the IRC in its periodical 'Indian Highway'. These shall be considered as effective and as part of the Code etc. from the date specified therein)**